OLD FRENCH SERIES · VOLUME 19

Robert de Clari

Robert de Clari · Henri de Valenciennes

La Conquête de Constantinople
Histoire de l'empereur Henri

Robert de Clari

The Conquest of Constantinople, with Henri de Valenciennes

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order



CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 19 of the Canes Nobiles Old French interlinear texts

The Old French text follows Philippe Lauer's text of Robert de Clari, La Conquête de Constantinople (Paris, 1924), with his errata, and Natalis de Wailly's text of Henri de Valenciennes, Histoire de l'empereur Henri, in his edition of Villehardouin's La Conquête de Constantinople, third edition (Paris, 1882), paragraphs 501–694

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The texts keep Lauer's spelling and accents for Clari and de Wailly's for Henri de Valenciennes, both Picard and neither harmonized to the other. The margin gives Lauer's chapter numbers for Clari, in Arabic figures, and de Wailly's paragraph numbers for Henri, which continue those of his Villehardouin; the chapters and paragraphs are grouped into the reading sections, whose English heads are this press's.

CONTENTS

ROBERT DE CLARI

I · The Preaching and the Crusaders 11
II · Boniface Takes the Cross 17
III · The Treaty with Venice 21
IV · The Muster at Venice 25
V · The Host at Venice Cannot Pay 27
VI · Zara 33
VII · The Young Alexius and the Emperor Manuel 40
VIII · The Fall of Andronicus 53
IX · Alexius the Usurper 65
X · The Envoys and the Young Alexius 67
XI · Conrad of Montferrat 71
XII · Into the Straits 86
XIII · The Tower of Galata 90
XIV · The Emperor Comes Out 97

ROBERT DE CLARI

(continued)

XV · The Armies Face to Face 105
XVI · Kyrsac Restored 110
XVII · The Coronation of Alexius 118
XVIII · The Fireships 123
XIX · Murzuphlus 128
XX · Philea and the Icon 135
XXI · The Pact and the First Assault 141
XXII · The Second Assault 146
XXIII · Peter of Amiens and Aleaume of Clari 153
XXIV · The City Taken 158
XXV · The Booty 164
XXVI · The Wonders of Constantinople 167
XXVII · The Gates, the Hippodrome, and the Columns 177
XXVIII · The Election of Baldwin 184
XXIX · The Treasure Shared 193
XXX · Boniface Rebels 198
XXXI · The Fiefs, and the Death of Murzuphlus 206
XXXII · Adrianople 211
XXXIII · The Emperor Henry 215

HENRI DE VALENCIENNES

I · The Prologue, and Boril's Surprise Attack 223
II · Liénard Rescued 227

HENRI DE VALENCIENNES

(continued)

III · The Foragers at Philippopolis 232
IV · Confession, and the Marshal's Message 236
V · The Chaplain's Sermon 242
VI · The Defeat of Boril 247
VII · Slav's Homage, and the Flight of the Lascaris 251
VIII · Slav's Wedding, and Henry Turns to Salonika 257
IX · The Frozen River, and Christopolis Shut 263
X · Christmas at Vigneri, and the Envoys 269
XI · The Lombards' Demands 273
XII · Conon's Plea, and Henry Yields 278
XIII · Henry in Salonika, and the Empress 284
XIV · The Count Gives Up His Bailiwick 292
XV · Serres Taken, and the Count in Prison 299
XVI · The Lombards of Christopolis Defeated 304
XVII · Roland Pice's Treason 311
XVIII · The Bridge of Larissa 316
XIX · The Lombards Let Go, and Halmyros 324
XX · The Parliament of Ravennika 329
XXI · The Castle of Thebes 334
XXII · The Plot at Negroponte 338
XXIII · Michael's Offer 342

ROBERT DE CLARI

La Conquête de Constantinople

The Conquest of Constantinople

The Preaching and the Crusaders

I

In the time of Pope Innocent and King Philip, Fulk of Neuilly preaches the cross, and God works great miracles through him. Thibaut of Champagne, Baldwin of Flanders, and many others take the cross; Robert names the bishops and barons who went, and then the knights, rich and poor, who did the most deeds of arms, the clerk Aleaume of Clari among them. The barons make Thibaut their lord; he soon dies, leaving his money to the host, and Fulk dies too.

Ichi commenche li prologues de Coustantinoble, comment
Here begins the prologue of Constantinople how
ele fu prise; aprés si orrés pour coi on i ala.
it was taken afterward so you-will-hear for what one there went
Chi commenche li estoires de chiaus qui conquisent 1
Here begins the history of those who conquered
Coustantinoble; si vous dirons aprés qui il furent et
Constantinople so to-you we-will-tell afterward who they were and
par quele raison il i alerent. Il avint, en ichel tans
by what reason they there went It happened in that time
que li papes Innocens estoit apostoiles de Roume, et
that the pope Innocent was pope of Rome and
Phelippes rois de Franche, uns autres Phelippes ert qui
Philip king of France an other Philip was who
estoit empereres d'Alemaingne, et le incarnations estoit de
was emperor of-Germany and the incarnation was of
.m. et .cc. et. iij. ans ou .iiij., que uns prestres
a-thousand and two-hundred and three years or four that a priest
estoit, maistres Foukes avoit a non, qui estoit de Nuelli, une
was master Fulk had as name who was of Neuilly a
parroisse qui est en l'evesquié de Paris. Ichis prestres estoit
parish which is in the-bishopric of Paris This priest was

molt preudons et molt boins clercs, et aloit preeschant
very worthy-man and very good clerk and went preaching
par les teres des crois, et molt de gent le sivoient,
through the lands of-the crosses and many of people him followed
pour chou qu'il estoit si preudons que Damediex faisoit
for this that-he was so worthy-man that Lord-God did
molt grans miracles pour lui; et molt conquist chis prestres
very great miracles for him and much gained this priest
d'avoir a porter en le sainte tere d'outre mer. Adont si fu
of-wealth to carry into the holy land of-beyond sea Then so was
croisiés li cuens Thiebaus de Champaingne et Bauduins, li
crossed the count Thibaut of Champagne and Baldwin the
cuens de Flandres, et Henris ses freres, et Loeis, li cuens
count of Flanders and Henry his brother and Louis the count
de Blois, et Hues, li cuens de Saint Pol, et Symons, li
of Blois and Hugh the count of Saint Pol and Simon the
cuens de Monfort, et Guis ses freres. Aprés si nommerons
count of Montfort and Guy his brother Afterward so we-will-name
les vesques qui y furent. Il y fu li vesques Nevelons
the bishops who there were It there was the bishop Nivelon
de Sessons, qui molt y fu preudons et vallans en tous
of Soissons who very there was worthy-man and worthy in all
commans et en tous besoins, et li vesques Warniers
commands and in all needs and the bishop Garnier
de Troies et li vesques de Hanetaist en Alemaingne et
of Troyes and the bishop of Halberstadt in Germany and
maistres Jehans de Noion, qui estoit eslis a estre evesques
master John of Noyon who was elected to be bishop
d'Acre. Et si y fu li abbes de Los en Flandres, qui estoit
of-Acre And so there was the abbot of Loos in Flanders who was
de maisons de l'ordre de Chistiax (ichis abbes estoit molt
of houses of the-order of Citeaux this abbot was very

sages hons et molt preudons), et autres abés et autres
wise man and very worthy-man and other abbots and other
clers assés que nous ne vous savons mie tous nommer. Et
clerks plenty that we not to-you know at-all all to-name And
des barons qui y furent, nous ne les savons mie tous
of-the barons who there were we not them know at-all all
nommer, mais une partie vous en savons nous nommer. Il
to-name but a part to-you thereof know we to-name It
y fu d'Aminois mesires Pierres d'Amiens, li biax chevaliers
there was of-Amiénois my-lord Peter of-Amiens the fair knight
et li preus et li vaillans, et mesires Engerrans de Bove,
and the valiant and the worthy and my-lord Enguerrand of Boves
lui quart de freres: li uns en eut a non Robers, li
him fourth of brothers the one thereof had as name Robert the
autres Hues, et uns clers leur freres; Bauduins de Biauveoir,
other Hugh and a clerk their brother Baldwin of Beauvoir
Mahiex de Wauslaincourt, li avoés de Betune et Quenes
Matthew of Walincourt the advocate of Béthune and Conon
ses freres, Wistasses de Canteleu, Ansiax de Caieu, Reniers
his brother Eustace of Canteleux Anseau of Cayeux Renier
de Trit, Wales de Friuses, Girars de Manchicort et Nicholes
of Trith Walo of Friuses Gerard of Manchicourt and Nicholas
de Malli, Bauduins Cavarom, Hues de Biauvais, et molt
of Mailly Baldwin Cavarom Hugh of Beauvais and many
d'autres chevaliers haus hommes, qui Flamenc estoient et
of-other knights high men who Flemish were and
d'autres païs, que nous ne vous savons mie tous nommer;
of-other countries that we not to-you know at-all all to-name
et si y fu mesires Jakes d'Avesnes. Et si y fu de
and so there was my-lord James of-Avesnes And so there was of
Bourgougne Oedes de Chanlite et Willames ses freres, qui
Burgundy Odo of Champlitte and William his brother who

molt eurent de gent en l'ost; et si en y eut d'autres
many had of people in the-host and so thereof there had of-others
assés de Borgoune que nous ne vous savons mie tous
plenty of Burgundy that we not to-you know at-all all
nommer. Et de Champaigne y fu li mareschiax et Ogiers
to-name And of Champagne there was the marshal and Ogier
de Saint Cherun et Macaires de Sainte Manehout, et
of Saint Chéron and Macaire of Sainte Menehould and
Clarembaus de Chapes et Miles de Braibant: ichist estoient
Clarembaud of Chappes and Miles of Brabant these were
de Champaingne. Aprés si y fu li castelains de Couchi,
of Champagne Afterward so there was the castellan of Coucy
Robers de Rouschoi, Mahiex de Monmorenchi, qui molt y
Robert of Ronsoy Matthew of Montmorency who very there
fu preudons, Raous d'Aunoi et Wautiers ses fix et Gilles
was worthy-man Ralph of-Aunoy and Walter his son and Giles
d'Aunoi, Pierres de Braichel, li preus chevaliers et li hardis
of-Aunoy Peter of Bracieux the valiant knight and the bold
et li vaillans, et Hues ses freres: et chist que je vous
and the worthy and Hugh his brother and these whom I to-you
nomme ichi estoient de Franche et de Biauvesis. Et de
name here were of France and of Beauvaisis And of
Chartain y fu Gervaise du Castel et Hervius ses fix et
Chartrain there was Gervase of-the Châtel and Hervé his son and
Oliviers de Rochefort, et Pierres d'Alos et Paiens d'Orliens,
Oliver of Rochefort and Peter of-Alos and Payen of-Orléans
Pierres d'Amiens, boins chevaliers et preus et qui molt
Peter of-Amiens good knight and valiant and who much
y fist de proesches, et Thumas, uns clers, ses freres, qui
there did of prowess and Thomas a clerk his brother who
canoines estoit d'Amiens, Manessiers de Lille en Flandres,
canon was of-Amiens Manasses of Lille in Flanders

Mahiex de Monmorenchi, li castelains de Corbie. Or y
Matthew of Montmorency the castellan of Corbie Now there
eut il tant d'autres chevaliers de Franche et de Flandres
had it so-many of-other knights of France and of Flanders
et de Champaingne et de Bourgoune et d'autres païs que
and of Champagne and of Burgundy and of-other countries that
nous ne vous savons mie tous nommer, de vaillans chevaliers
we not to-you know at-all all to-name of worthy knights
et de preus; et chiaus que nous avons chi nommés li
and of valiant and those whom we have here named the
plus rike homme estoient, et si portoient baniere, et si
most rich men were and so bore banner and so
n'avons nous mie tous chiaus nommés qui portoient banieres.
not-have we at-all all those named who bore banners
Et de chiax qui plus y fisent de proesches et d'armes,
And of those who most there did of prowess and of-arms
de riques et de povres, vous savons nous nommer une
of rich and of poor to-you know we to-name a
partie: Pierres de Braiechel, che fu chis de povres et de
part Peter of Bracieux this was this-one of poor and of
rikes qui plus y fist de proesches, et Hues ses freres
rich who most there did of prowess and Hugh his brother
et Andriex de Dureboise et mesires Pierres d'Amiens, li
and Andrew of Dureboise and my-lord Peter of-Amiens the
preus et li biaux, et Mahiex de Monmorenchi et Mahieus
valiant and the fair and Matthew of Montmorency and Matthew
de Wauslaincort et Bauduins de Biauveoir et Henris, li
of Walincourt and Baldwin of Beauvoir and Henry the
freres le conte de Flandres, et Jakes d'Avesnes: che
brother (of-)the count of Flanders and James of-Avesnes these
furent chil des riques hommes qui plus y fisent d'armes.
were those of-the rich men who most there did of-arms

Et des povres, Bernars d'Arie et Bernars de Soubrengien,
And of-the poor Bernard of-Aire and Bernard of Soubrengien
Wistasses de Heemont et ses freres, Gillebers de Vime,
Eustace of Heumont and his brother Gilbert of Vismes
Wales de Friuses, Hues de Biauvais, Robers de Ronschoi,
Walo of Friuses Hugh of Beauvais Robert of Ronsoy
Alars Makereaus, Nicholes de Malli, Guis de Manchicort,
Alard Maquereau Nicholas of Mailly Guy of Manchicourt
Bauduins de Hamelaincort, Willames d'Embrevile, Aleaumes
Baldwin of Hamelincourt William of-Embreville Aleaume
de Clari en Aminois li clers, qui molt y fu preus et
of Clari in Amiénois the clerk who very there was valiant and
molt y fist de hardement et de proesches, Aleaumes de
much there did of boldness and of prowess Aleaume of
Sains, Willerames de Fontaines. Et chiaus que nous avons
Sains Wilram of Fontaines And those whom we have
ichi nommés, che furent chil qui plus y fisent d'armes et
here named these were those who most there did of-arms and
de proesches; et molt d'autre boine gent a cheval et a
of prowess and many of-other good people on horse and on
pié, tant de milliers que nous n'en savons le nombre.
foot so-many of thousands that we not-thereof know the number

2 Aprés s'asamblerent tout li conte et li haut baron qui
Afterward themselves-assembled all the counts and the high barons who
croisié estoient. Si manderent tous les haus hommes qui
crossed were So they-summoned all the high men who
croisié estoient, et quant il vinrent tout ensamble, si
crossed were and when they came all together so
prisent conseil entr'aus de qui il feroient chievetaine
they-took counsel among-themselves of whom they would-make chieftain
d'aus et seigneur, tant qu'il prisent le conte Thiebaut de
of-them and lord so-far that-they took the count Thibaut of

Champaingne, si en fisent lor segneur; puis si se
Champagne so thereof they-made their lord then so themselves
departirent, si s'en ala cascuns en son païs. Et puis
departed so himself-thence went each into his country And then
ne demoura mie gramment aprés que li cuens Tiebaus
not delayed at-all greatly after that the count Thibaut
morut, si laissa .l.m. livres as croisiés et a chelui qui
died so he-left fifty-thousand pounds to-the crusaders and to him who
aprés lui seroit kievetaine et sires des croisiés, et a metre
after him would-be chieftain and lord of-the crusaders and to put
la ou li croisié vauroient. Et si morut aussi maistres
there where the crusaders would-wish And so died also master
Foukes, dont che fu molt grans damages avec les croisiés.
Fulk whereof this was very great harm with the crusaders

Boniface Takes the Cross

II

Grieved by these deaths, the crusaders meet at Soissons and send for the marquis of Montferrat in Lombardy. He crosses the mountains by Mont-Joux and is received with great feasting. The barons ask him to be their lord in Thibaut's place and promise him a great part of Thibaut's money; he takes the cross from the bishop of Soissons for the love of God and to succor the land beyond the sea, and is given twenty-five thousand pounds.

Quant li croisié seurent que li cuens de Champaingne, leur 3
When the crusaders knew that the count of Champagne their
sires, fu mors, et maistres Foukes ausi, si en furent molt
lord was dead and master Fulk also so thereof they-were very
dolent et molt corchié et molt esmari; et s'asanlerent a
sorrowful and very angered and very dismayed and themselves-assembled on

un jour tout a Sessons, et prisent consel entr'aus que il
one day all at Soissons and took counsel among-themselves what they
feroient et de qui il feroient kievetaine et seigneur d'aus,
would-do and of whom they would-make chieftain and lord of-them
tant qu'il s'acorderent entr'aus qu'il envoieroient pour
so-far that-they themselves-agreed among-themselves that-they would-send for
le marchis de Monferras en Lombardie. Il i envoierent
the marquis of Montferrat in Lombardy They there sent
molt boins messages pour lui. Li message s'apareillierent,
very good messengers for him The messengers themselves-prepared
si s'en alerent au marchis. Quant il vinrent la, si
so themselves-thence went to-the marquis When they came there so
parlerent au marchis et si li disent que li baron de
they-spoke to-the marquis and so to-him said that the barons of
Franche le saluoient, et qu'il li mandoient et prioient
France him greeted and that-they to-him sent-word and prayed
pour Dieu que il venist parler a aus a un jor qu'il li
for God that he should-come to-speak to them on a day that-they to-him
nommerent. Quant li marchis oï che, si se merveilla molt
named When the marquis heard this so himself marveled much
de chou que li baron de Franche l'avoient mandé; si respondi
of this that the barons of France him-had summoned so he-answered
as messages qu'il s'en conseilleroit et l'endemain leur
to-the messengers that-he himself-thereof would-counsel and the-next-day to-them
lairoit savoir qu'il en vaurroit faire, et fist molt feste des
would-let know what-he thereof would-wish to-do and made much feast of-the
messages. Quant che vint l'endemain, si leur dist li marchis
messengers When this came the-next-day so to-them said the marquis
qu'il iroit parler a aus a Sessons, a tel jor comme il
that-he would-go to-speak to them at Soissons on such day as they
li avoient nommé. Adont li message prisent congié, si
to-him had named Then the messengers took leave so

s'en revinrent; et li marchis leur offri de ses chevax
themselves-thence came-back and the marquis to-them offered of his horses
et de ses joiaus, mais il n'en vaurrent nul prendre. Et
and of his jewels but they not-thereof wished any to-take And
quant il furent revenu, si fisent savoir as barons qu'il
when they were returned so they-made known to-the barons what-they
avoient fait. Adont atira li marchis sen oirre, et passa les
had done Then arranged the marquis his journey and crossed the
mons de Mongiu et s'en vint en Franche a Sessons,
mountains of Mont-Joux and himself-thence came into France to Soissons
et fist savoir as barons par devant que il venoit, et li
and made known to-the barons in advance that he was-coming and the
baron furent la encontre lui et fisent molt grant feste de lui.
barons were there to-meet him and made very great feast of him
Quant li marchis fu venus a Sessons, si demanda as barons 4
When the marquis was come to Soissons so he-asked of-the barons
pour coi il l'avoient mandé. Et li baron furent consellié, se
for what they him-had summoned And the barons were counseled so
li disent: «Sire, nous vous avons mandé pour che que li
to-him said Lord we you have summoned for this that the
cuens de Champaingne, nos sires, qui estoit nos maistres, est
count of Champagne our lord who was our master is
mors; et nous vous mandames pour le plus preudomme que
dead and we you summoned for the most worthy-man that
nous saviemes, et qui le greigneur consel pooit metre en
we knew and who the greatest counsel could put into
nostre afaire, le voie Damedieu! Si vous proions tout pour
our affair the way (of-)Lord-God So you we-pray all for
Dieu que vous soiés nos sires, et que vous pour l'amour de
God that you be our lord and that you for the-love of
Damedieu pregniés le crois.» Et a ches paroles s'agenoullierent
Lord-God take the cross And at these words themselves-knelt

li baron devant lui, et se li dirent qu'il ne s'esmaiast
the barons before him and so to-him said that-he not himself-should-dismay
mie d'avoir pourcachier, que il li dourroient grant partie de
at-all of-wealth to-procure for they to-him would-give great part of
l'avoir que li cuens de Champaingne avoit laissié as croisiés.
the-wealth that the count of Champagne had left to-the crusaders
Li marchis dist que il s'en conselleroit; et quant il se
The marquis said that he himself-thereof would-counsel and when he himself
fu conseilliés, si respondi que, pour l'amour de Dieu et pour
was counseled so he-answered that for the-love of God and for
secorre le tere d'outre mer, prendroit il le crois. Et li vesques
to-succor the land of-beyond sea would-take he the cross And the bishop
de Sessons fu tantost apareilliés, si li donna le crois. Et
of Soissons was at-once ready so to-him gave the cross And
quant il l'eut prise, si li donna on de l'avoir que li cuens
when he it-had taken so to-him gave one of the-wealth that the count
de Champaingne avoit laissié as croisiés .xxv. mile livres.
of Champagne had left to-the crusaders twenty-five thousand pounds

The Treaty with Venice

III

The barons will not go to Syria, where they could do the Saracens no harm, but to Babylon or Alexandria, and they resolve to hire a fleet. Finding no help at Genoa or Pisa, the envoys turn to the doge of Venice, who offers ships for a hundred thousand marks, fifty galleys at his own cost, and himself, for half the conquests. They bargain him down to eighty-seven thousand, and he sends a man to France for twenty-five thousand marks in earnest.

Aprés quant li marchis fu croissiés, si dist as barons: 5
Afterward when the marquis was crossed so he-said to-the barons
«Seigneur,» fist li marchis, «ou vaurrés vous passer, ne en
Lords said the marquis where will-wish you to-cross or into
quel tere de Sarrasins vaurés vous aler?» Li baron respondirent
what land of Saracens will-wish you to-go The barons answered
que en le tere de Surie ne voloient il mie aler, car il
that into the land of Syria not wished they at-all to-go for they
n'i porroient riens forfaire; mais il avoient pourposé a
not-there could anything do-harm but they had resolved to
aler en Babyloine ou en Alexandre tres en mi aus la
go into Babylon or into Alexandria right in midst-of them there
ou il leur peussent plus forfaire, et avoient pourposement
where they to-them could more do-harm and had purpose
de liwer estoire qui tous ensanle les y passast. Adont dist
to hire fleet which all together them there would-ferry Then said
li marchis que ch'estoit boins consaus, et que il s'i
the marquis that this-was good counsel and that he himself-thereto
acordoit bien, et que on y envoiast bons messages des
agreed well and that one there should-send good messengers of-the

plus sages chevaliers d'aus ou a Pise ou a Genvre ou
most wise knights of-them either to Pisa or to Genoa or
en Venice; a chest consaus s'acordent tot li baron.
to Venice to this counsel themselves-agree all the barons
6 Adont si atirerent leurs messages. Si atirerent tout que
Then so they-arranged their messengers So they-arranged all that
mesires Quenes de Betune y ala et li mareschaus de
my-lord Conon of Béthune there went and the marshal of
Champaingne; puis quant il eurent atiré leur messages, si
Champagne then when they had arranged their messengers so
se departirent li baron, et li marchis s'en en ala
themselves departed the barons and the marquis himself-thence — went
en son païs et li autre ausi cascuns. Si kemanda on as
into his country and the others also each So commanded one to-the
messages que il liuaissent waissiaus a passer .iiij. m.
messengers that they should-hire vessels to ferry four thousand
chevaliers et leur harnas et .c.m. hommes a pié.
knights and their harness and hundred-thousand men on foot
Li message atornerent leur oirre et s'en alerent tout
The messengers prepared their journey and themselves-thence went all
droit tant qu'il vinrent a Genvres, et parlerent a Genevois
straight so-far that-they came to Genoa and spoke to Genoese
et disent leur chou qu'il queroient, et li Genevois disent
and said to-them this that-they sought and the Genoese said
qu'il ne leur en porroient nient aidier. Il s'en
that-they not them therein could at-all help They themselves-thence
alerent aprés a Pise et parlerent a chiax de Pise, et il
went afterward to Pisa and spoke to those of Pisa and they
leur respondirent qu'il n'aroient mie tant de vaissaus et
to-them answered that-they not-would-have at-all so-many of vessels and
qu'il ne porroient nient faire. Aprés si s'en alerent
that-they not could anything do Afterward so themselves-thence went

en Venice, si parlerent au duc de Venice et disent che qu'il
to Venice so they-spoke to-the doge of Venice and said this that-they
estoient quis, que il queroient passage a liwer a .iiij.m.
were seeking that they sought passage to hire for four-thousand
chevaliers et leurs harnas et a .c.m. hommes a pié.
knights and their harness and for hundred-thousand men on foot
Quant li dux oï che, si dist qu'il s'en conseilleroit,
When the doge heard this so he-said that-he himself-thereof would-counsel
que de si grant afaire se devoit on bien conseillier. Adont
for of so great affair oneself ought one well counsel Then
si manda li dux tous les haus consaus de le vile, et parla
so summoned the doge all the high councils of the town and spoke
a aus et leur monstra chou que on li avoit requis.
to them and to-them showed this that one of-him had requested
Et quant il se furent bien conseillié, si respondi li
And when they themselves were well counseled so answered the
dux as messages et leur dist: «Seigneur, nous ferons
doge to-the messengers and to-them said Lords we will-make
volentiers markié a vous, si vous troverons assés navie pour
gladly bargain with you so to-you will-find enough navy for
.c.m. mars, se vous volés, par tel convenant que g'irai
hundred-thousand marks if you wish on such covenant that I-will-go
avec, et le moitié qui armes porront porter de toute Vinice,
with and the half who arms will-be-able bear of all Venice
et par si que nous aions le motié de totes les conquestes
and on such that we have the half of all the conquests
que on y conquerra; et si vous mesrons chinquante galies
that one there will-conquer and so to-you will-put fifty galleys
a no coust, et de chu jour que nous nommerons en un
at our cost and from this day that we will-name in one
an, nous vous mesrons en quele tere que vous vaurrés,
year we you will-put into whatever land that you will-wish

veuillés en Babyloine, veulliés en Alexandre. Quant li
wish into Babylon wish into Alexandria When the
message oïrent chou, si respondirent que che seroit trop
messengers heard this so they-answered that this would-be too-much
en .c.m. mars, et tant parlerent ensanle qu'il fisent
at hundred-thousand marks and so-long they-spoke together that-they made
markié par .lxxx.m. mars et .vij., si que li dux et li
bargain for eighty-thousand marks and seven so that the doge and the
Venicien et li message jurerent a tenir chu markié. Aprés
Venetians and the messengers swore to hold this bargain Afterward
dist li dux qu'il voloit avoir .xxv.m. mars d'eres
said the doge that-he wished to-have twenty-five-thousand marks of-earnest
a commenchier le navie; et li message respondirent qu'il
to begin the navy and the messengers answered that-he
envoiast messages avec aus en Franche, et il leur feroient
should-send messengers with them into France and they to-them would-have
volentiers paier les .xxv.m. mars. Aprés li message
gladly paid the twenty-five-thousand marks Afterward the messengers
prisent congié, si s'en revinrent; et li dux envoia
took leave so themselves-thence came-back and the doge sent
avec aus un haut homme de Venice pour rechevoir les heres.
with them a high man of Venice for to-receive the earnest

The Muster at Venice

IV

The doge forbids every Venetian to trade and sets the city to building the richest fleet ever seen. At Corbie the barons praise their envoys and send the doge's man home with twenty-five thousand marks from Count Thibaut's money, from what Fulk had gathered, and from the count of Flanders. The crusaders are summoned to be at Venice between Pentecost and August, and after Easter they set out, leaving fathers, mothers, sisters, brothers, wives, and children in grief.

Aprés si fist li dux crier sen ban par tote Venice que nus 7
Afterward so had the doge cried his ban through all Venice that any
Veniciens ne fust si hardis qu'il alast en nule markaandise,
Venetian not should-be so bold that-he should-go into any trade
ains aidaissent tout a faire le navie, et il si fisent. Si
but should-help all to make the navy and they so did So
commenchierent le plus rike navie que onques fust veue.
they-began the most rich navy that ever was seen
Quant li message vinrent en Franche, si fisent savoir qu'il 8
When the messengers came into France so they-made known that-they
estoient venu. Puis si manda on tous les barons croisiés
were come Then so summoned one all the barons crossed
qu'il venissent tot a Corbie. Et quant il y furent venu
that-they should-come all to Corbie And when they there were come
tout ensanle, si disent li message chou qu'il avoient trouvé.
all together so said the messengers this that-they had found
Quant li baron l'oïrent, si en furent molt lié, et molt
When the barons it-heard so thereof they-were very glad and much
loerent chou qu'il avoient fait, et fisent molt honneur as
praised this that-they had done and made much honor to-the
messages le duc de Venice, et si leur bailla on des
messengers (of-)the doge of Venice and so to-them delivered one of-the

deniers le conte de Champaingne et des deniers que
pence (of-)the count of Champagne and of-the pence that
maistres Foukes avoit pourchachiés, et si i mist li quens de
master Fulk had procured and so there put the count of
Flandres de ses deniers tant qu'il en i eut .xxv.m.
Flanders of his pence so-far that-it thereof there had twenty-five-thousand
mars. Si les balla on au message le duc de Venice, et
marks So them delivered one to-the messenger (of-)the doge of Venice and
si bailla on boin conduit a aler avec lui dusques en sen païs.
so gave one good escort to go with him as-far into his country
9 Puis manda on tous les croisiés par toutes les teres,
Then summoned one all the crusaders through all the lands
qu'il meussent a le Pasque tout a aler en Venice entre
that-they should-set-out at the Easter all to go into Venice between
le Pentecouste et l'aoust sans nule faille, et il si fisent.
the Pentecost and the-August without any fail and they so did
Et quant le Pasque fu passee, si y vinrent trestout.
And when the Easter was passed so there came all-of-them
Assés y eut peres et meres, sereurs et freres, femmes
Plenty there had fathers and mothers sisters and brothers wives
et enfans, qui grant duel fisent de leur amis.
and children who great grief made of their friends

The Host at Venice Cannot Pay

v

The pilgrims marvel at the fleet and camp on the island of Saint Nicholas, and the Venetians who must sail are chosen by lot. The doge complains that the host is far short of the numbers promised and demands his covenants. One collection leaves fifty thousand marks unpaid, and a second, with much borrowing, thirty-six thousand. Rather than be called cheats, the doge offers passage if they repay that sum from their first conquests, and the camp blazes with torches for joy.

Quant li pelerin furent tot asanlé en Venice et il virrent
When the pilgrims were all assembled in Venice and they saw
le rike navie qui faite estoit, les rikes nes, les grans dromons
the rich navy which made was the rich ships the great dromons
et les uissiers a mener les chevax et les galies, si
and the horse-transports to lead the horses and the galleys so
s'en merveillierent molt et de le grant riqueche que
themselves-thereat marveled much and of the great richness that
il troverent en le vile. Quant il virrent qu'il ne se
they found in the town When they saw that-they not themselves
pooient mie tout herbegier en le vile, si se conseillierent
could at-all all lodge in the town so themselves counseled
entr'aus qu'il s'iroient logier en l'isle Saint Nicholai,
among-themselves that-they themselves-would-go to-lodge on the-isle Saint Nicholas
qui tote estoit enclose de mer, qui estoit a une liwe de
which all was enclosed by sea which was at a league from
Venice. La s'en alerent li pelerin, et drechierent
Venice There themselves-thence went the pilgrims and raised
leur tentes et se logierent au miex qu'il peurent.
their tents and themselves lodged at-the best that-they could

11 Quant li dux de Venice vit que tot li pelerin furent venu,
When the doge of Venice saw that all the pilgrims were come
si manda tous chiaus de se terre de Venice. Et quant il
so summoned all those of his land of Venice And when they
furent tout venu, si kemanda li dux que le motié d'aus
were all come so commanded the doge that the half of-them
s'atornaissent et aparellaissent a aler en l'estoire avec les
themselves-should-equip and should-prepare to go in the-fleet with the
pelerins. Quant li Venicien oïrent chou, si s'esjoiirent li
pilgrims When the Venetians heard this so themselves-rejoiced the
un; li autre disent qu'il n'i pooient aler; ne ne se
ones the others said that-they not-there could go nor not themselves
pooient acorder ensanle comment le moitié d'aus y peust
could agree together how the half of-them there could
aler. Et tant qu'il fisent un sort, que il faisoient doi
go And so-far that-they made a lot that they made two
et doi ensanle deus noiaus de chire, si metoient en l'un
and two together two balls of wax so put in the-one
un brievet, et venoient au prestre, se li donnoient;
a slip and came to-the priest so to-him gave
et li prestres les prinsegnoit, et donnoit a cascun des
and the priest them signed and gave to each of-the
deux Veniciens un de ches noiaus, et chil qui avoit le
two Venetians one of these balls and that-one who had the
noiel au brief, si couvenoit qu'il alast en l'estoire. Ensi
ball with-the slip so behooved that-he should-go in the-fleet Thus
se partirent. Si comme li pelerin se furent logié
themselves divided So as the pilgrims themselves were lodged
en l'isle Saint Nicholai, si ala li dux de Venice et li
on the-isle Saint Nicholas so went the doge of Venice and the
Venicien parler a aus, et demanderent leur convenanches
Venetians to-speak to them and asked their covenants

du navie qu'il avoient fait atirer. Et si leur dist li
of-the navy that-they had had arranged And so to-them said the
dux qu'il avoient mal fait de chou qu'il avoient mandé
doge that-they had ill done of this that-they had sent-word
par leur messages qu'il appareillaissent navie a .iiij.m.
by their messengers that-they should-prepare navy for four-thousand
chevaliers et a leur harnas et a .c.m. hommes a
knights and for their harness and for hundred-thousand men on
pié, et des ches .iiij.m. chevaliers n'i avoit il mie
foot and of these four-thousand knights not-there had it at-all
plus d'un millier, qu'il estoient alé as autres pors, ne
more than-a thousand for-they were gone to-the other ports nor
de ches .c. mille hommes a pié n'i avoit mie plus
of these a-hundred thousand men on foot not-there had at-all more
de .l. mile ou de .lx.: «Dont nous volons», fist li dux,
than fifty thousand or than sixty Then we wish said the doge
«que vous nous paiés les convenanches, que on nous eut
that you to-us pay the covenants that one to-us had
en convenent.» Quant li croisié oïrent chou, si parlerent
in covenant When the crusaders heard this so they-spoke
ensanle; si eswarderent entr'aus que cascuns chevaliers
together so determined among-themselves that each knight
donroit quatre mars, et cascuns chevax quatre et cascuns
would-give four marks and each horse four and each
serjans a cheval deus mars, et chis qui mains li donroit,
sergeant on horse two marks and he who least to-him would-give
si donroit un marc. Quant il eurent ches deniers cueillis,
so would-give one mark When they had these pence gathered
si les paierent as Veniciens, si remesent encore .l. mile
so them they-paid to-the Venetians so remained still fifty thousand
mars a paier. Quant li dux et li Venicien virrent que li
marks to pay When the doge and the Venetians saw that the

pelerin ne leur avoient plus paié, si furent tout corchié,
pilgrims not to-them had more paid so they-were all angered
tant que li dux parla a aus: «Seigneur,» fist il, «vous nous
so-far that the doge spoke to them Lords said he you us
avés mal baillis, car si tost comme vo message eurent fait
have ill treated for so soon as your messengers had made
convent a mi et a me gent, kemandai jou par tote
covenant with me and with my people commanded I through all
me tere que nus marcaans n'alast marcaander, ains aidast
my land that any merchant not-should-go to-trade but should-help
a apareillier cheste navie, et il y unt puis tous jours
to prepare this navy and they there have since all days
atendu, ne n'i waaingnierent rien passé a un an et
waited nor not-there gained anything passed has a year and
demi. Ains y ont molt perdu; et pour chou veulent
half But there they-have much lost and for this wish
mi homme et jou ausi, que vous paiés les deniers que vous
my men and I also that you pay the pence that you
nous devés. Et se vous ensi nel faites, sachiés que vous ne
to-us owe And if you thus not-it do know that you not
vous moverés de cheste isle devant la que nous serons
yourselves will-move from this isle before there that we will-be
paié, ne ne troverés qui vous port ne que boire ne que
paid nor not will-find who to-you may-bring either what to-drink or what
menger.» Li dux fut molt preudons, si ne laissa mie pour
to-eat The doge was very worthy-man so not left-off at-all for
chou que on ne leur portast assés a boire et a menger.
this that one — to-them should-bring plenty to drink and to eat

12 Quant li conte et li homme croisié oïrent chou que li
When the counts and the men crossed heard this that the
dux avoit dit, si furent molt dolent et molt esmari. Si
doge had said so they-were very sorrowful and very dismayed So

refisent une autre cuelloite, et enprunterent tant de
they-made-again an other collection and borrowed so-much of
deniers comme il peurent a chiax qu'il quidoient qui
pence as they could from those whom-they believed who
en eussent. Si les paierent as Veniciens, et quant il
thereof had So them they-paid to-the Venetians and when they
les eurent paiés, si demorerent encore a paier .xxxvi.m.
them had paid so remained still to pay thirty-six-thousand
mars; et si leur disent qu'il estoient maubailli, et que
marks and so to-them said that-they were ill-treated and that
l'os estoit molt apovriie de chele cuelloite qu'il avoient
the-host was very impoverished by that collection that-they had
fait, et qu'il ne pooient plus pourcachier de deniers qu'il
made and that-they not could more procure of pence that-they
leur paiaissent, ains en avoient assés povrement a leur
to-them might-pay but thereof had quite poorly to their
ost maintenir. Quant li dux vit qu'il ne pooient mie
host maintain When the doge saw that-they not could at-all
tous les deniers paier, ains en estoient molt a mal aise,
all the pence pay but thereby were very at ill ease
si parla a se gent et si leur dist: «Seigneur,» fist il,
so he-spoke to his people and so to-them said Lords said he
«se nous laissons aler ches gens en leur païs, nous serons
if we let go these people into their country we will-be
mais tous jours tenu pour malvais et pour trikeeur. Mais
henceforth all days held for wicked and for tricksters But
alons dusques a aus, et si leur disons que, s'il nous
let-us-go as-far to them and so to-them let-us-say that if-they to-us
veullent rendre ches .xxxvi.m. mars que il nous doivent
wish to-render these thirty-six-thousand marks that they to-us owe
des premeraines conquestes qu'il feront et qu'il aront
from-the first conquests that-they will-make and that-they will-have

a leur partie, que nous les mesrons outre mer.» Li Venicien
to their part that we them will-put beyond sea The Venetians
s'acorderent bien a chou que li dux avoit dit. Dont si
themselves-agreed well to this that the doge had said Then so
alerent as pelerins la ou il s'estoient logié. Si comme
they-went to-the pilgrims there where they themselves-were lodged So as
il furent la venu, si leur dist li dux: «Seigneur,» fist
they were there come so to-them said the doge Lords said
il, «nous avons pris consel entre mi et me gent en tele
he we have taken counsel between me and my people in such
maniere que, se vous nous volés greanter loiaument que vous
manner that if you to-us wish to-grant loyally that you
nous paierés ches .xxxvi.m. mars que vous nous devés a
to-us will-pay these thirty-six-thousand marks that you to-us owe at
le premeraine conqueste que vous ferés de vo partie, nous
the first conquest that you will-make of your part we
vous mesrons outre mer.» Quant li croisié oïrent cho que
you will-put beyond sea When the crusaders heard this that
li dux leur avoit dit et moustré, si en furent molt lié
the doge to-them had said and shown so thereof they-were very glad
et se li caïrent as piés de goie, et se li creanterent
and so to-him fell at-the feet for joy and so to-him promised
loiaument qu'il feroient molt volentiers chou que li dux
loyally that-they would-do very gladly this that the doge
avoit devisé. Si fisent si grant goie le nuit qu'il n'i
had proposed So they-made so great joy the night that-it not-there
eut si povre qui ne fesist grant luminaire, et portoient en
had so poor who not made great illumination and they-bore on
son les lanches grans torkes de candeilles entor leur loges
top-of the lances great torches of candles around their lodges
et par dedens, que che sanloit que tote l'os fust esprise.
and by within so-that it seemed that all the-host were afire

Zara

VI

The doge proposes to winter at Zara, which has wronged Venice, and only the high men know the plan. The fleet sails out to silver trumpets and the Veni creator*, the fairest sight since the world began. At Zara the doge disregards the pope's letters of excommunication; Simon of Montfort and Enguerrand of Boves refuse and go to Hungary. The town surrenders, a brawl is quelled, the bishop of Soissons brings absolution, and the host finds itself too poor to go on.*

Aprés vint li dux a aus, si leur dist: «Seigneur, il est 13
Afterward came the doge to them so to-them said Lords it is
ore yvers, ne nous ne porriemes passer mie outre mer, ne
now winter nor we not could cross at-all beyond sea nor
che n'est mie remés en mi, car je vous eusse piecha fait
this not-is at-all stayed in me for I you would-have long-ago had
passer, s'il ne fust remés en vous. Mais faisons le bien!» fist
cross if-it not were stayed in you But let-us-do it well said
li dux, «Il a une chité pres de chi, Jadres a a non. Chil
the doge It has a city near of here Zara has as name Those
de le vile nous ont molt meffait, et jou et mi homme
of the town us have much wronged and I and my men
nous volons vengier d'aus, se nous poons. Et se vous me
ourselves wish to-avenge of-them if we can And if you me
volés croire, nous y irons chest yver sejorner dusques vers
wish to-believe we there will-go this winter to-sojourn until toward
le Pasque; et adonc si atierrons no navie, si nous en
the Easter and then so we-will-arrange our navy so ourselves thence
irons outre mer a l'aiue Damedieu. Et le vile de Jadres
will-go beyond sea with the-aid (of-)Lord-God And the town of Zara
est mout boine et molt plentiive de tous biens!» Li barom
is very good and very plentiful of all goods The barons

et li haut homme croisié s'asentirent a chou que li
and the high men crossed themselves-assented to this that the
dux avoit dit; mes tout chil de l'ost ne seurent mie chest
doge had said but all those of the-host not knew at-all this
consel, fors li plus haut homme. Adont si atirerent tout
counsel except the most high men Then so they-arranged all
communaument leur oirre et leur navie tout entirement; si
in-common their journey and their navy all entirely so
se misent en le mer. Et cascuns des haus homes avoit
themselves put into the sea And each of-the high men had
se nef a lui et a se gent et sen uissier a ses chevax
his ship to him and to his people and his horse-transport to his horses
mener, et li dux de Venice avoit avec lui chinquante galies
lead and the doge of Venice had with him fifty galleys
tout a sen coust. Le galie ou ens il estoit ert toute
all at his cost The galley where in he was was all
vermeille, et si avoit un pavellon tendu par deseure lui
vermilion and so it-had a canopy stretched right above him
d'un vermeil samit; si avoit quatre buisines d'argent devant
of-a vermilion samite so it-had four trumpets of-silver before
lui qui buisinoient et tymbres qui grant goie demenoient.
him which trumpeted and timbrels which great joy made
Et tout li haut homme, et clerc et lai et petit et grant,
And all the high men and clerks and lay and small and great
demenerent si grant goie a l'esmovoir que onques encore
made so great joy at the-setting-out that ever yet
si faite goie ne si fais estoires ne fu veus ne oïs; et
so made joy nor so made fleet not was seen nor heard and
si fisent li pelerin monter as castiaus des nes tous les
so had the pilgrims mount to-the castles of-the ships all the
prestres et les clers qui canterent Veni creator spiritus. Et
priests and the clerks who sang Come creator spirit And

trestout et grant et petit plorerent de pec et de le grant
all both great and small wept for pity and for the great
goie qu'i eurent. Et quant li estoires parti du port
joy that-they had And when the fleet departed from-the port
de Venice, et *** dromons et ches rikes nes et tant
of Venice and (lacuna) dromons and these rich ships and so-many
d'autres vaissiaus, que ch'estoit le plus bele cose a eswarder
of-other vessels that this-was the most fair thing to behold
qui fust tres le commenchement du monde, car il y
which was since the beginning of-the world for it there
avoit bien chent paire de busines, que d'argent que d'arain,
had well hundred pair of trumpets both of-silver and of-brass
qui toutes sonnerent a l'esmovoir, et tant de tymbres et
which all sounded at the-setting-out and so-many of timbrels and
tabours et autres estrumens, que ch'estoit une fine merveille.
drums and other instruments that this-was a pure marvel
Quant il furent en chele mer et il eurent tendu leur
When they were on that sea and they had stretched their
voiles et leur banieres mises haut as castiaus des nes et
sails and their banners put high on-the castles of-the ships and
leur enseingnes, si sanla bien que le mers formiast toute
their ensigns so seemed well that the sea teemed all
et qu'ele fust toute enbrasee des nes qu'il menoient et
and that-it were all ablaze with-the ships that-they led and
de la grant goie qu'il demenoient. Adont si alerent tant
with the great joy that-they made Then so they-went so-far
qu'il vinrent a une chité, Poles avoit a non. Illueques
that-they came to a city Pola had as name There
ariverent, si se rafreskirent, se y sejournerent un peu,
they-arrived so themselves refreshed so there sojourned a little
tant qu'il furent bien rafreski et qu'il eurent acaté des
so-far that-they were well refreshed and that-they had bought some

nouveles viandes a metre en leur nes. Aprés se se
fresh victuals to put in their ships Afterward so themselves
remisent en le mer. S'il eurent grant goie et grant feste
put-again into the sea If-they had great joy and great feast
demenee par devant, encore demenerent il adonques ausi
made just before yet made they then as
grant ou greigneur, si que les gens de le vile s'en
great or greater so that the people of the town themselves-thereat
mervellierent trop de le grant goie et de grant estoire et
marveled exceedingly of the great joy and of great fleet and
de le grant nobleche qu'il demenoient; et si disent bien,
of the great nobility that-they displayed and so said well
et ch'estoit voirs, que onques si biaus estoires ne si rikes ne
and this-was true that ever so fair fleet nor so rich not
fu veus ne assanlés en nule tere, comme il avoit illueques.
was seen nor assembled in any land as it had there

14 Li Venicien et li pelerin se singlerent tant qu'il
The Venetians and the pilgrims themselves sailed so-far that-they
vinrent a Jadres la nuit de le feste saint Martin. Chil
came to Zara the night of the feast (of-)saint Martin Those
de le vile de Jadres, quant il virrent ches nes et ches
of the town of Zara when they saw these ships and these
grans estoires venir, si eurent molt grant peur; si fisent les
great fleets come so had very great fear so had the
portes de le vile fremer et si s'armerent au miex qu'il
gates of the town shut and so themselves-armed at-the best that-they
peurent, comme pour aus desfendre. Quant il furent
could as for themselves to-defend When they were
armé, li dux parla a tous les haus homes de l'ost, si leur
armed the doge spoke to all the high men of the-host so to-them
dist: «Seignor, cheste vile a molt meffait a mi et a me
said Lords this town has much wronged to me and to my

gent; je m'en vengeroie volentiers. Si vous pri que vous
people I myself-thereof would-avenge gladly So you I-pray that you
me soiés en aiue.» Et li baron et li haut homme li
to-me be in aid And the barons and the high men to-him
respondirent que il li aideroient volentiers. Or savoient
answered that they him would-help gladly Now knew
il bien chil de Jadres que chil de Venice les haoient. Si
they well those of Zara that those of Venice them hated So
avoient pourcachié unes lettres de Rome, que trestout chil
they-had procured some letters from Rome that all those
qui les werieroient ou qui leur feroient nul damage,
who them would-make-war-on or who to-them would-do any harm
qu'il fussent eskemenié. Si envoierent ches letres par boins
that-they should-be excommunicated So they-sent these letters by good
messages au duc et as pelerins qui illueques estoient
messengers to-the doge and to-the pilgrims who there were
arivé. Quant li message vinrent a l'ost, si lut on les letres
arrived When the messengers came to the-host so read one the letters
devant le duc et devant les pelerins. Quant les letres
before the doge and before the pilgrims When the letters
furent lutes et li dux les eut entendues, il dist qu'il ne
were read and the doge them had heard he said that-he not
lairoit mie pour l'eskemeniement l'apoistoile qu'il ne se
would-leave-off at-all for the-excommunication (of-)the-pope that-he — himself
venjast de chiax de le vile. A tant s'en alerent
should-avenge of those of the town With that themselves-thence went
li message. Li dux parla autre fois as barons, si leur
the messengers The doge spoke other time to-the barons so to-them
dist: «Seigneur, sachiés que je ne le lairoie a nul fuer
said Lords know that I not it would-leave-off at any price
que je ne m'en venjaisse d'aus, ne pour l'apostoile!» Et
that I — myself-thereof should-avenge of-them nor for the-pope And

pria les barons qu'il li aidaissent. Li baron respondirent
prayed the barons that-they him should-help The barons answered
tout qu'il li aideroient volentiers, fors seulement li
all that-they him would-help gladly except only the
cuens Symons de Monfort et mesires Engerrans de Bove.
count Simon of Montfort and my-lord Enguerrand of Boves
Chil disent qu'il n'iroient mie contre le commandement
Those said that-they not-would-go at-all against the commandment
l'apostoile, ne qu'il ne voloient mie estre eskemenié; si
(of-)the-pope nor that-they not wished at-all to-be excommunicated so
s'atornerent, si alerent en Honguerie sejourner tot l'iver.
themselves-equipped so went into Hungary to-sojourn all the-winter
Quant li dux vit que li baron li aideroient, si fist drechier
When the doge saw that the barons him would-help so had raised
ses engiens a assalir a le vile, tant que chil de le vile
his engines to assail at the town so-far that those of the town
virrent qu'il ne pooient avoir duree; si virrent a merchi,
saw that-they not could have endurance so came to mercy
si leur rendirent le vile. Adont si y entrerent li pelerin
so to-them surrendered the town Then so there entered the pilgrims
et li Venicien, si parti on le vile en deus moitiés, si que
and the Venetians so divided one the town in two halves so that
li pelerin en eurent l'une moitié et li Venicien l'autre.
the pilgrims thereof had the-one half and the Venetians the-other
15 Aprés si avint que une grans meslee leva entre les Veniciens
Afterward so happened that a great brawl rose between the Venetians
et le menue gent des pelerins, qui dura bien une nuit et
and the small people of-the pilgrims which lasted well a night and
demi jour. Et fu si grans chele meslee que a paines les
half day And was so great that brawl that with pains them
peurent li chevalier desmeler. Quant il les eurent desmeslés,
could the knights separate When they them had separated

si y misent si bele pais que onques puis ne furent par mal
so there put so fair peace that ever since not were on ill
ensanle. Aprés li haut homme croisié et li Venicien parlerent
together Afterward the high men crossed and the Venetians spoke
ensanle de l'eskemeniement dont il furent eskemenié, de
together of the-excommunication whereby they were excommunicated for
le vile qu'il avoient prise, tant qu'il se conseillierent
the town that-they had taken so-far that-they themselves counseled
entr'aus qu'il envoieroient a Rome pour estre assous;
among-themselves that-they would-send to Rome for to-be absolved
tant qu'il y envoierent le vesque de Sessons et mon
so-far that-they there sent the bishop of Soissons and my
seigneur Robert de Bove pourcachierent lettres de l'apostoile
lord Robert of Boves they-procured letters from the-pope
que tout li pelerin et tout li Venicien fussent assaus. Quant
that all the pilgrims and all the Venetians should-be absolved When
il eurent leur letres, si s'en revint li vesques au
they had their letters so himself-thence came-back the bishop at-the
plus tost qu'il peut; et mesires Robers de Bove ne revint
most soon that-he could and my-lord Robert of Boves not came-back
mie avec lui, ains s'en ala outre mer droit de Rome.
at-all with him but himself-thence went beyond sea straight from Rome
Entrementiers que li croisié et li Venicien sejornerent 16
Meanwhile that the crusaders and the Venetians sojourned
illueques l'iver, si se pourpenserent qu'il avoient molt
there the-winter so themselves bethought that-they had much
despendu; et parlerent ensanle et disent qu'il ne pooient
spent and spoke together and said that-they not could
mie aler en Babyloine, ne en Alixandre, ne en Surie, car il
at-all go into Babylon nor into Alexandria nor into Syria for they
n'avoient mie viandes ne avoir dont il y peussent aler, car
not-had at-all victuals nor wealth whereby they there could go for

il avoient ja pres de tout despendu, que ens u sejorner
they had already near of all spent both in the sojourn
qu'il avoient fait, que ens u grant loier qu'il avoient
that-they had made and in the great hire that-they had
donné au navie. Et disent qu'il n'i pooient mie aler,
given to-the navy And said that-they not-there could at-all go
et s'il y aloient, n'i feroient il nient, qu'il n'avoient
and if-they there went not-there would-do they anything for-they not-had
ne viande ne avoir dont il se peussent soustenir.
neither victuals nor wealth whereby they themselves could sustain

The Young Alexius and the Emperor Manuel

VII

The doge proposes Greece, and the marquis tells of a youth at the German court, son of Kyrsac, whose brother took his empire. The generous Manuel, who loves the French, tests his Greeks in a feigned quarrel, and they flee. He weds his son to the French king's sister. Andronicus carries off Queen Theodora, returns after Manuel's death, murders the boy emperor and his mother, and hunts the house of Angel, until Kyrsac, poor and in hiding, cleaves the emperor's bailiff to the teeth.

17 Li dux de Venice vit bien que li pelerin n'estoient mie a
The doge of Venice saw well that the pilgrims not-were at-all at
aise; si parla a aus et si leur dist: «Seigneur, en Grece
ease so he-spoke to them and so to-them said Lords in Greece
a molt rike tere et molt plentive de tous biens; se nous
there-is very rich land and very plentiful of all goods if we
poiemes avoir raisnavle acoison d'aler y et de prendre
could have reasonable occasion to-go there and to take
viandes en le tere et autres coses, tant que nous fuissiemes
victuals in the land and other things so-far that we were

bien restoré, che me sanleroit boins consaus, et si porriemes
well restored this to-me would-seem good counsel and so we-could
bien outre mer aler.» Adont se leva li marchis, si dist:
well beyond sea go Then himself rose the marquis so said
«Seigneur, je fui antan au Noel en Alemaingne, a le
Lords I was last-year at-the Christmas in Germany at the
court mon seigneur l'empereour. Illueques si vi un vaslet
court (of-)my lord the-emperor There so I-saw a youth
qui estoit freres a le femme l'empereur d'Alemaingne. Chus
who was brother to the wife (of-)the-emperor of-Germany This
vaslés si fu fix l'empereur Kyrsac de Coustantinoble, que
youth so was son (of-)the-emperor Kyrsac of Constantinople whom
uns siens freres li avoit tolu l'empire de Constantinoble
a his-own brother from-him had taken the-empire of Constantinople
par traïson. Qui chu vaslet porroit avoir,» fist li marchis, «il
by treason Who this youth could have said the marquis he
porroit bien aler en le tere de Constantinoble et prendre
could well go into the land of Constantinople and take
viandes et autres coses, car li vaslés en est drois oirs.»
victuals and other things for the youth thereof is rightful heir
Or vous lairons chi ester des pelerins et de l'estoire, 18
Now you we-will-leave here be of-the pilgrims and of the-fleet
si vous dirons de chu vaslet et de l'empereur Kyrsaac,
so to-you we-will-tell of this youth and of the-emperor Kyrsac
sen pere, comment il vinrent avant. Il eu un empereur en
his father how they came forward It had an emperor in
Constantinoble, Manuaus eut a non. Si fu molt preudons
Constantinople Manuel had as name So was very worthy-man
chis empereres et li plus rikes de tous les crestiens qui
this emperor and the most rich of all the Christians who
onques fuissent et li plus larges; ne onques nus ne li
ever were and the most generous nor ever anyone not of-him

demanda du sien, qui de le loi de Rome fust, qui a
asked of-the his who of the law of Rome was who to
lui peust parler, qu'il ne li fesist donner cent mars:
him could speak that-he not to-him had given hundred marks
ensi l'avons oï tesmoignier. Chis empereres amoit molt
thus it-we-have heard testified This emperor loved much
Franchois et mout les creoit. Un jour avint que le gent
French and much them trusted One day happened that the people
de se tere et si consellier le blasmerent molt, et par
of his land and his counselors him blamed much and by
maintes fois l'avoient blasmé, de chou qu'il estoit si larges
many times him-had blamed of this that-he was so generous
et qu'il amoit si durement les Franchois, et li empereres
and that-he loved so greatly the French and the emperor
leur respondi: «Il ne sont que deus hommes qui doivent
to-them answered There not are but two men who ought
donner: Damediex et jou. Mais, se vous le loés, je douroie
give Lord-God and I But if you it advise I would-give
congié as Franchois et a tous chiaus de le loi de Romme,
leave to-the French and to all those of the law of Rome
qui entor mi et me poosté sont.» Et li Grieu en furent
who around me and my power are And the Greeks thereof were
molt lié et disent: «Ha! sire, or feriés vous molt bien et
very glad and said Ah lord now would-do you very well and
nous vous servirons molt bien!» Et li empereres kemanda
we you will-serve very well And the emperor commanded
que tout li Franchois s'en alaissent, et li Grieu en
that all the French themselves-thence should-go and the Greeks thereof
furent si lié que trop. Li empereres manda aprés que
were so glad that exceedingly The emperor sent-word afterward that
tout li Franchois et li autre a qui il avoit donné congié,
all the French and the others to whom he had given leave

qu'il venissent parler a lui priveement, et il si fisent. Et
that-they should-come to-speak to him privately and they so did And
quant il furent venu, si leur dist li empereres: «Seigneur,
when they were come so to-them said the emperor Lords
me gent ne me laissent en pais que je ne vous doingne
my people not me leave in peace that I not to-you give
nient et que je vous encache hors de me tere; mais or
anything and that I you drive out of my land but now
vous en alés tout ensanle et je vous siurrai entre mi
yourselves thence go all together and I you will-follow between me
et toute me gent, et si soiés en un lieu», qu'i leur
and all my people and so be in a place that-he to-them
nomma, «et je vous manderai par mes messages que vous
named and I to-you will-send-word by my messengers that you
vous en voisiés, et vous me manderés que vous ne
yourselves thence go and you to-me will-send-word that you not
vous en irés mie pour mi ne pour me gent, ains ferés
yourselves thence will-go at-all for me nor for my people but will-make
grant sanlant de mi corre sus: adont si verrai comment me
great show of me to-run upon then so I-will-see how my
gent se proveront.» Et il le fisent tot si; et quant il
people themselves will-prove And they it did all so and when they
s'en furent alé, li empereres manda se gent toute, si
themselves-thence were gone the emperor summoned his people all so
les sivi. Et quant il vint pres d'aus, il leur manda qu'il
them followed And when he came near of-them he to-them sent-word that-they
s'en alaissent esraument et qu'il widaissent se tere;
themselves-thence should-go forthwith and that-they should-quit his land
et chil qui avoient loé l'empereur qu'il les cachast hors
and those who had advised the-emperor that-he them should-drive out
de se tere furent molt lié, et disent a l'empereur: «Sire,
of his land were very glad and said to the-emperor Lord

s'il ne s'en veulent aler esraument, donnés nous
if-they not themselves-thence wish to-go forthwith give us
congié que nous les ochions tous.» Li empereres respondi:
leave that we them may-kill all The emperor answered
«Volentiers». Et quant li message a l'empereur vinrent as
Gladly And when the messengers of the-emperor came to-the
Franchois, il leur disent leur message mout orgelleusement
French they to-them said their message very proudly
qu'il s'en alaissent tantost. Li Franchois respondirent
that-they themselves-thence should-go at-once The French answered
as messages, si leur disent qu'i ne s'en yroient
to-the messengers so to-them said that-they not themselves-thence would-go
mie pour l'empereur ne pour se gent. Li message s'en
at-all for the-emperor nor for his people The messengers themselves-thence
revinrent arriere et conterent chou que li Franchois avoient
came-back back and recounted this that the French had
respondu. Dont si kemanda li empereres a se gent qu'il
answered Then so commanded the emperor to his people that-they
s'armaissent et qu'i li aidaissent a corre sus les
themselves-should-arm and that-they him should-help to run upon the
Franchois, et il s'armerent tout; si s'en alerent
French and they themselves-armed all so themselves-thence went
vers les Franchois. Et li Franchois virrent encontre aus, si
toward the French And the French came against them so
eurent molt bien leur batailles ordenees. Quant li empereres
had very well their battalions ordered When the emperor
vit qu'il venoient vers lui et vers se gent pour combatre,
saw that-they were-coming toward him and toward his people for to-fight
si dist a se gent: «Seigneur, or pensés du bien faire! Or
so said to his people Lords now think of-the well doing Now
vous poés vous bien vengier d'aus.» Si comme il eut che
you can yourselves well avenge of-them So as he had this

dit, li Grieu eurent molt grant paour des Latins que il
said the Greeks had very great fear of-the Latins whom they
virrent si aprochier d'aus (ore apele on tous chiax de le loy
saw so approach of-them now calls one all those of the law
de Romme Latins), et li Latin fisent grant sanlant d'aus
of Rome Latins and the Latins made great show of-them
corre sus. Quant li Grieu virrent chou, si tornent en fuies,
to-run upon When the Greeks saw this so turn in flight
si laissent l'empereur trestot seul. Quant li empereres vit
so leave the-emperor all alone When the emperor saw
chou, si dist as Franchois: «Seigneur, or revenés arriere
this so said to-the French Lords now come-back back
et je vous dourai plus que je ne fis onques mais.» Si en
and I to-you will-give more than I — did ever before So thence
remena les Franchois; et quant il fu revenus, si manda
he-led-back the French and when he was returned so summoned
se gent, si leur dist: «Seigneur, or puet on bien veir
his people so to-them said Lords now can one well see
en cui on se doit fier; vous vous en fuistes quant
in whom one oneself ought trust you yourselves thence fled when
vous me deustes aidier, si me laissastes tout seul, et, se
you me ought help so me left all alone and if
li Latin vaussissent, il m'eussent tot decopé en pieches.
the Latins had-wished they me-would-have all cut-up in pieces
Mais, or kemanch jou, que nus de vous ne soit si osés
But now command I that anyone of you not be so daring
ne si hardis qu'il ja mais paraut de me largueche, ne
nor so bold that-he ever more should-speak of my generosity nor
de chou que j'aim les Franchois, car je les aim et si me
of this that I-love the French for I them love and so myself
fi plus en aus que en vous; et si leur donrai plus que
trust more in them than in you and so to-them will-give more than

jou ne leur ai donné.» Et li Grieu ne furent onques
I — to-them have given And the Greeks not were ever
puis si hardi qu'il en osaissent parler.
since so bold that-they thereof dared speak

19 Chis empereres Manuuaus avoit un molt bel fil de se
This emperor Manuel had a very fair son by his
femme, et se pourpensa qu'il le voloit marier au plus
wife and himself bethought that-he him wished to-marry at-the most
hautement qu'il porroit, et, par le conseil des Franchois qui
highly that-he could and by the counsel of-the French who
entor lui estoient, si manda a Phelippom, le roi de Franche,
around him were so sent-word to Philip the king of France
qu'il li donnast se sereur avec sen fil. Si envoia li
that-he to-him should-give his sister with his son So sent the
empereres ses messages en Franche, qui molt estoient haut
emperor his messengers into France who very were high
homme et molt y alerent rikement; ne onques ne vit on
men and very there went richly nor ever not saw one
gens plus rikement ne plus noblement aler que chil fisent, si
people more richly nor more nobly go than those did so
que li rois de France et se gent se merveillierent de le
that the king of France and his people themselves marveled of the
grant nobleche que li message menoient. Quant li message
great nobility that the messengers displayed When the messengers
vinrrent au roi, se li disent chou que li empereres li
came to-the king so to-him said this that the emperor to-him
mandoit. Et li rois dit qu'il s'en conseilleroit; et
sent-word And the king says that-he himself-thereof would-counsel and
quant li rois se fu conseilliés, si li loerent si baron qu'il
when the king himself was counseled so him advised his barons that-he
envoiast se sereur a si haut homme et a si rike homme
should-send his sister to so high man and to so rich man

comme li empereres estoit. Dont si respondi li rois as
as the emperor was Then so answered the king to-the
messages qu'il envoieroit volentiers se sereur a l'empereur.
messengers that-he would-send gladly his sister to the-emperor
Adont si atorna li rois mout rikement se sereur, si l'envoia
Then so equipped the king very richly his sister so her-sent
avec les messages en Constantinoble et assés de se gent avec
with the messengers into Constantinople and plenty of his people with
lui, et chevauchierent tant et errerent qu'il ne cesserent, si
her and they-rode so-long and journeyed that-they not ceased so
vinrent en Coustantinoble. Quant il furent venu, si en fist
came into Constantinople When they were come so thereof made
li empereres molt grant feste de le damoisele et grant goie
the emperor very great feast of the damsel and great joy
et de lui et de se gent. Entrementiers que li empereres eut
and of her and of her people Meanwhile that the emperor had
envoié pour chele damoisele, si renvoia d'autre part outre mer
sent for that damsel so sent-in-turn on-other side beyond sea
un sien parent qu'il molt amoit, Andromes avoit a non,
a his-own kinsman whom-he much loved Andronicus had as name
pour le roine Teudore de Jherusalem, qui se suers estoit, qu'ele
for the queen Theodora of Jerusalem who his sister was that-she
venist au courounement sen fil et a se feste. Le roine
should-come to-the coronation (of-)his son and to his feast The queen
se mist en mer avec Androme a venir en Constantinoble.
herself put to sea with Andronicus to come into Constantinople
Quant il furent bien alé avant en le mer, si ne fait mais
When they were well gone forward on the sea so not does more
el Andromes, si aama le roine, qui se cousine estoit, et jut
else Andronicus so loved the queen who his cousin was and lay
a lui a forche. Et quant il eut che fait, si n'osa revenir
with her by force And when he had this done so not-dared return

arriere en Coustantinoble, ains prist le roine, si l'en mena
back into Constantinople but took the queen so her-thence led
a force au Coine, as Sarrasins. Illueques si demoura.
by force to-the Iconium to-the Saracens There so remained
21 Quant li empereres Manuaus seut les nouveles que Andromes
When the emperor Manuel knew the news that Andronicus
eut si faitement le roine se seureur menee, si en fut
had in-such wise the queen his sister led-off so thereof was
molt dolens, et pour che ne lassa il mie qu'il ne fesist
very sorrowful and for this not left-off he at-all that-he — should-make
grant feste et qu'il ne coronast sen fil et le damoisele;
great feast and that-he — should-crown his son and the damsel
ne demora mie graument aprés que li empereres morut.
not delayed at-all greatly after that the emperor died
Quant Andromes li traïtres oï dire que li empereres
When Andronicus the traitor heard tell that the emperor
Manuaus fu mors, si envoia a sen fil, qui empereres estoit,
Manuel was dead so sent to his son who emperor was
et se li fist requerre pour Dieu qu'il li pardonnast
and so to-him had requested for God that-he to-him should-pardon
sen mautalent, et si li fist acroire que che ne fu se
his ill-will and so to-him made believe that this not was except
menchoingne non que on li avoit mis sus, tant que li
lie not that one on-him had put upon so-far that the
empereres, qui enfes estoit, li pardonna sen mautalent,
emperor who child was to-him pardoned his ill-will
si li manda, tant que chis Andromes revint arriere, et
so to-him sent-word so-far that this Andronicus came-back back and
fu entor l'enfant, tant que li enfes le fist bailliu de tote
was around the-child so-far that the child him made bailiff of all
se terre, et qu'il fu orguellex que trop de le balliie
his land and that-he was proud that exceedingly of the bailiwick

qu'il avoit. Ne demora mie graument aprés qu'il prist par
that-he had Not delayed at-all greatly after that-he took by
nuit l'empereur, si le mourdri et se mere aussi. Quant il
night the-emperor so him murdered and his mother also When he
eut che fait, si prist deus grandesmes pierres, si leur fist
had this done so took two very-great stones so to-them had
lier as cous et puis si les fist geter en le mer. Aprés
tied to-the necks and then so them had thrown into the sea Afterward
si se fist coroner tot a force a empereur. Quant il fu
so himself had crowned all by force as emperor When he was
coronés, si fait il prendre trestous chiax que il seut que il
crowned so has he taken all those whom he knew that it
en pesoit qu'il estoit empereres, si leur fait il crever les
thereof weighed that-he was emperor so of-them has he put-out the
iex et destruire et de male mort morir. Et prenoit toutes
eyes and destroyed and of evil death die And he-took all
les beles femmes que il trovoit, si gesoit a eles a forche;
the fair women that he found so lay with them by force
et prist l'empeerris a femme, qui estoit suers le roi de
and took the-empress to wife who was sister (of-)the king of
Franche, et fist tant de si grans desloiautés, que onques
France and did so-many of so great disloyalties that ever
nus traïtres ne nus mourdrissierres tant n'en fist comme
any traitor nor any murderer so-many not-thereof did as
il fist. Quant il eut faites toutes ches desloiautés, aprés
he did When he had done all these disloyalties afterward
si demanda a un sien maistre balliu, qui li aidoit a faire
so asked of a his-own chief bailiff who him helped to do
toutes ches malaventures, se il y avoit mais de chiax
all these misdeeds if it there had more of those
qu'il en pesast qu'il estoit empereres. Et chis li
whom-it thereof weighed that-he was emperor And this-one to-him

respondi qu'il n'en savoit mais nul, fors que on disoit
answered that-he not-thereof knew more anyone except that one said
qu'il avoit trois joules vaslés en le vile, qui estoient d'un
that-it had three young youths in the town who were of-a
lignage que on apeloit le lignage d'Angle, et estoient haut
lineage which one called the lineage of-Angel and were high
homme, mais il n'estoient mie rike, ains estoient povre, ne
men but they not-were at-all rich but were poor nor
n'estoient mie de grant pooir. Quant li empereres Andromes
not-were at-all of great power When the emperor Andronicus
oï que si faitement estoient chil troi vaslet de chu
heard that in-such wise were those three youths of this
lignage, si kemanda a chelui sen balliu, qui molt estoit
lineage so commanded to that his bailiff who very was
malvais hons et traïtres ausi comme il estoit, qu'il les
wicked man and traitor just as he was that-he them
alast prendre et qu'il les pendist ou qu'il les fesist
should-go to-take and that-he them should-hang or that-he them should-make
de male mort morir. Li ballius s'en ala pour prendre
of evil death die The bailiff himself-thence went for to-take
ches trois freres, mais il n'en prist que un et li doi
these three brothers but he not-thereof took but one and the two
escaperent. Chelui qui fu pris, on li fist crever les iex;
escaped Him who was taken one of-him had put-out the eyes
aprés il se rendi. Li doi autre s'en fuirent: si
afterward he himself cloistered The two others themselves-thence fled so
s'en ala li uns en une tere que on apele Blakie, chis
himself-thence went the one into a land that one calls Wallachia this-one
avoit non Kyrsac; et li autres s'en ala en Anthioche,
had name Kyrsac and the other himself-thence went into Antioch
et fu pris des Sarrasins par une chevauchie que li crestien
and was taken by-the Saracens in a raid that the Christians

fisent. Chis qui en Blakie estoit fuis, si y fu si povres
made This-one who into Wallachia was fled so there was so poor
qu'il ne se pooit warir, tant qu'il s'en revint arriere
that-he not himself could keep so-far that-he himself-thence came-back back
en Constantinoble par fine povreté; si se mucha en le
into Constantinople by sheer poverty so himself hid in the
maison a une veve dame en le vile. Or n'avoit il nul catel
house of a widowed lady in the town Now not-had he any chattel
u siecle, fors une mule et un vaslet; si waaingnoit chus
in-the world except a mule and a youth so earned this
vallés a se mule en vins qu'ele portoit, en autres coses,
youth with his mule in wines that-it carried in other things
chou dont Kyrsaacs, ses sires, et il vivoient; tant que les
this whereof Kyrsac his lord and he lived so-far that the
nouveles a l'empereur vinrent Androme le traïteur, que chis
news to the-emperor came Andronicus the traitor that this-one
estoit si faitement revenus en le vile. Adont si kemanda
was in-such wise returned into the town Then so commanded
a sen balliu, qui molt estoit haïs de tote gent pour les
to his bailiff who very was hated by all people for the
max qu'il faisoit cascun jour, qu'il alast prendre chelui
evils that-he did each day that-he should-go to-take that
Kyrsac et qu'il le pendist; tant que chis monta un jour
Kyrsac and that-he him should-hang so-far that this-one mounted one day
seur sen cheval et prist assés gent avec lui, si s'en ala
on his horse and took plenty people with him so himself-thence went
a le maison le boine femme ou Kyrsaacs estoit. Quant
to the house (of-)the good woman where Kyrsac was When
il vint la, si fist apeler a l'uis, et la boine femme vint
he came there so he-had call at the-door and the good woman came
avant, si se mervella molt qu'il voloit, tant qu'i li
forward so herself marveled much what-he wished so-far that-he to-her

kemanda qu'ele fesist venir avant cheli qui estoit muchiés
commanded that-she should-make come forward him who was hidden
en se maison. Le boine femme respondi, si dist: «Ha! sire,
in her house The good woman answered so said Ah lord
pour Dieu merchi! il n'a nul homme chaiens muchié.»
for God mercy it not-has any man in-here hidden
Et il kemanda autre fois qu'ele le fesist venir avant,
And he commanded other time that-she him should-make come forward
ou s'ele nel faisoit venir, qu'i le feroit prendre l'un
or if-she not-him made come that-he her would-have taken the-one
et l'autre. Quant le boine femme oï chou, si eut grant
and the-other When the good woman heard this so had great
peur de chu diable qui tant avoit fait de mal; si s'en
fear of this devil who so-much had done of evil so herself-thence
entra en se maison, si vint au vaslet, se li dist:
entered into her house so came to-the youth so to-him said
«Ha! biau sire Kyrsac, vous estes mors: veschi le balliu
Ah fair lord Kyrsac you are dead behold-here the bailiff
l'empereur et molt de gent avec li, qui vous sont venu
(of-)the-emperor and many of people with him who you are come
querre pour vous destruire et pour vous tuer!» Li vaslés fu
to-seek for you to-destroy and for you to-kill The youth was
molt esmaris, quan il oï ches nouveles, et tant qu'il vint
very dismayed when he heard these news and so-far that-he came
avant, qu'il ne se peut estordre a nul fuer qu'il n'alast
forward that-he not himself could escape at any price that-he should-go
hors a chu balliu. Si ne fait il mais el, si prent il s'espee,
out to this bailiff So not does he more else so takes he his-sword
si le met il sous sen surcot, se s'en ist il hors de le
so it puts he under his surcoat so himself-thence goes he out of the
maison, si vient il devant le balliu, se li dist: «Sire, que
house so comes he before the bailiff so to-him said Lord what

plaist vous?» Et chis li respondi molt fenelessement,
pleases you And this-one to-him answered very villainously
se li dist: «Ribaus puans, on vous pendera ja!» Tant
so to-him said Ribald stinking one you will-hang presently So-far
que Kyrsaacs vit qu'i li couvenoit aler avec aus maugré
that Kyrsac saw that-it him behooved to-go with them in-spite
sien; et molt volontiers s'en venjast d'aucun d'aus;
of-himself and very gladly himself-thereof would-avenge of-some of-them
se se trait il plus pres qu'il peust de chu balliu, si
so himself draws he more near that-he could of this bailiff so
traist il s'espee, si fiert il chu balliu par mi le
drew he his-sword so strikes he this bailiff through the-midst (of-)the
teste, si qu'il le pourfendi trestout dusques es dens.
head so that-he him cleft entirely as-far into-the teeth

The Fall of Andronicus

VIII

Kyrsac rides to Saint Sophia crying mercy to the people and climbs the altar, and the people make him emperor. Andronicus's bowstring breaks as he aims at him, and he flees by sea, but a storm drives him back and a taverner's wife finds him behind her casks. Kyrsac hands him to the people, who lead him naked on a camel and tear him apart, and the church portals show an angel cutting the string. Kyrsac then ransoms his brother from the Saracens.

Quant li serjant et le gent qui estoient avec le balliu 22
When the sergeants and the people who were with the bailiff
virrent que li vaslés avoit si pourfendu le balliu, si
saw that the youth had so cleft the bailiff so
s'en fuirent. Quant li vaslés vit qu'il s'en
themselves-thence fled When the youth saw that-they themselves-thence

fuioient, si prent il le cheval le balliu qu'il avoit ochis,
were-fleeing so takes he the horse (of-)the bailiff whom-he had killed
si monte il sus, et tint s'espee qui tote ert sanente. Si
so mounts he upon and held his-sword which all was bloody So
ne fait il mais el, si se met a le voie a aler vers
not does he more else so himself puts to the way to go toward
le moustier Sainte Souphie. Si comme il s'en aloit,
the minster (of-)Saint Sophia So as he himself-thence went
si crioit merchi as gens qui estoient aval les rues,
so cried mercy to-the people who were down-along the streets
qui tot estoient esmari de le noise qu'il avoient oïe; si
who all were dismayed by the noise that-they had heard so
leur disoit li vaslés: «Seignor, pour Dieu merchi, ne me
to-them said the youth Lords for God mercy not me
tués mie, car je ai ochis le diable et le mordrisseeur
kill at-all for I have killed the devil and the murderer
qui toutes les hontes a faites a chiaus de cheste vile et
who all the shames has done to those of this town and
as autres!» Quant il vint au moustier Sainte Souphie, si
to-the others When he came to-the minster (of-)Saint Sophia so
monta seur l'autel et si enbracha le crois, pour che qu'il
mounted on the-altar and so embraced the cross for this that-he
voloit sauver se vie. Aprés li cris et le noise fu molt
wished to-save his life Afterward the cry and the noise was very
grans en le vile; tant ala amont et aval li cris que on
great in the town so-far went up and down the cry that one
le seut par toute le vile, comment Kyrsac eut chu maufé
it knew through all the town how Kyrsac had this fiend
et chu mordrisseeur ochis. Quant chil de le vile le seurent,
and this murderer killed When those of the town it knew
si en furent molt lié, si keurent il qui miex miex
so thereof were very glad so run they who better better

au moustier Sainte Souphie, pour veir chu vaslet qui chu
to-the minster (of-)Saint Sophia for to-see this youth who this
hardement avoit fait. Si comme il furent la tout asanlé,
boldness had done So as they were there all assembled
si commenchierent a dire l'uns a l'autre: «Chist est vaillans
so began to say the-one to the-other This-one is worthy
et hardis, quant si grant hardement entreprist a faire.» Tant
and bold when so great boldness he-undertook to do So-far
que li Griu disent entr'aus: «Faisons le bien! faisons de
that the Greeks said among-themselves Let-us-do it well let-us-make of
chest vaslet empereur!» Tant qu'il s'i acorderent
this youth emperor So-far that-they themselves-thereto agreed
tout entr'aus. Si envoient il pour le patriarche, qui a
all among-themselves So send they for the patriarch who at
meesme d'iluec estoit en sen palais, qu'il venist coroner un
hand of-there was in his palace that-he should-come to-crown a
nouvel empereeur qu'il avoient eslut. Quant li patriarches
new emperor whom-they had elected When the patriarch
oï chou, si dist qu'il n'en feroit nient et commencha
heard this so said that-he not-thereof would-do anything and began
a dire: «Seigneur, mal le faites! Soiés en pais! Vous ne
to say Lords ill it you-do Be in peace You not
faites mie bien qui avés tele cose entreprise. Se jou le
do at-all well who have such thing undertaken If I him
coroune, li empereres Andromes me tueroit et decoperoit
crown the emperor Andronicus me would-kill and would-cut-up
tout en pieches.» Et li Grieu li respondirent que s'il
all in pieces And the Greeks to-him answered that if-he
ne le corounoit, qu'il li couperoient le teste; tant que
not him crowned that-they of-him would-cut the head so-far that
li patriarches, que par forche que par peur que il eut,
the patriarch both by force and by fear that he had

descendi de sen palais, si s'en vint au moustier,
came-down from his palace so himself-thence came to-the minster
la ou Kyrsacs estoit en molt povre robe et en molt
there where Kyrsac was in very poor robe and in very
povre vesteure, que le jour meesme avoit li empereres
poor clothing for the day same had the emperor
Andromes envoié sen balliu et ses gens pour lui prendre et
Andronicus sent his bailiff and his people for him to-take and
destruire; tant que li patriarkes se revesti, si le corona
destroy so-far that the patriarch himself vested so him crowned
lués esraument, vausist ou ne dengnast. Quant Kyrsacs fu
at-once forthwith willed-he or not deigned-he When Kyrsac was
coronés, si en alerent les nouveles tant amont et aval,
crowned so thence went the news so-far up and down
que Andromes le seut, et qu'il avoit sen balliu ochis, ne
that Andronicus it knew and that-he had his bailiff killed nor
ne le peut onques croire devant la que il y envoia ses
not it could ever believe before there that he there sent his
messages. Et quant si message vinrrent la, si virrent bien
messengers And when his messengers came there so saw well
que che fu voirs; si s'en revienent tantost arriere
that this was true so themselves-thence come-back at-once back
a l'empereur; si disent: «Sire, ch'est tout voirs.»
to the-emperor so say Lord this-is all true

23 Quant li empereres seut que che fu voirs, si se leva,
When the emperor knew that this was true so himself rose
si prist molt de se gent avec lui, si s'en ala dusques
so took many of his people with him so himself-thence went as-far
au moustier Sainte Souphie par uns alooirs qui alooient
to-the minster (of-)Saint Sophia by some galleries which went
de sen palais dusques au moustier. Quant il vint au
from his palace as-far to-the minster When he came to-the

moustier, si fist tant qu'il fu seur les vautes du moustier,
minster so did so-much that-he was on the vaults of-the minster
si vit chelui qui estoit coronnés. Quant il le vit, si en fu
so saw him who was crowned When he him saw so thereof was
molt dolens, et demanda a se gent s'il y avoit chelui qui
very sorrowful and asked of his people if-it there had one who
eust nul arc, tant que on en aporta un et une saiete. Et
had any bow so-far that one thereof brought one and an arrow And
Andromes prent chel arc, si entoise, si cuide ferir Kyrsac,
Andronicus takes that bow so draws so thinks to-strike Kyrsac
qui corounés estoit, par mi le cors. Si comme il
who crowned was through the-midst (of-)the body So as he
entesa, si rumpi le corde, et il en fu molt esmaris et
drew so broke the string and he thereat was very dismayed and
molt esperdus; si s'en revint arriere eu palais, tant
very distraught so himself-thence came-back back into-the palace so-far
qu'il dist a se gent qu'il alaissent fremer les portes du
that-he said to his people that-they should-go to-shut the gates of-the
palais, et qu'il s'armaissent et qu'il deffendissent le
palace and that-they themselves-should-arm and that-they should-defend the
palais; et il si fisent. Et il s'en issi entrementiers
palace and they so did And he himself-thence went-out meanwhile
du palais; si s'en vint a une fause posterne, si
from-the palace so himself-thence came to a false postern so
s'en ist il de le vile, si s'en entra en une galie
himself-thence goes-out he of the town so himself-thence entered into a galley
et de ses gens avec lui; si se mist en le mer, pour che
and of his people with him so himself put to the sea for this
qu'il ne voloit mie que le gent de le vile le presissent.
that-he not wished at-all that the people of the town him should-take

24 Aprés le gent de le vile alerent u palais et menerent
Afterward the people of the town went into-the palace and led
le nouvel empereeur avec aus. Si prisent le palais a forche,
the new emperor with them So they-took the palace by force
si y menerent l'empereeur; aprés si l'assisent en la caiere
so there led the-emperor afterward so him-seated in the chair
Coustentin, et puis qu'il fu assis en la caiere Coustentin,
(of-)Constantine and after that-he was seated in the chair (of-)Constantine
si l'aourerent tot comme saint empereeur. Li empereres fut
so him-adored all as holy emperor The emperor was
molt liés de le grant houneur que Diex li avoit en tel
very glad of the great honor that God to-him had on such
jour donnee; si dist as gens: «Seigneur, or veés le grant
day given so said to-the people Lords now see the great
mervelle de le grand hounour que Diex m'a donnée, que
marvel of the great honor that God to-me-has given that
en chel jour meesme que on me devoit prendre et essillier,
on that day same that one me was-to take and ruin
en chel jor meesme sui corrounés a empereeur. Et pur le
on that day same am crowned as emperor And for the
grant hounour que vous m'avés faite, vous doins jou trestot
great honor that you to-me-have done to-you give I all
le tresor qui est en chest palais et u palais de Blakerne.»
the treasure which is in this palace and in-the palace of Blachernae
Quant les gens oïrent chou, si en furent tout lié du
When the people heard this so thereof were all glad of-the
grant don que li empereres leur eut donné; si alerent, si
great gift that the emperor to-them had given so they-went so
esfondrerent le tresor, si y troverent tant d'or et d'argent
broke-open the treasure so there found so-much of-gold and of-silver
comme une fine mervelle, si le departirent entr'aus.
as a pure marvel so it divided among-themselves

Le nuit meesme que Andromes s'en fuioit leva une 25
The night same that Andronicus himself-thence was-fleeing rose a
si grant tormente en le mer et une si grant tempeste que
so great storm on the sea and a so great tempest both
de vent que de tounoirre que d'esclistre, que il ne se gent
of wind and of thunder and of-lightning that he nor his people
ne seurent quel part il aloient; tant que li orages et
not knew what way they went so-far that the storm and
le tormente les racacha arriere en Coustantinoble, qu'il
the tempest them drove-back back into Constantinople that-they
n'en seurent mot. Quant il virrent qu'il furent a tere
not-thereof knew word When they saw that-they were at land
et qu'il ne peurent avant aler, si dist Andromes a se
and that-they not could forward go so said Andronicus to his
gent: «Seigneur, esgardés ou nous sommes.» Il esgarderent
people Lords look where we are They looked
et virrent bien qu'il estoient revenu en Constantinoble,
and saw well that-they were returned into Constantinople
tant qu'il disent a Andromes: «Sire, nous sommes mort,
so-far that-they said to Andronicus Lord we are dead
car nous sommes revenu arriere en Coustantinoble.» Quant
for we are returned back into Constantinople When
Andromes oï chou, si fu si esmaris qu'il ne seut que
Andronicus heard this so was so dismayed that-he not knew what
faire; si dist a se gent: Seigneur, pour Dieu menés nous
to-do so said to his people Lords for God lead us
ailleurs de chi!» Et il respondirent qu'il ne pooient
elsewhere from here And they answered that-they not could
avant aler, qui leur couperoit les testes. Quant il
forward go though-one of-them would-cut the heads When they
virrent qu'il ne peurent avant aler a nul fuer, si prisent
saw that-they not could forward go at any price so took

Andromes l'empereeur, si l'en menerent en une taverne,
Andronicus the-emperor so him-thence led into a tavern
si le muchierent derriere les touniaus. Li taverniers et se
so him hid behind the casks The taverner and his
femme esgarderent molt chele gent, et si leur fu bien
wife looked-at much that people and so to-them was well
avis que ch'estoit de le gent l'empereeur Androme, tant
opinion that this-was of the people (of-)the-emperor Andronicus so-far
que le femme au tavernier ala par aventure entor ses
that the wife of-the taverner went by chance around her
touniaus veir qu'il fuissent bien seré, si esgarda amont et
casks to-see that-they were well closed so looked up and
aval, si voit ele Androme seir derriere les touniaus a tous
down so sees she Andronicus sit behind the casks in all
ses dras emperiaus, si le reconnut mout bien. Si s'en
his robes imperial so him recognized very well So herself-thence
revint ele arriere a sen baron, si li dist ele: «Sire,
came-back she back to her husband so to-him said she Lord
Andromes li empereres est muchiés chaiens.» Quant li
Andronicus the emperor is hidden in-here When the
taverniers l'oï, si envoia un message pour un haut homme
taverner it-heard so sent a messenger for a high man
qui manoit pres d'iluec en un grand palais, cui pere a
who dwelt near of-there in a great palace whose father of
chelui Andromes avoit destruit, et si avoit jut a forche a
that-one Andronicus had destroyed and so had lain by force with
le femme chu haut homme. Quant li messages vint la, si
the wife (of-)this high man When the messenger came there so
dist a chu haut homme que Andromes estoit a le maison
said to this high man that Andronicus was at the house
chu tavernier, si le nomma. Quant li haus hons oï que
(of-)this taverner so him named When the high man heard that

Andromes estoit a le maison chu tavernier, si en fu
Andronicus was at the house (of-)this taverner so thereof was
molt liés; si prent il de se gent avec lui, si va a le maison
very glad so takes he of his people with him so goes to the house
au tavernier, si prent il Androme, si l'en maine il en
of-the taverner so takes he Andronicus so him-thence leads he into
sen palais. Quant che vint l'endemain par matin, si prist
his palace When this came the-next-day in morning so took
li haus hons Androme, si l'en maine il u palais
the high man Andronicus so him-thence leads he into-the palace
devant l'empereeur Kyrsac. Quant Kyrsaacs le vit, si li
before the-emperor Kyrsac When Kyrsac him saw so of-him
demanda: «Andromes, pour coi as tu si faitement traÿ
asked Andronicus for what hast thou in-such wise betrayed
ten seigneur l'empereeur Manuel, et pour coi mordrisis tu
thy lord the-emperor Manuel and for what murderedst thou
se femme et sen fil, et pour coi as tu si volentiers fait
his wife and his son and for what hast thou so gladly done
mal a chiax que il en pesoit que tu estoies empereres,
evil to those whom it thereof weighed that thou wast emperor
et pour coi me voloies tu faire prendre?» Et Andromes
and for what me wishedst thou to-have taken And Andronicus
li respondi: «Taissiés vous», fist il, «que je ne vous
to-him answered Be-silent you said he for I not to-you
en dengneroie respondre!» Quant li empereres Kyrsacs oï
thereof would-deign to-answer When the emperor Kyrsac heard
qu'il ne l'en dengneroit respondre, si fist mander molt
that-he not him-thereof would-deign to-answer so had summoned many
de chiaus de le vile qu'il venissent devant lui. Quant il
of those of the town that-they should-come before him When they
furent devant li venu, si leur dist li empereres: «Seigneur,
were before him come so to-them said the emperor Lords

veschi Androme, qui tant a fait de maus et a vous et
behold-here Andronicus who so-much has done of evils both to you and
as autres. Je ne porroie mie, che me sanle, faire justiche
to-the others I not could at-all this to-me seems do justice
de lui a le volonté de vous tous, mais je le vous baille a
of him at the will of you all but I him to-you deliver to
faire ent chou que vous vaurrés.» Adont si en furent chil
do thereof this that you will-wish Then so thereof were those
de le vile molt lié; si le prisent, tant que li un disent que
of the town very glad so him took so-far that the ones said that
on l'arsist, li autre que on le boulist en une caudiere
one him-should-burn the others that one him should-boil in a cauldron
pour plus vivre longement et pener, li autre que on le
for more to-live long and suffer the others that one him
trainast, tant qu'il ne se peurent acorder entr'aus de
should-drag so-far that-they not themselves could agree among-themselves of
quel mort ne quel tormente il le peussent destruire, tant
what death nor what torment they him could destroy so-far
qu'il y eut un sage homme qui dist: «Seigneur, se vous
that-it there had a wise man who said Lords if you
me voliés croire, je vous enseigneroie comment nous nous
me wished to-believe I you would-teach how we ourselves
porriemes trop bien vengier de lui. Je ai un camoel
could exceedingly well avenge of him I have a camel
en maison, qui est le plus orde beste et le plus foireuse
in house which is the most foul beast and the most befouled
et le plus laide du siecle. Nous prenderons Andromes, si
and the most ugly of-the world We will-take Andronicus so
le despoullerons trestout nu, si le loierons au dos du
him will-strip all naked so him will-tie to-the back of-the
camoel si que ses visages li iert droit ens u cul; si le
camel so that his face to-him will-be right in the ass so him

mesrons d'un kief de le vile dusques a l'autre. Si se
will-lead from-one end of the town as-far to the-other So themselves
porront adonques bien vengier tot chil et toutes cheles a
will-be-able then well avenge all those and all those to
qui il a mesfait.» Si s'acorderent tout a chou que chis
whom he has wronged So themselves-agreed all to this that this-one
eut dit; si prenent il Androme, si le loient il si comme
had said so take they Andronicus so him tie they so as
chil eut devisé. Si comme il menoient contreval le vile,
that-one had proposed So as they led down-through the town
si venoient chil a qui il avoit meffait, si le debrocoient et
so came those to whom he had wronged so him pricked and
depicoient et feroient, li un de coutiaus, li autre d'alesnes,
tore-apart and struck the ones with knives the others with-awls
li tiers d'espees, et disoient: «Vous pendistes men pere,
the third with-swords and said You hanged my father
et si geustes a me femme a forche!» Et les femmes qui
and so lay with my wife by force And the women whose
filles il avoit prises a forche, le sacoient par les grenons,
daughters he had taken by force him pulled by the mustaches
et fisent li tant de le pure honte que, quant il virrent
and did to-him so-much of the pure shame that when they came
a l'autre kief de le vile, n'avoit il mie de char seur le
to the-other end of the town not-had he at-all of flesh on the
cors de lui; et puis prisent les os, si les geterent en une
body of him and then they-took the bones so them threw into a
longaingne. En tele maniere se vengierent il de chel
cesspit In such manner themselves avenged they of that
traïteur. Tres che jour que Kyrsaacs fu empereres, pourtraist
traitor From this day that Kyrsac was emperor portrayed
on sus les portaus des moustiers comment Kyrsaac avoit
one upon the portals of-the minsters how Kyrsac had

esté empereres par miracle, et comment Nostre Sires li
been emperor by miracle and how Our Lord to-him
metoit le corone u chief d'une part, et Nostre Dame
put the crown on-the head on-one side and Our Lady
d'autre, et comment li angles coupa le corde de l'arc
on-other and how the angel cut the string of the-bow
dont Andromes le vaut ferir, pour chou che disoient
with-which Andronicus him wished to-strike for this so they-said
que ses lignages avoit sornon d'Angle.
that his lineage had surname of-Angel

26 Aprés si li prist molt grans talens de veir sen frere qui
Afterward so to-him took very great desire to see his brother who
en païsnie estoit en prison, tant qu'il prist messages, si
in heathendom was in prison so-far that-he took messengers so
les envoia querre sen frere. Tant le quisent que on leur
them sent to-seek his brother So-long him they-sought that one to-them
fist entendre qu'il estoit en prison: il alerent chele part.
made understand that-he was in prison they went that way
Quant il vinrent la, si le demanderent as Sarrasins,
When they came there so him asked of-the Saracens
et li Sarrasin avoient oï dire que li vaslés estoit freres
and the Saracens had heard tell that the youth was brother
l'empereeur de Constantinoble, si l'en tinrent molt plus
(of-)the-emperor of Constantinople so him-thereby held much more
kier, et disent qu'il n'en renderoient mie sans grant
dear and said that-they not-thence would-render at-all without great
avoir; tant que li message leur donnerent tant d'or et
wealth so-far that the messengers to-them gave so-much of-gold and
d'argent comme il demanderent. Quant il eurent chelui
of-silver as they asked When they had him
racaté, si s'en revinrent arriere en Coustantinoble.
ransomed so themselves-thence came-back back into Constantinople

Alexius the Usurper

IX

Kyrsac makes his brother Alexius bailiff of all his land, and Alexius grows proud. He seizes the emperor while he hunts, puts out his eyes, imprisons him in secret, and has himself crowned, saying his brother is dead. The tutor of Kyrsac's son sends the boy to Germany, to his sister, the wife of the emperor there, and the story returns to the crusaders, who will send for the youth on the marquis's counsel.

Quand li empereres Kyrsaacs vit sen frere, si en fu molt liés 27
When the emperor Kyrsac saw his brother so thereof was very glad
et molt en fist grant feste, et chis refu aussi molt liés
and much thereof made great feast and this-one was-in-turn also very glad
de chou que ses freres fu empereres, et de chou qu'il avoit
of this that his brother was emperor and of this that-he had
conquis l'empire par se forche. Chus vaslés avoit non Alexes.
conquered the-empire by his force This youth had name Alexius
Ne demora waires aprés que li empereres ses freres le fist
Not delayed much after that the emperor his brother him made
bailliu de toute se terre et kemandeeur. Adont si s'enorgueilli
bailiff of all his land and commander Then so himself-grew-proud
si de chele baillie qu'il eut, que les gens de tout l'empire le
so of that bailiwick that-he had that the people of all the-empire him
renommoient trop et redoutoient pour chou qu'il estoit
acclaimed exceedingly and feared for this that-he was
freres l'empereeur et pour chou que li empereres l'amoit tant.
brother (of-)the-emperor and for this that the emperor him-loved so-much
Aprés si avint un jour que li empereres ala cachier en se 28
Afterward so happened one day that the emperor went to-hunt in his
forest; si ne fait mais el Alexes ses freres, si vient il en le
forest so not does more else Alexius his brother so comes he into the

forest ou li empereres estoit, si le prent il par traïson, si
forest where the emperor was so him takes he by treason so
li creva les iex. Aprés, quant il eut che fait, si le fist
of-him put-out the eyes Afterward when he had this done so him had
metre en prison, que on n'en seut mot. Quant il eut che
put in prison so-that one not-thereof knew word When he had this
fait, si s'en revint arriere en Coustantinoble, si fist
done so himself-thence came-back back into Constantinople so made
acroire que li empereres ses freres estoit mors, si se fist
believe that the emperor his brother was dead so himself had
courouner a empereeur a forche. Quant li maistres au fil
crowned as emperor by force When the master of-the son
l'empereeur Kyrsac vit que li oncles a l'enfant eut traÿ sen
(of-)the-emperor Kyrsac saw that the uncle of the-child had betrayed his
pere, et qu'il s'estoit fais empereres par traïson, si ne fait
father and that-he himself-was made emperor by treason so not does
mais el, si prent il l'enfant, si le fait mener en Alemaingne
more else so takes he the-child so him has led into Germany
a se sereur, qui estoit femme l'empereeur d'Alemaingne, car
to his sister who was wife (of-)the-emperor of-Germany for
il ne voloit mie que ses oncles ne le fesist destruire,
he not wished at-all that his uncle — him should-have destroyed
et estoit plus drois oirs que Alexes ses oncles n'estoit.
and he-was more rightful heir than Alexius his uncle was

29 Or avés oï comment Kyrsac vint avant et comment il fu
Now you-have heard how Kyrsac came forward and how he was
empereres et comment ses fix ala en Alemaingne, pour qui
emperor and how his son went into Germany for whom
li croisié et li Venicien envoierent par le consel du marchis
the crusaders and the Venetians sent by the counsel of-the marquis
de Monferras, leur maistre, si comme vous avés oï en l'estoire
of Montferrat their master so as you have heard in the-history

devant, pour che qu'il eussent acoison d'aler en le tere de
before for this that-they should-have occasion to-go into the land of
Coustantinoble. Or vous dirons de chel enfant et des croisiés,
Constantinople Now to-you we-will-tell of that child and of-the crusaders
et comment li croisié envoierent pour lui, et comment il
and how the crusaders sent for him and how they
alerent en Coustantinoble, et comment il le conquisent.
went into Constantinople and how they it conquered

The Envoys and the Young Alexius

X

Two knights go to Germany, and the emperor there advises the youth to go, since he will never have his heritage without the crusaders. The fleet has already left Zara for Corfu, leaving two galleys to wait for him, and he is welcomed there with great feasting. In the marquis's tent he promises two hundred thousand marks, the fleet's keep for a year, his own service beyond the sea, ten thousand men there for the rest of his life, and a year's victuals for all who go.

Quant li marchis eut dit as pelerins et as Veniciens que 30
When the marquis had said to-the pilgrims and to-the Venetians that
qui aroit chel enfant dont nous avons parlei par devant,
who would-have that child of-whom we have spoken just before
il aroit boine acoison d'aler en Coustantinoble et d'aus
he would-have good occasion to-go into Constantinople and to-themselves
estoirer, si fisent li croisié atirer deus chevaliers molt bien
provision so had the crusaders equipped two knights very well
et molt belement, si les envoierent en Alemaigne pour chu
and very handsomely so them sent into Germany for this
vaslet, qu'il venist a aus, et se li manderent qu'il li
youth that-he should-come to them and so to-him sent-word that-they him

aideroient sen droit a conquerre. Quant li message vinrrent
would-help his right to conquer When the messengers came
a le court l'empereeur d'Alemaingne, la ou li vaslés estoit,
to the court (of-)the-emperor of-Germany there where the youth was
se li disent le message que on leur avoit carquié a dire.
so to-him said the message that one to-them had charged to say
Quant li vaslés oï chou et entendi le mandement que li
When the youth heard this and understood the summons that the
haut homme croisié li avoient mandé, si en fu molt liés
high men crossed to-him had sent so thereof was very glad
et molt en fist grant feste, et molt fist biau sanlant as
and much thereof made great feast and much made fair countenance to-the
messages; si dist qu'il s'en conseilleroit a l'empereur sen
messengers so said that-he himself-thereof would-counsel with the-emperor his
serouge. Quant li empereres l'entendi, si respondi au vaslet
brother-in-law When the emperor it-heard so answered to-the youth
que bele caanche li estoit avenue; si li loa bien qu'il
that fair chance to-him was come so him advised well that-he
y alast, et se li dist qu'il n'aroit jamais point de
there should-go and so to-him said that-he not-would-have ever a-whit of
sen hyretage, sen par l'aiue de Dieu et des croisiés ne l'avoit.
his heritage if by the-aid of God and of-the crusaders not it-had
31 Li vaslés entendi bien que li empereres li donnoit
The youth understood well that the emperor to-him gave
boin consel; si s'atorna au plus belement qu'il peut,
good counsel so himself-equipped at-the most handsomely that-he could
si s'en vint avec les messages; et devant che que li
so himself-thence came with the messengers and before this that the
vaslés ne li message fussent venu a Jadres, si s'en fu
youth or the messengers were come to Zara so itself-thence was
li estores alés en l'isle de Corfaut pour chou que le Paske
the fleet gone to the-isle of Corfu for this that the Easter

estoit ja passee. Mais quant li estores mut a aler i,
was already passed But when the fleet moved to go there
si fist on laiier deus galies pour atendre les messages et
so had one left two galleys for to-await the messengers and
le vaslet. Et sejornerent li pelerin en l'isle de Corfaut, tant
the youth And sojourned the pilgrims on the-isle of Corfu so-far
que li vaslés et li message vinrent. Quant li vaslés et li
that the youth and the messengers came When the youth and the
message vinrent a Jadres, si trouverent ches deus galies que
messengers came to Zara so found these two galleys that
on leur avoit laiies; si se misent en mer, si s'en
one for-them had left so themselves put to sea so themselves-thence
alerent tant qu'il vinrent a Corfaut, la ou li estores
went so-far that-they came to Corfu there where the fleet
estoit. Quant li homme virrent que li vaslés venoit, si
was When the men saw that the youth was-coming so
alerent tout encontre lui, si le saluerent et se li fisent
went all to-meet him so him greeted and so to-him made
molt grant feste. Quant li vaslés vit que li haut homme
very great feast When the youth saw that the high men
l'ouneroient si, et tous li estores qui lueques estoit, si fu
him-honored so and all the fleet which there was so was
si liés que nus hons si ne fu. Adont si vint li marchis
so glad that any man so not was Then so came the marquis
avant, si prist le vaslet, si l'en mena avec lui en se tente.
forward so took the youth so him-thence led with him into his tent
Quant li vaslés fu la, adont si s'asanlerent tout li 32
When the youth was there then so themselves-assembled all the
haut baron et li dux de Venice a le tente le
high barons and the doge of Venice at the tent (of-)the
marchis, et parlerent d'unes coses et d'autres, et tant
marquis and spoke of-some things and of-others and so-far

que il li demanderent que il feroit pour aus, s'il le
that they of-him asked what he would-do for them if-they him
faisoient empereeur et s'il li faisoient corone porter en
made emperor and if-they to-him made crown bear in
Coustantinoble; et il leur respondi qu'il feroit quanque il
Constantinople and he to-them answered that-he would-do whatever they
vaurroient. Tant parlerent que il dist qu'il donroit a l'ost
would-wish So-long they-spoke that he said that-he would-give to the-host
.cc. mile mars, et qu'il tenroit le navie un an a
two-hundred thousand marks and that-he would-keep the navy one year at
sen coust, et qu'il iroit outre mer avec aus a tout sen
his cost and that-he would-go beyond sea with them with all his
pooir, et qu'i tenroit tous les jours de sa vie .x.m.
power and that-he would-keep all the days of his life ten-thousand
hommes a armes en le tere d'outre mer a sen coust, et
men at arms in the land of-beyond sea at his cost and
qu'il douroit a tous chiaus de l'ost qui se departiroient
that-he would-give to all those of the-host who themselves would-depart
de Coustantinoble a aler outre mer viande dusques a un an.
from Constantinople to go beyond sea victuals as-far to one year

Conrad of Montferrat

XI

The doge proposes Constantinople, and the marquis presses hardest, to avenge an old wrong. Robert tells it: his brother Conrad saved the emperor from the rebel Branas, though the emperor shut the gate behind him, then fled a plot to Tyre. There he shut out King Guy and broke Saladin's siege by a Genoese ruse, and later married the next queen and was killed by the Assassins. The bishops rule the expedition no sin, and the youth swears to his covenants.

Adont furent trestout li baron de l'ost mandei et li 33
Then were all the barons of the-host summoned and the
Venicien, et quant il furent tot assanlé, si se leva li
Venetians and when they were all assembled so himself rose the
dux de Venice, si parla a aus: «Seigneur» fist li dux, «or
doge of Venice so spoke to them Lords said the doge now
avons nous raisnauvle acoison d'aler en Coustantinoble, se
have we reasonable occasion to-go into Constantinople if
vous le loés; car nous avons le droit oir.» Or y eut
you it advise for we have the rightful heir Now there had
il aucuns qui ne s'acorderent mie a aler en Coustantinoble,
it some who not themselves-agreed at-all to go into Constantinople
ains disoient: «Ba! que ferons nous en Coustantinoble? Nous
but said Bah what will-do we in Constantinople We
avons no pelerinage a faire et ausi pourposement d'aler en
have our pilgrimage to make and also purpose to-go into
Babyloine ou en Alexandre, et no navies ne nous doit sivir
Babylon or into Alexandria and our navy not us ought follow
que un an et ja est la moitiés de l'anee passee!» Et li
but one year and already is the half of the-year passed And the
autre disoient encontre: «Que ferons nous en Babyloine ne
others said against What will-do we in Babylon or

en Alixandre, quant nous n'avons viande ne avoir par coi
in Alexandria when we not-have victuals nor wealth by which
nous y puissons aler? Miex nous vient il, anchois que
we there may go Better to-us comes it before that
nous y aillons, que nous conquestons viande et avoir par
we there go that we may-win victuals and wealth by
raisnavle acoison, que nous y aillons pour morir de fain.
reasonable occasion than we there go for to-die of hunger
Adont si porrons forfaire, et il nous offre a venir avec
Then so we-will-be-able do-harm and he to-us offers to come with
nous et a tenir no navie et nostre estore encore un an
us and to keep our navy and our fleet yet one year
a sen coust!» Et li marchis de Monferras y metoit plus
at his cost And the marquis of Montferrat therein put more
paine que nus qui y fust d'aler en Coustantinoble, pour
pains than anyone who there was to-go into Constantinople for
che qu'il se voloit vengier d'un mesfait que li empereres
this that-he himself wished to-avenge of-a wrong that the emperor
de Coustantinoble, qui l'empire tenoit, li avoit fait. Or
of Constantinople who the-empire held to-him had done Now
vous lairons ichi ester de l'estore; si vous dirons le
you we-will-leave here be of the-fleet so to-you we-will-tell the
mesfait dont li marchis haoit l'empereur de Coustantinoble.
wrong for-which the marquis hated the-emperor of Constantinople
Il avint que li marchis Caurras, ses freres, fu croisiés et
It happened that the marquis Conrad his brother was crossed and
qu'il ala outre mer, et mena deus galies, et s'en ala
that-he went beyond sea and led two galleys and himself-thence went
par Coustantinoble. Et quant il vint en Constantinoble, si
by Constantinople And when he came into Constantinople so
parla a l'empereur, et li empereres le bienviengna et le
spoke to the-emperor and the emperor him welcomed and him

salua. Or avoit en chu point uns haus hons de le chité
greeted Now had at this point a high man of the city
assis l'empereur en Constantinoble, si que li empereres
besieged the-emperor in Constantinople so that the emperor
n'en n'osoit issir. Quant li marchis vit chou, si demanda
not-thence not-dared go-out When the marquis saw this so asked
comment ch'estoit que chil l'avoit si faitement assis,
how this-was that that-one him-had in-such wise besieged
ne ne s'osoit il mie combatre a lui; et li empereres
nor not himself-dared he at-all to-fight with him and the emperor
respondi qu'il n'avoit mie bien le cueur de ses gens ne
answered that-he not-had at-all well the heart of his people nor
l'aiwe; pour che si ne se voloit mie combatre a lui.
the-aid for this so not himself wished at-all to-fight with him
Quant li marchis oï chou, si dist qu'il l'en aideroit,
When the marquis heard this so said that-he him-therein would-help
s'il voloit; et li empereres dist que che voloit il et qu'il
if-he wished and the emperor said that this wished he and that-he
l'en saroit molt boin gré. Adont dist li marchis a
him-thereof would-know very good gratitude Then said the marquis to
l'empereeur, qu'il fesist mander tous chiaus de le loy de
the-emperor that-he should-have summoned all those of the law of
Rome, tous les Latins de le vile, si les aroit avec lui
Rome all the Latins of the town so them he-would-have with him
en se compaingnie, et qu'il se combateroit a aus, et
in his company and that-he himself would-fight with them and
qu'il feroit l'avant warde; et li empereres presist toute
that-he would-make the-van guard and the emperor should-take all
se gent avec lui, si le siurroit aprés. Si fist li empereres
his people with him so him would-follow after So had the emperor
mander tous les Latins de le vile. Quant il furent tot
summoned all the Latins of the town When they were all

venu, si kemanda li empereres qu'il s'armassent tout,
come so commanded the emperor that-they themselves-should-arm all
et quant il furent tout armé et li marchis eut faite toute
and when they were all armed and the marquis had had all
se gent armer, si prit tous ches Latins avec lui, si ordena
his people armed so took all these Latins with him so ordered
le miex qu'il peut se bataille; et li empereres fu ausi tous
the best that-he could his battalion and the emperor was also all
armés et se gent avec lui. Si ne fait mais el li marchis,
armed and his people with him So not does more else the marquis
si se met il a le voie par devant, et li empereres le
so himself puts he to the way in front and the emperor him
sivi aprés. Si comme li marchis fu hors des portes a
followed after So as the marquis was out of-the gates with
toute se bataille, et li empereres va, se li fait il fremer
all his battalion and the emperor goes so on-him has he shut
le porte aprés. Si comme li Vernas, qui l'empereeur avoit
the gate after So as the Branas who the-emperor had
assis, vit que li marchis venoit durement pour combatre
besieged saw that the marquis was-coming hard for to-fight
a lui, si s'esmuet il, et il et se gent, a venir encontre
with him so sets-out he both he and his people to come against
le marchis. Si comme il venoient, si ne fait mais el li
the marquis So as they were-coming so not does more else the
Vernas, si se fiert il des esperons, si se met il devant
Branas so himself strikes he with-the spurs so himself puts he before
toute se gent bien le getee d'un cailleu, pour soi haster
all his people well the cast of-a pebble for himself to-hasten
et pour ferir soi en le batalle le marchis. Quant li
and for to-strike himself into the battalion (of-)the marquis When the
marchis le vit venir, si point il encontre lui, si le fiert
marquis him saw come so spurs he against him so him strikes

il au premerain coup en l'uel, si l'abat il mort de chu
he at-the first blow in the-eye so him-fells he dead with this
caup; si fiert a destre et a senestre, et il et se gent,
blow so strikes to right and to left and he and his people
si en ochient mout. Quant chil virrent que leur sires
so of-them kill many When those saw that their lord
fu mors, si se commenchent a desconfire, si tornent
was dead so themselves begin to break so turn
il en fuies. Quant li empereres li traïtres, qui avoit fait
they in flight When the emperor the traitor who had had
les portes fremer aprés le marchis, vit que il fuoient, se
the gates shut after the marquis saw that they fled so
ist il hors de le chité a toute se gent, si akieut il
goes-out he out of the city with all his people so sets he
a cachier chiax qui fuioient; si y waaignierent molt, et
to chase those who fled so there gained much both
li marchis et autre, et chevax et autres coses assés. Ensi
the marquis and others both horses and other things plenty Thus
faitement venja li marchis l'empereeur de cheli qu'il l'avoit
wise avenged the marquis the-emperor of him who him-had
assis. Quant il les eurent desconfis, si s'en revinrent
besieged When they them had routed so themselves-thence came-back
arriere en Constantinoble et li empereres et li marchis.
back into Constantinople both the emperor and the marquis
Quant il furent revenu et il se furent desarmé, si
When they were returned and they themselves were disarmed so
merchia molt durement li empereres le marchis de chou
thanked very greatly the emperor the marquis of this
qu'il l'avoit si bien vengié de chu sien anemi, tant que
that-he him-had so well avenged of this his-own enemy so-far that
li marchis li demanda pour coi il avoit fait les portes
the marquis of-him asked for what he had had the gates

fremer aprés lui: «Ba! ensi est ore!» fist li empereres. «Or,
shut after him Bah thus is now said the emperor Now
de par Dieu!» fist li marchis. Et ne demora waires aprés
on behalf-of God said the marquis And not delayed much after
que li empereres et si traïteur pourparlerent une grant
that the emperor and his traitors plotted a great
traïson, que il voloit faire le marchis destruire; tant que
treason that he wished have the marquis destroyed so-far that
uns hons d'aage qui le seut, si en eut pitié du marchis,
a man of-age who it knew so thereof had pity of-the marquis
si vint avant au marchis tot belement, se li dist: «Sire,
so came forward to-the marquis all quietly so to-him said Lord
pour Dieu, alés vous ent de cheste vile, car se vous
for God go yourself thence from this town for if you
y demourés tier jour, li empereres et si traïteur ont
there stay the-third day the emperor and his traitors have
pourpallee une grant traïson qu'i vous prendront, si vous
plotted a great treason that-they you will-take so you
feront destruire.» Quant li marchis oï ches nouveles, si
will-have destroyed When the marquis heard these news so
ne fu mie a aise. Si vient il le nuit meesme, si fait il
not was at-all at ease So comes he the night same so has he
atorner ses galies, si se met il en mer, anchois qu'il fust
equipped his galleys so himself puts he to sea before that-it were
jours, si s'en va il; ainc ne cessa, si vint a Sur. Or
day so himself-thence goes he ever not ceased so came to Tyre Now
i estoit avenu, par devant chou que le tere fust perdue,
there was happened just before this that the land was lost
que li rois de Jherusalem fu mors, que li roiaumes de
that the king of Jerusalem was dead that the kingdom of
Jherusalem estoit tous perdus et que il n'i avoit mais
Jerusalem was all lost and that it not-there had more

vile qui se tenist, fors Sur et Escaloune. Si avoit li rois
town which itself held except Tyre and Ascalon So had the king
qui mors fu deus sereurs mariees: si avoit uns chevaliers,
who dead was two sisters married so had a knight
mesire Guis de Luisegnun en Poitau, l'ainsnee a cui li
my-lord Guy of Lusignan in Poitou the-elder to whom the
roiames estoit eskeus, et mesires Hainfrois de Touron avoit
kingdom was fallen and my-lord Humphrey of Toron had
le mainsnee. Si s'asanlerent un jor tout li haut baron
the younger So themselves-assembled one day all the high barons
de le tere et li cuens de Tripe et li Temples et li
of the land and the count of Tripoli and the Temple and the
Hospitax en Jherusalem, au Temple, et disent entr'aus
Hospital in Jerusalem at-the Temple and said among-themselves
qu'il departesisent monseigneur Guion de se femme, pour
that-they should-part my-lord Guy from his wife for
chou que li roiames estoit eskeus a se femme, et qu'il
this that the kingdom was fallen to his wife and that-they
li donnaissent autre baron qui fust plus soufisans a estre
to-her should-give other husband who were more fit to be
rois que mesire Guis n'estoit, et il si fisent. Il les
king than my-lord Guy was and they so did They them
departirent, et quant on les eut departis, si ne se
parted and when one them had parted so not themselves
peurent onques acorder a qui il le mariaissent, tant qu'il
could ever agree to whom they her should-marry so-far that-they
se misent seur le roine du tout, qui avoit esté femme
themselves put upon the queen of-the all who had been wife
monseigneur Guion. Se li ballierent le corone, et ele le
(of-)my-lord Guy So to-her they-delivered the crown and she it
donnast a cui que ele vausist qui rois fust. Tant qu'il
should-give to whom that she would-wish who king should-be So-far that-they

se rasanlerent un autre jor tout li baron et li Temples
themselves reassembled one other day all the barons and the Temple
et li Hospitaus, et se y fu li cuens de Tripe, qui estoit
and the Hospital and so there was the count of Tripoli who was
li mieudres chevaliers du roiame, qui cuidoit que le dame
the best knight of-the kingdom who thought that the lady
li donnast le corone, et si i fu mesires Guis, qui avoit
to-him would-give the crown and so there was my-lord Guy who had
eu le roine a femme. Quant il se furent tout assanlé,
had the queen to wife When they themselves were all assembled
et le dame tint le corone, si esgarda amont et aval; si i
and the lady held the crown so looked up and down so there
voit ele chelui qui avoit esté ses barons, si va ele avant,
sees she him who had been her husband so goes she forward
se li met ele u chief. Ensi si fu mesires Guis rois.
so on-him puts she on-the head Thus so was my-lord Guy king
Quant li cuens de Tripe vit chou, si en fu si dolens
When the count of Tripoli saw this so thereof was so sorrowful
qu'il s'en ala en sen païs, a Tripe, par mautalent.
that-he himself-thence went into his country to Tripoli in anger
34 Aprés ne demora mie, si se combati as Sarrasins, si fu
Afterward not delayed at-all so himself fought with-the Saracens so was
pris et se gent tote desconfite, et li tere fu si perdue qu'il
taken and his people all routed and the land was so lost that-it
n'i avoit mais vile qui se tenist, fors Sur et Escaloune.
not-there had more town which itself held except Tyre and Ascalon
Quant Salehadins vit qu'il eut si le tere en se main, si vint
When Saladin saw that-he had so the land in his hand so came
au roi de Jherusalem, que il avoit en se prison, se li dist
to-the king of Jerusalem whom he had in his prison so to-him said
que s'il li faisoit rendre Escaloune, qu'i le lairoit aler
that if-he to-him had rendered Ascalon that-he him would-let go

et grant partie de se gent avec li. Et li rois li respondi:
and great part of his people with him And the king to-him answered
«Or m'i menés dont», fist il, «et je le vous ferai rendre!»
Now me-there lead then said he and I it to-you will-have rendered
Et Salehadins l'i mena. Quant il vinrent la, si parla
And Saladin him-there led When they came there so spoke
li rois a chiaus de le vile, si leur dist qu'il rendissent
the king to those of the town so to-them said that-they should-render
le vile, qu'i le voloit ensi. Et chil alerent, si li rendirent
the town for-he it wished thus And those went so to-him rendered
le vile. Quant Salehadins eut le vile en se main, si laissa le
the town When Saladin had the town in his hand so let the
rois aler et une partie de se gent avec lui; et li rois, quant
king go and a part of his people with him and the king when
il fu escapés de prison, a tout tant de gent comme
he was escaped from prison with all as-much of people as
il eut, si s'en vint a Sur. Et entre ches entrefaites
he had so himself-thence came to Tyre And between these doings
que li rois avoit ouvré, si avoit li marchis tous chiaus de
that the king had wrought so had the marquis all those of
Sur et Genevois qui i estoient et uns et autres tous a
Tyre and Genoese who there were both ones and others all to
sen acort, et il li avoient tot juré feeuté et seur sains
his accord and they to-him had all sworn fealty and on relics
qu'il se tenroient du tot a lui comme a leur seigneur,
that-they themselves would-hold of-the all to him as to their lord
et il leur aidast le vile a desfendre. Et li marchis avoit
and he them should-help the town to defend And the marquis had
trouvé si grant kierté en le vile que on vendoit le mesure
found so great dearth in the town that one sold the measure
de blé de le vile .c. besans, qui ne fesist mie plus
of wheat of the town a-hundred bezants which not made at-all more

que sestier et demi a Amiens. Quant li rois vint a Sur, si
than setier and half at Amiens When the king came to Tyre so
commenchierent a hukier si serjant: «Ouvrés, ouvrés le porte!
began to shout his sergeants Open open the gate
Veschi le roi ou il vient.» Et chil de dedens respondirent
Behold-here the king where he comes And those of within answered
qu'il n'i enterroient, tant que li marchis vint as murs,
that-they not-there would-enter so-far that the marquis came to-the walls
si dist qu'il n'i enterroit: «Ba! comment?» fist le rois, «de
so said that-he not-there would-enter Bah how said the king what
ne sui jou sires et rois de laiens? — En non Dieu», fist li
not am I lord and king of in-there In name (of-)God said the
marchis, «ne sires ne rois ne n'estes vous, ne vous n'i
marquis neither lord nor king nor not-are you nor you not-there
enterrés, car vous avés tot houni et le terre toute perdue,
will-enter for you have all shamed and the land all lost
et d'autre part le kiertés est si grands chaiens, que si vous
and on-other side the dearth is so great in-here that if you
et vo gent i entriés, que le vile seroit tote perdue de
and your people there entered that the town would-be all lost of
fain. Et jou ai plus kier», fist li marchis, «que vous soiés
hunger And I have more dear said the marquis that you be
perdus, et vous et vo gent de qui il n'est waires grans
lost both you and your people of whom it not-is much great
esplois, que nous qui chaiens sommes ne le vile.» Quant li
matter than we who in-here are nor the town When the
rois vit qu'il n'i peut entrer, si s'en torna a toute
king saw that-he not-there could enter so himself-thence turned with all
se gent, si s'en ala vers Acre en un toron; la si
his people so himself-thence went toward Acre on a hillock there so
se loja. Et fu illueques tant que li rois de Franche et
himself lodged And was there so-far that the king of France and

li rois d'Engletere l'i trouverent. Si comme li marchis
the king of-England him-there found So as the marquis
estoit a Sur, en chele grant kierté qui i estoit, si leur
was at Tyre in that great dearth which there was so to-them
envoia Diex confort que uns markaans i vint, qui amena
sent God comfort for a merchant there came who brought
une nave de blé: si commist le blé a .x. besans qui estoit
a ship of wheat so set the wheat at ten bezants which was
a .c. Si en fu molt liés li marchis et tout chil de
at a-hundred So thereof was very glad the marquis and all those of
le vile, et si fu tous li bles retenus et acatés en le vile.
the town and so was all the wheat kept and bought in the town
Ne demora waires aprés, si vient Salehadins, si assiet il Sur 35
Not delayed much afterward so comes Saladin so besieges he Tyre
et par tere et par mer, si que ne viande ne autre cose
both by land and by sea so that neither victuals nor other thing
ne pooit venir en le vile, et tant i sist que le kiertés fu
not could come into the town and so-long there sat that the dearth was
de rekief ausi grande en le vile comme ele i avoit esté.
of anew as great in the town as it there had been
Quant li marchis vit que le kiertés fu si grans en le vile, 36
When the marquis saw that the dearth was so great in the town
et qu'il ne pooient avoir soulas ne confort de nule part, si
and that-they not could have solace nor comfort from any side so
manda tous chiaus de le vile et Genevois qu'il i avoit et
summoned all those of the town and Genoese that-it there had both
uns et autres, si parla a aus et si leur dist: «Seigneur»,
ones and others so spoke to them and so to-them said Lords
fist il, «nous sommes maubailli, se Diex n'en a merchi,
said he we are ill-treated if God not-thereof has mercy
que le kiertés est si grans en cheste vile que il n'i a
for the dearth is so great in this town that it not-there has

waires viande ne blé dont nous nous puissons longement
much victuals nor wheat whereby we ourselves may long
soustenir, ne nus confors ne puet venir ne par mer ne par
sustain nor any comfort not can come neither by sea nor by
terre. Pour Dieu, s'il y a nul de vous qui y sache
land For God if-it there has anyone of you who therein knows-how-to
metre conseil, se li meche!» Tant que uns Genevois sali
put counsel so it let-him-put So-far that a Genoese leapt
avant, si dist: «Se vous me voliés croire,» fist il, «je vous
forward so said If you me wished to-believe said he I to-you
dourroie boin conseil. — Ore quel?» fist le marchis. — «Jel
would-give good counsel Now what said the marquis I-it
vous dirai», fist chis; «nous avons chaiens en ceste vile nes
to-you will-tell said this-one we have in-here in this town ships
et galies et barges et autres vaissiax, si vous dirai que je
and galleys and barges and other vessels so to-you I-will-tell what I
ferai. Je prendrai quatre galies avec mi, si les ferai armer
will-do I will-take four galleys with me so them will-have armed
de le plus aidant gent que nous arons; si me meterai ains
with the most able people that we will-have so myself will-put before
jour en mer, ausi com je m'en vausisse fuir. Et si tost
day to sea just as I myself-thence wished to-flee And so soon
comme li Sarrasin m'apercheveront si n'aront loisir d'aus
as the Saracens me-will-perceive so not-will-have leisure of-them
armer, ains aront si grant haste de moi ataindre et de moi
to-arm but will-have so great haste to me overtake and to me
cachier qu'il ne s'armeront nient; ains destendront trestout
chase that-they not themselves-will-arm at-all but will-dash all
aprés mi, et vous arés trestous vos autres waissiaus et
after me and you will-have all your other vessels and
barges et galies molt bien fait warnir de le plus aidant gent
barges and galleys very well had furnished with the most able people

que vous arés, et quant vous vesrés que eles seront toutes
that you will-have and when you will-see that they will-be all
destendues aprés mi, et eles seront bien lanchies avant,
dashed-off after me and they will-be well launched forward
adont si bescochiés trestous vos vaissiaus et destendés aprés,
then so loose all your vessels and dash after
et je retornerai arriere; si nous combaterons a aus. Ensi si
and I will-turn back so we will-fight with them Thus so
nous envoiera Diex consel, se li plaist!» A chest consel si
to-us will-send God counsel if him pleases To this counsel so
s'acorderent tout, si fisent tot ensi comme chis eut devisé.
themselves-agreed all so did all thus as this-one had proposed
Quant che vint vers le jour, et chis eut ses quatre galies 37
When this came toward the day and this-one had his four galleys
molt bien atornees et molt bien armees, et tot li autre
very well equipped and very well armed and all the other
vaissel furent ensement molt bien armé, si ne fait mais el,
vessels were likewise very well armed so not does more else
si se met il en le mer un peu ains le jour. Or estoit li
so himself puts he to the sea a little before the day Now was the
pors de le mer dedens les murs de le vile de Sur, ou par
port of the sea within the walls of the town of Tyre where through
ent les nes issoient et entroient en le vile; si se met il
it the ships went-out and came-in into the town so himself puts he
a le voie, si s'en commenche a aler grandesme aleure.
to the way so himself-thence begins to go very-great pace
Quant il fu un peu loins et li Sarrasin l'aperchoivent, si
When he was a little far and the Saracens him-perceive so
eurent tel haste de chelui sivir que onques ne s'i
had such haste of him to-follow that ever not themselves-there
armerent, si laissent il aler trestoutes leur chent galies, si
armed so let they go all their hundred galleys so

acuellent a cachier chelui. Quant eles furent bien lanchies
set to chase him When they were well launched
avant, et chil de le vile destendent aprés, et chil qui
forward and those of the town dash after and that-one whom
li Sarrasin cachoient retorne; si acuellent chil Surien ches
the Saracens chased turns so set-upon those Syrians these
Sarrasins qui tot estoient desarmé, si en ochient molt et
Saracens who all were unarmed so of-them kill many and
si les desconfisent, si que onques de toutes les chent galies
so them rout so that ever of all the hundred galleys
n'en escapa que deus que li Surien ne presissent toutes.
not-thereof escaped but two that the Syrians not took all
Et Salehadins eswardoit tot chou et faisoit si grant duel que
And Saladin watched all this and made so great grief that
trop, et tiroit se barbe et deschiroit ses caveax de duel,
exceedingly and pulled his beard and tore his hair for grief
qu'il veoit se gent decauper devant lui, ne ne leur pooit
that-he saw his people cut-down before him nor not them could
aidier. Quant il eut si sen navie perdu, si se desloja, si
help When he had so his navy lost so himself decamped so
s'en ala. Ensi faitement fu le vile retenue par le marchis,
himself-thence went Thus wise was the town kept by the marquis
et li rois Guis estoit en chel toronchel vers Acre, la ou
and the king Guy was on that hillock toward Acre there where
li rois de France et li rois d'Engletere l'avoient trouvé.
the king of France and the king of-England him-had found
38 Aprés ne demora mie waires que li rois Guis fu mors, et
Afterward not delayed at-all much that the king Guy was dead and
se femme ausi. Si escaÿ li roiaumes a la femme monseigneur
his wife also So fell the kingdom to the wife (of-)my-lord
Hainfroi du Toron, qui estoit suers le roine. Si va on, si
Humphrey of-the Toron who was sister (of-)the queen So goes one so

taut on a monseigneur Hainfroi se femme, si le donna on
takes-away one from my-lord Humphrey his wife so her gave one
au marchis. Ensi si fu li marchis rois, puis en eut il une
to-the marquis Thus so was the marquis king then thereof had he a
fille, et puis fu li marchis ochis de Haussassis, puis si prist
daughter and then was the marquis killed by Assassins then so took
on le roine, si le donna on au conte Henri de Champangne.
one the queen so her gave one to-the count Henry of Champagne
Et puis aprés si assist on Acre et si le prist on.
And then afterward so besieged one Acre and so it took one
Or vous avons conté le mesfait dont li marchis de Monferras 39
Now to-you have recounted the wrong for-which the marquis of Montferrat
haioit l'empereur de Coustantinoble, et pour coi il i metoit
hated the-emperor of Constantinople and for what he therein put
gregneur paine et gregneur consel d'aler en Coustantinoble
greater pains and greater counsel to-go into Constantinople
que tout li autre, si revenrons aprés a no matere de
than all the others so we-will-come-back afterward to our matter of
devant. Quant li dux de Venice eut dit as barons que or
before When the doge of Venice had said to-the barons that now
avoient il boine acoison d'aler en le tere de Coustantinoble
had they good occasion to-go into the land of Constantinople
et que il le loioit bien, adont se s'i acorderent trestot
and that he it advised well then so themselves-thereto agreed all
li baron. Aprés si fist on demander as vesques se che
the barons Afterward so had one asked of-the bishops if this
seroit pechiés d'aler i, et li vesque respondirent et disent
would-be sin to-go there and the bishops answered and said
que che n'estoit mie pechiés, ains estoit grans aumosnes,
that this not-was at-all sin but was great almsgiving
car puis qu'il avoient le droit oir qui deserités estoit, bien
for since that-they had the rightful heir who disinherited was well

li pooient aidier a sen droit conquerre et de ses enemis
him could help to his right conquer and of his enemies
vengier. Adont si fisent le vaslet jurer seur sains que il leur
avenge Then so they-had the youth swear on relics that he to-them
tenroit ches convenenches qu'il leur avoit dit par devant.
would-keep these covenants that-he to-them had said just before

Into the Straits

XII

The fleet sails to the Mouth of Abydos, where Troy stood, and up the Arm of Saint George to a league from Constantinople, and city and fleet gaze at each other in wonder before the host lands at Chalcedon. The emperor offers gold and silver, and the barons answer that he holds the empire wrongfully. Ten galleys row the youth along the walls, but the people say they do not know him, and the host arms, confesses, and embarks to a hundred pairs of trumpets.

40 Adont si s'acorderent tout li pelerin et li Venicien que on
Then so themselves-agreed all the pilgrims and the Venetians that one
i alast; adont si atirerent leur estoire et leur oirre, si
there should-go then so they-arranged their fleet and their journey so
se misent en mer. Tant alerent qu'il vinrent a un port
themselves put to sea So-far they-went that-they came to a port
que on apele Bouke d'Ave, qui estoit bien chent liwes en
that one calls Mouth of-Abydos which was well hundred leagues away
sus de Coustantinoble. Or estoit chis pors la ou Troies
off from Constantinople Now was this port there where Troy
le grant sist, a l'entree du bras Saint Jorge. De la
the great sat at the-entrance of-the arm (of-)Saint George From there
si se resmurent, et singlerent tant contremont le bras
so themselves set-out-again and sailed so-far up the arm

Saint Jorge que il vinrent a une liwe de Coustantinoble.
(of-)Saint George that they came to a league from Constantinople
Adont si s'entratendirent tant que tout li vaissel furent venu
Then so each-other-awaited so-far that all the vessels were come
tot ensanle. Quant tous li estores et tout li vaissel furent
all together When all the fleet and all the vessels were
tout ensanle, si achesmerent et atornerent leur vaissiaus si
all together so adorned and equipped their vessels so
belement que ch'estoit le plus bele cose du monde a eswarder.
handsomely that this-was the most fair thing of-the world to behold
Quant chil de Constantinoble virrent chel estoire qui si estoit
When those of Constantinople saw that fleet which so was
belement appareilliés, si l'eswarderent a merveille, et estoient
handsomely arrayed so it-beheld for wonder and were
monté seur les murs et seur les maisons pour eswarder chele
mounted on the walls and on the houses for to-behold that
merveille; et chil de l'estore si eswarderent le grandeur de le
marvel and those of the-fleet so beheld the greatness of the
vile qui si estoit longue et lee, si s'en remerveillierent
town which so was long and wide so themselves-thereat marveled-in-turn
molt durement. Adont si s'en passerent outre et
very greatly Then so themselves-thence passed beyond and
prisent port a Mauchidone, outre le brach Saint Jorge.
took port at Chalcedon beyond the arm (of-)Saint George
Quant li empereres de Coustentinoble le seut, si leur 41
When the emperor of Constantinople it knew so to-them
manda par boins messages que il estoient la quis et
sent-word by good messengers what they were there seeking and
pour coi il estoient la venu, et si leur manda que s'il
for what they were there come and so to-them sent-word that if-they
voloient de sen or et de sen argent, qu'il leur envoieroit
wished of his gold and of his silver that-he to-them would-send

molt volentiers. Quant li haut oïrent chou, si respondirent
very gladly When the high-(ones) heard this so answered
as messages qu'il n'en voloient nient de sen or ne de
to-the messengers that-they not-thereof wished anything of his gold nor of
sen argent, ains voloient que li empereres se demesist de
his silver but wished that the emperor himself should-divest of
l'empire, car il nel tenoit mie a droit ne loiaument; et se
the-empire for he not-it held at-all by right nor loyally and so
li manderent qu'il avoient le droit oir avec aus, Alexe,
to-him sent-word that-they had the rightful heir with them Alexius
le fil Kyrsaac l'empereur. Adont li message respondirent
the son (of-)Kyrsac the-emperor Then the messengers answered
et disent que li empereres n'en feroit nient; a tant
and said that the emperor not-thereof would-do anything with that
si s'en alerent. Aprés li dux de Venice parla as
so themselves-thence went Afterward the doge of Venice spoke to-the
barons et si leur dist: «Seigneur, je loieroie bien que
barons and so to-them said Lords I would-advise well that
on presist dis galies et que on mesist le vaslet en une
one should-take ten galleys and that one should-put the youth in one
et gens avec lui, et qu'il alaissent par trives au rivage
and people with him and that-they should-go under truce to-the shore
de Coustantinoble, et qu'il demandaissent a chiaus de le
of Constantinople and that-they should-ask of those of the
chité s'il vausissent le vaslet reconnoistre a seigneur.» Et
city if-they would-wish the youth to-acknowledge as lord And
li haut homme respondirent que che ne seroit se bien
the high men answered that this not would-be except good
non. Si atirerent ches dis galies et le vaslet et assés gent
not So they-arranged these ten galleys and the youth and plenty people
armee avec lui; si nagierent dusques pres des murs de le
armed with him so rowed as-far near of-the walls of the

vile, si nagierent amont et aval, et moustroient as gens
town so rowed up and down and showed to-the people
le vaslet, Alexes avoit a non, si leur demandoient si le
the youth Alexius had as name so of-them asked if him
reconnissoient a seigneur; et chil de le vile respondirent
they-acknowledged as lord and those of the town answered
et disent bien qu'il nel reconnissoient mie a seigneur,
and said well that-they not-him acknowledged at-all as lord
et qu'il ne savoient qui il estoit; et chil qu'il estoient
and that-they not knew who he was and those who were
es galies avec lui, le vaslet, disoient que ch'estoit le
in-the galleys with him the youth said that this-was the
fix Kyrsac l'empereeur qui fu, et chil dedens respondirent
son (of-)Kyrsac the-emperor who was and those within answered
autre fois qu'il n'en savoient nient. Adont si s'en
other time that-they not-thereof knew anything Then so themselves-thence
revinrent il arriere a l'ost, et fist savoir que on leur
came-back they back to the-host and made known what one to-them
avoit respondu. Adont quemanda on par toute l'ost qu'i
had answered Then commanded one through all the-host that-they
s'armaissent tout, et grant et petit, et quant il furent
themselves-should-arm all both great and small and when they were
tout armé, si se confesserent tout et quemenierent,
all armed so themselves confessed all and communed
car il doutoient molt a ariver par devers Coustantinoble.
for they feared much to land over toward Constantinople
Aprés si ordenerent leur batailles et leur nes et leur
Afterward so they-ordered their battalions and their ships and their
uissiers et les galies, et entrerent li chevalier es
horse-transports and the galleys and entered the knights into-the
uissiers avec leur chevax et se misent a le voie;
horse-transports with their horses and themselves put to the way

si fisent sonner buisines d'argent et d'arain bien dusques
so had sounded trumpets of-silver and of-brass well as-far
a chent paire, et tabours et tymbres tant que trop.
to hundred pair and drums and timbrels so-many that exceedingly

The Tower of Galata

XIII

The Greeks line the shore but flee before the landing, and the knights ride out of the horse-transports and chase them to a gate. The tower of Galata, which holds the chain across the port, is taken, and the fleet enters. The French camp before Blachernae, and the doge builds bridges on his ships' yards. On the morning of the assault the emperor Alexius comes out with seventeen battalions, and the French, afraid, can form only seven.

42 Quant le gent de le vile virrent chel grant navie et chel grant
When the people of the town saw that great navy and that great
estore et il oïrent les sons des buisines et des tabors qui
fleet and they heard the sounds of-the trumpets and of-the drums which
faisoient grant noise, si s'armerent trestout et monterent seur
made great noise so themselves-armed all and mounted on
les maisons et seur les tors de le vile. Si leur fu bien avis
the houses and on the towers of the town So to-them was well opinion
que toute le mers et le tere tranlast, et que toute le mers fust
that all the sea and the land trembled and that all the sea were
couverte de nes; et entrementiers avoit li empereres fait venir
covered with ships and meanwhile had the emperor had come
se gent tote armee seur le rivage, pour desfendre le rivage.
his people all armed on the shore for to-defend the shore

Quant li croisié et li Venicien virrent les Grius qui estoient 43
When the crusaders and the Venetians saw the Greeks who were
venu seur le rivage tout armé encontr'aus, si parlerent
come on the shore all armed against-them so spoke
ensanle tant que li dux de Venice dist qu'il iroit devant
together so-far that the doge of Venice said that-he would-go ahead
a toute se gent et qu'il prenderoit le rivage a l'aiwe de
with all his people and that-he would-take the shore with the-aid of
Dieu. Adont si prist ses nes et ses galies et ses uissiers,
God Then so took his ships and his galleys and his horse-transports
se se mist u front de l'ost par devant; aprés si
so himself put in-the front of the-host in front afterward so
prisent leur arbalestiers et leur arkiers, si les misent par
they-took their crossbowmen and their archers so them put in
devant en barges pour delivrer le rivage des Grius. Quant
front in barges for to-clear the shore of-the Greeks When
il se furent si faitement ordené, si alerent vers le
they themselves were in-such wise ordered so went toward the
rivage. Quant li Griu virrent que li pelerin ne lairoient
shore When the Greeks saw that the pilgrims not would-leave-off
mie pour peur d'aus qu'il ne venissent au rivage, et il
at-all for fear of-them that-they — should-come to-the shore and they
les virrent aprochier d'aus, si se traisent arriere, onques
them saw approach of-them so themselves drew back ever
ne les oserent atendre, tant que li estores arriva, et quant
not them dared await so-far that the fleet arrived and when
il furent arrivé, si issirent li chevalier hors des uissiers
they were arrived so went-out the knights out of-the horse-transports
tot monté; que li uissier estoient en tele maniere fait
all mounted for the horse-transports were in such manner made
que il i avoit wis que on ouvroit bien, si lanchoit on
that it there had door that one opened well so launched one

un pont hors, par ou li chevalier pooient issir hors a
a bridge out by where the knights could go-out out to
tere tot monté. Quant li estores fu arivés, et li Griu, qui
land all mounted When the fleet was arrived and the Greeks who
s'estoient trait arriere, virent que il furent tot issu hors,
themselves-were drawn back saw that they were all gone out
si en furent molt dolent. Or estoient che une gent, chil
so thereof were very sorrowful Now were these a people those
Griu qui estoient venu au rivage desfendre, qui s'estoient
Greeks who were come to-the shore to-defend who themselves-were
vanté a l'empereeur que ja n'i arriveroient li pelerin
boasted to the-emperor that ever not-there would-land the pilgrims
tant comme il i fussent. Quant li chevalier furent issu
so-long as they there were When the knights were gone
hors des uissiers, si aquellent a cachier ches Grius, si les
out of-the horse-transports so set to chase these Greeks so them
cachierent dusques a un pont qui pres estoit du kief de
chased as-far to a bridge which near was of-the end of
le chité; de seur chu pont avoit une porte ou par ent
the city from upon this bridge there-had a gate where through it
li Griu passerent et s'en fuirent en Constantinoble.
the Greeks passed and themselves-thence fled into Constantinople
Quant il furent revenu de cachier ches Grius, si parlerent
When they were returned from chasing these Greeks so spoke
ensanle, tant que li Venicien disent que leur vaissel n'estoient
together so-far that the Venetians said that their vessels not-were
mie a seur, s'il n'estoient en port; si prisent consel qu'il
at-all in safety if-they not-were in port so they-took counsel that-they
les meteroient en port. Or estoit li pors de Constantinoble
them would-put in port Now was the port of Constantinople
molt bien fremés d'une molt grosse caaine de fer, qui
very well closed with-a very great chain of iron which

tenoit en le chité et d'autre part du port tenoit a le
held in the city and on-other side of-the port held to the
tour de Galatha. Ichele tours estoit molt fors et molt bien
tower of Galata That tower was very strong and very well
desfensavle et molt bien warnie de gent desfensavle.
defensible and very well furnished with people able-to-defend
Par le consel des haus hommes fu chele tours assise, et 44
By the counsel of-the high men was that tower besieged and
tant que ele fu prise par forche, et de kief en kief de
so-far that it was taken by force and from end to end of
la caaine avoit galies de Grijois qui aidoient le caaine
the chain there-had galleys of Greeks which helped the chain
a deffendre. Et quant le tors fu prise et le caaine fu
to defend And when the tower was taken and the chain was
route, si entrerent li waissel dedens le port et furent
broken so entered the vessels within the port and were
mis assauveté, et prisent des galies as Grius qui estoient
put in-safety and they-took some galleys of-the Greeks which were
dedens le port et des nes. Et quant lés nes et tot
within the port and some ships And when the ships and all
li autre vaissel furent mis dedens le port a sauveté, si
the other vessels were put within the port in safety so
sanlerent tout li pelerin et li Venicien, si prisent consel
assembled all the pilgrims and the Venetians so took counsel
entr'aus comment il aserroient le vile, et tant qu'il
among-themselves how they would-besiege the town and so-far that-they
s'acorderent entr'aus que li Franchois l'asserroient par
themselves-agreed among-themselves that the French it-would-besiege by
tere et li Venicien par mer; et dist li dus de Venice qu'il
land and the Venetians by sea and said the doge of Venice that-he
feroit faire engiens en ses nes et eskieles, par coi on
would-have made engines in his ships and ladders by which one

assaurroit as murs. Adont s'armerent li chevalier et tout
would-assail at-the walls Then themselves-armed the knights and all
li autre pelerin; si alerent passer a un pont qui estoit pres
the other pilgrims so went to-cross at a bridge which was near
que de sit a deus liwes, ne n'avoit passage a aler en
upon as far as two leagues nor not-there-had passage to go into
Constantinoble a mains de quatre liwes d'illuec fors a chu
Constantinople at less than four leagues from-there except at this
pont. Et quand il vinrent au pont, li Griu y vinrent
bridge And when they came to-the bridge the Greeks there came
qui leur contredisent le passage tant comme il peurent,
who to-them denied the passage as-much as they could
et tant que li pelerin les en cachierent par forche de
and so-far that the pilgrims them thence chased by force of
bataille et passerent. Et quant il vinrent a le chité, si
battle and crossed And when they came to the city so
se logierent li haut homme et tendirent leur tentes
themselves lodged the high men and stretched their tents
devant le palais de Blakerne, qui estoit l'empereeur; et chis
before the palace of Blachernae which was (of-)the-emperor and this
palais estoit tout droit u kief de le chité. Adont fist li
palace was all straight at-the end of the city Then had the
dux de Venice molt merveillex engiens faire et molt biaus,
doge of Venice very marvelous engines made and very fair
car il fist prendre les antaines qui portent les voiles des
for he had taken the yards which bear the sails of-the
nes, qui bien avoient trente toises de lonc ou plus; si les
ships which well had thirty fathoms of length or more so them
fist tres bien loier et atakier a boines cordes as mas,
had very well bound and fastened with good ropes to-the masts
et fist faire bons pons par deseure et bons puis encoste de
and had made good bridges right above and good rails alongside of

cordes; si estoit li pons si les que trois chevalier armé i
ropes so was the bridge so wide that three knights armed there
pooient aler de front. Et fist li dux les pons si bien warnir
could go in a-line And had the doge the bridges so well furnished
et couvrir as costés d'esclavinnes et de toile que cil
and covered at-the sides with-sackcloth and with canvas that those
qui i montassent pour assalir n'eussent warde ne de
who there should-mount for to-assail not-should-have fear neither of
quarriaus d'arbalestes ne de saietes; et lanchoit li pons tant
quarrels of-crossbows nor of arrows and reached the bridge so-far
avant outre le nef qu'il avoit bien de hauteur du pont
forward beyond the ship that-it had well of height from-the bridge
dusques a tere pres de quarante toises ou plus; et a cascun
as-far to earth near of forty fathoms or more and on each
des uissiers avoit un mangonnel qui getoient adés
of-the horse-transports there-had a mangonel which threw continually
as murs et en le vile. Quant li Venicien eurent leur nes
at-the walls and into the town When the Venetians had their ships
apparellies si comme je vous ai chi conté, li pelerin d'autre
prepared so as I to-you have here recounted the pilgrims on-other
part, qui assalloient par tere, avoient leur perrieres et leur
side who assailed by land had their petraries and their
mangonniax si atornés qu'il getoient bien dusques u
mangonels so arranged that-they threw well as-far into-the
palais l'empereeur, et traioient; et chil de dedens retraioient
palace (of-)the-emperor and shot and those of within shot-back
bien ensement dusques as tentes as pelerins. Aprés il
well likewise as-far to-the tents of-the pilgrims Afterward they
parlerent ensanle, li pelerin et li Venicien, et prisent jor
spoke together the pilgrims and the Venetians and took day
a l'endemain d'assalir le chité et par terre et par mer
for the-next-day to-assail the city both by land and by sea

tot ensanle. Quant che vint l'endemain par matin, que li
all together When this came the-next-day in morning that the
Venicien s'apareilloient et ordenoient leur vaissiax et se
Venetians themselves-prepared and ordered their vessels and themselves
traisent au plus pres des murs pour assalir, et ensement
drew at-the most near to-the walls for to-assail and likewise
li pelerin d'autre part avoient ordenees leur gens, este me
the pilgrims on-other side had ordered their people behold (to-)me
vous que li empereres de Constantinoble, Alexes, issi hors
you that the emperor of Constantinople Alexius went-out out
de la chité par une porte que on apele le Porte Roumaine
of the city by a gate that one calls the Gate Roman
a tote se gent tote armee, et ordena illueques se gent et
with all his people all armed and ordered there his people and
fist .xvij. batailles; en ches .xvij. batailles esmoit on bien
made seventeen battalions in these seventeen battalions reckoned one well
pres de .c.m. hommes a cheval. Aprés si envoia
near of hundred-thousand men on horse Afterward so sent
le plus de ches .xvij. batailles entour l'ost as Franchois
the most of these seventeen battalions around the-host of-the French
environ, et les autres retint avec lui; et toute le gent a
about and the others kept with him and all the people on
pié de le chité qui armes peurent porter fist issir hors, et
foot of the city who arms could bear had go-out out and
si les fist rengier de kief en kief les murs, entre l'ost
so them had ranged from end to end (of-)the walls between the-host
des Franchois et les murs. Quant li Franchois se
of-the French and the walls When the French themselves
virrent si enclos a le reonde de ches batailles, si en furent
saw so enclosed in the round of these battalions so thereof were
molt espoenté et ordenerent dont leur batalles, et ne fisent
very frightened and ordered then their battalions and not made

que .vij. batalles de .vij. chens chevaliers, que plus n'en
but seven battalions of seven hundred knights for more not-thereof
n'avoient; et de ches .vij.c. en estoient li .l. a pié.
not-had and of these seven-hundred thereof were the fifty on foot

The Emperor Comes Out

XIV

The count of Flanders, the count of Saint Pol with Peter of Amiens, and Henry of Flanders take the three fighting battalions, while grooms and cooks armed in quilts and copper pots frighten the emperor's foot soldiers. The Venetians mount the walls and burn a stretch the size of Arras. When the count of Flanders turns back to the palisades on his counselors' advice, Saint Pol and Peter of Amiens refuse and ride at a walk against the emperor, and the ladies on the walls take them for angels.

Aprés, quant eurent si faitement leur gent ordenee, si 45
Afterward when they-had in-such wise their people ordered so
demanda li cuens de Flandres le premiere bataille et on
asked the count of Flanders the first battalion and one
li otria; l'autre batalle eut li cuens de Saint Pol et
to-him granted the-other battalion had the count of Saint Pol and
mesires Pierres d'Amiens; le tierche batalle eut mesires
my-lord Peter of-Amiens the third battalion had my-lord
Henris, li freres le conte de Flandres, et li Alemant. Et
Henry the brother (of-)the count of Flanders and the Germans And
aprés estavlierent que li serjant a pié sivirroient les batailles
afterward they-established that the sergeants on foot would-follow the battalions
a cheval, si que trois compaingnies ou quatre sivoient une
on horse so that three companies or four followed a
batalle a cheval; et cascune des batalles avoit chiax de
battalion on horse and each of-the battalions had those of

sen païs aprés lui. Aprés, quant il eurent atiré les trois
its country after it Afterward when they had arranged the three
batailles qui se combateroient a l'empereur, si atirerent
battalions which themselves would-fight with the-emperor so they-arranged
les autres quatre, qui l'ost garderoient; si que li marchis,
the other four which the-host would-guard so that the marquis
qui estoit sires de l'ost, eut l'arriere warde, et warda l'ost
who was lord of the-host had the-rear guard and guarded the-host
par deriere, et li quens Loouis eut l'autre emprés, et li
from behind and the count Louis had the-other next and the
Champenois eurent le tierche, et li Borguenong eurent le
Champenois had the third and the Burgundians had the
quarte, et ches quatre batalles warda li marchis. Et aprés
fourth and these four battalions guarded the marquis And afterward
prist on tous les garchons qui les chevax gardoient, et
took one all the grooms who the horses guarded and
tous les cuisiniers qui armes peurent porter; si les fist on
all the cooks who arms could bear so them had one
trestous armer et de keutes pointes et de peniax et de
all armed both with quilts quilted and with saddle-cloths and with
pos de coivre et de piletes et de pestiax, si k'il estoient
pots of copper and with mallets and with pestles so that-they were
si lait et si hideus que le menue gent a pié l'empereeur,
so ugly and so hideous that the small people on foot (of-)the-emperor
qui estoient par dehors les murs, en eurent grant peur et
who were on outside the walls thereof had great fear and
grant hisde, quant il les virent. Et ches quatre batalles,
great dread when they them saw And these four battalions
que je vous ai chi nommees par devant, warderent l'ost,
that I to-you have here named just before guarded the-host
pour peur que les batailles l'empereur qui estoient entor
for fear that the battalions (of-)the-emperor which were around

l'ost ne perchaissent ne ne damaissent l'ost ne les tentes;
the-host — should-pierce nor — should-harm the-host nor the tents
et les garchons et les quisiniers mist on par devers le
and the grooms and the cooks put one over toward the
cité, encontre les gens a pié l'empereur qui estoient rengié
city against the people on foot (of-)the-emperor who were ranged
contreval les murs. Quant le pietaille l'empereur virent no
down-along the walls When the foot-soldiery (of-)the-emperor saw our
menue gent si laidement armee, si en eurent si grand peur
small people so uglily armed so thereof had so great fear
et si grant hisde que cnques ne s'oserent mouvoir, ne
and so great dread that ever not themselves-dared move nor
venir vers aus, ne onques de chele part n'eut l'os warde.
come toward them nor ever from that side not-had the-host fear
Aprés, si kemanda on que li quens de Flandres et li quens 46
Afterward so commanded one that the count of Flanders and the count
de Saint Pol, et mesires Henris, qui eurent les trois batalles,
of Saint Pol and my-lord Henry who had the three battalions
se combatissent a l'empereur; et desfendi on bien que
themselves should-fight with the-emperor and forbade one well that
pour nul besoing que eles eussent, les autres quatre ne se
for any need that they should-have the other four — themselves
meussent de si a tant que eles veissent qu'eles eussent
should-move from here to the-time that they should-see that-they had
ausi comme tot perdu, qu'il ne fussent enclos ne assali
as it-were all lost that-they not should-be enclosed nor assailed
des autres batailles qui entor l'ost estoient. Entrementiers
by-the other battalions which around the-host were Meanwhile
que li Franchois estoient si faitement ordené, li Venicien,
that the French were in-such wise ordered the Venetians
qui en le mer estoient, ne s'oublierent mie; ains traisent leur
who on the sea were not themselves-forgot at-all but drew their

nes pres des murs, si k'il montoient bien seur les murs
ships near to-the walls so that-they mounted well on the walls
de la chité par les eskieles et par les pons qu'il avoient
of the city by the ladders and by the bridges that-they had
fait seur les nes, et traisent et lanchierent et fisent geter
made on the ships and shot and hurled and had shot
leur mangonniax, et assalirent si durement que trop, et
their mangonels and assailed so hard that exceedingly and
tant qu'il misent le fu en le vile; si que bien en i eut
so-far that-they put the fire in the town so that well thereof there had
ars le grandeur de le chité d'Arras. Et ne s'oserent mie
burned the size of the city of-Arras And not themselves-dared at-all
espardre ne metre en le cité, car trop estoient peu gent, ne il
spread nor put into the city for too were few people nor they
n'i eussent duree; ains se remisent ariere en leur nes.
not-there would-have endurance but themselves put-again back into their ships
47 Li haut homme qui d'autre part estcient, qui se devoient
The high men who on-other side were who themselves were-to
combatre a l'empereeur, avoient estavli que on avoit eslit
fight with the-emperor had established that one had chosen
de cascunne batalle deus des plus preudoumes et des
from each battalion two of-the most worthy-men and of-the
plus sages que on i savoit; et quanke il kemandoient
most wise that one there knew and whatever they commanded
estoit fait; s'il kemandaissent: «Pongniés!» on pongnoit,
was done if-they commanded Spur one spurred
s'il kemandaissent: «Alés le pas!» on aloit le pas. Li
if-they commanded Go the pace one went the pace The
cuens de Flandres, qui avoit l'avangarde, chevaucha premiers
count of Flanders who had the-vanguard rode first
encontre l'empereur tot le pas; et li empereres estoit bien
against the-emperor all the pace and the emperor was well

le quarte part d'une liwe loins du conte de Flandres,
the fourth part of-a league far from-the count of Flanders
et faisoit chevauchier ses batalles encontre le conte; et li
and had ride his battalions against the count and the
cuens de Saint Pol et mesires Pierres d'Amiens, qui avoit
count of Saint Pol and my-lord Peter of-Amiens who had
l'autre bataille emprés, chevauchoient un petit en sus par
the-other battalion next rode a little away off by
encoste; et mesires Henris de Hainaut et li Alemant, qui
alongside and my-lord Henry of Hainaut and the Germans who
avoient le tierche bataille, chevauchoient aprés; ne n'i
had the third battalion rode after nor not-there
avoit cheval qui ne fust couvers de couvretures d'armes ou
had horse which not were covered with caparisons of-arms or
de dras de soie par deseure toutes les autres couvretures.
of cloths of silk right above all the other caparisons
Et trois compaingnies ou quatre ou chinc de serjans a
And three companies or four or five of sergeants on
pié sivoient cascune des batalles as kewes des chevax,
foot followed each of-the battalions at-the tails of-the horses
et chevauchoient si rengié et si serré qu'il n'estoit nus si
and rode so ranged and so close that-it not-was anyone so
hardis qui osast chevauchier devant l'autre. Et li empereres
bold who dared ride before the-other And the emperor
chevauchoit encontre no gent a tot nuef batalles, ne n'i
rode against our people with all nine battalions nor not-there
avoit chelui de ches nuef batalles, ou il n'eust .iij.m.
had one of these nine battalions where it not-had three-thousand
chevaliers, ou quatre, ou chinc en tele i avoit il. Et
knights or four or five in such there had it And
quant li quens de Flandres eut l'ost eslongié bien deux
when the count of Flanders had the-host withdrawn-from well two

arbalestees, si conseillier li disent: «Sire, vous ne faites
crossbow-shots his counselors to-him said Lord you not do
mie bien qui vous alés combatre a l'empereur si en sus
at-all well who you go to-fight with the-emperor so away off
de l'ost, car se vous i conbatés et vous i aiés mester
from the-host for if you there fight and you there have need
d'aïe, chil qui wardent l'ost ne vous porront aidier. Mais
of-aid those who guard the-host not you will-be-able help But
se vous nous en creés, vous retornerés as lisches, et
if you us therein believe you will-return to-the palisades and
illueques atenderés l'empereeur plus seurement, s'il se veut
there will-await the-emperor more safely if-he himself wishes
combatre.» Li cuens de Flandres retorna ariere as liches, si
to-fight The count of Flanders returned back to-the palisades so
comme on li loa, et le bataille monseigneur Henri ausi.
as one him advised and the battalion (of-)my-lord Henry also
Et li cuens de Saint Pol ne mesires Pierres d'Amiens ne
And the count of Saint Pol nor my-lord Peter of-Amiens not
vaurrent retorner, ains se raasturent en mi le camp
wished to-return but themselves halted in the-midst-of the field
tout coi a toute leur gent. Quant le batalle le conte de
all still with all their people When the battalion (of-)the count of
Saint Pol et monseigneur Pierron d'Amiens virent le conte
Saint Pol and my-lord Peter of-Amiens saw the count
de Flandres retorner, si disent tot ensanle que li cuens de
of Flanders return so said all together that the count of
Flandres faisoit grant honte qui retornoit, qui l'avangarde
Flanders did great shame who returned who the-vanguard
avoit, et disent tot ensanle: «Sire, sire, li quens de Flandres
had and said all together Lord lord the count of Flanders
retorne! Puis qu'il retorne, il vous laisse l'avantgarde. Or le
returns Since that-he returns he to-you leaves the-vanguard Now it

prenons, de par Dieu!» Si s'acorderent li baron ensanle,
let-us-take on behalf-of God So themselves-agreed the barons together
et disent qu'il prenderoient l'avantgarde. Quant li quens
and said that-they would-take the-vanguard When the count
de Flandres vit que li quens de Saint Pol ne mesires
of Flanders saw that the count of Saint Pol nor my-lord
Pierres d'Amiens ne retorneroient mie, si leur manda par
Peter of-Amiens not would-return at-all so to-them sent-word by
un message, et pria qu'il retornaissent. Et mesires Pierres
a messenger and prayed that-they should-return And my-lord Peter
d'Amiens li remanda qu'il ne retorneroient nient. Et
of-Amiens to-him sent-word-back that-they not would-return at-all And
li quens de Flandres li manda de rekief par deus
the count of Flanders to-him sent-word of anew by two
messages que pour Dieu cheste honte ne li fesissent, mais
messengers that for God this shame not to-him should-do but
retornaissent, que che li avoit on loé. Et li cuens de
should-return for this him had one advised And the count of
Saint Pol et mesires Pierres d'Amiens li remanderent que
Saint Pol and my-lord Peter of-Amiens to-him sent-word-back that
n'ensi n'ensi ne retorneroient il. Adonques vint mesires
neither-thus nor-thus not would-return they Then came my-lord
Pierres d'Amiens et mesires Wistasses de Canteleu, qui
Peter of-Amiens and my-lord Eustace of Canteleux who
estoient maistre meneeur de la batalle, si disent: «Seigneur,
were master leaders of the battalion so said Lords
chevauchiés, de par Dieu, tot le pas!» Et il commenchent
ride on behalf-of God all the pace And they begin
a chevauchier le pas, et tout chil de l'ost, qui estoient
to ride the pace and all those of the-host who were
demoré arriere, commenchierent a crier aprés: «Veés, veés!
remained behind began to cry after See see

Li quens de Saint Pol et mesires Pierres d'Amiens veut
The count of Saint Pol and my-lord Peter of-Amiens wishes
assanler a l'empereur. Sire Diex!» commenchierent il a
to-join-battle with the-emperor Lord God began they to
dire et a crier, «Sire Diex, soiés hui warde d'aus et de
say and to cry Lord God be today guard of-them and of
toute leur compaingnie! Veés! Il ont l'avantgarde que li
all their company See They have the-vanguard that the
cuens de Flandres devoit avoir! Sire Diex, conduiés les a
count of Flanders was-to have Lord God conduct them to
sauveté!» Et les dames et les demiseles du palais estoient
safety And the ladies and the damsels of-the palace were
montees as fenestres, et autres gens de le cité, et dames
mounted to-the windows and other people of the city and ladies
et demiseles, estoient montees as murs de le chité, et
and damsels were mounted on-the walls of the city and
esgardoient chevauchier chele batalle et l'empereur d'autre
watched ride that battalion and the-emperor on-other
part, et disoient entr'ax que che sanloit des noes que
side and said among-themselves that it seemed of-the ours that
che fussent angle, si erent il bel, pour chou qu'il estoient
these were angels so were they fair for this that-they were
si belement armé et leur cheval si belement couvert.
so handsomely armed and their horses so handsomely covered

The Armies Face to Face

XV

Shamed by his own knights, the count of Flanders rides up beside Saint Pol, and the armies meet across a hillock. The emperor halts, astounded; the French will not cross the great conduit so far from their camp, and the emperor goes back into the city, blamed by all for not fighting so few. The Venetians tell of their assault. The townsmen demand battle or the young Alexius, and the emperor promises battle for the next day but flees at midnight.

Quant li chevalier de le bataille le conte de Flandres 48
When the knights of the battalion (of-)the count of Flanders
virent que li quens de Saint Pol et mesires Pierres
saw that the count of Saint Pol and my-lord Peter
d'Amiens ne retorneroient en nule fin, si vinrent au conte,
of-Amiens not would-return in any end so came to-the count
se li disent: «Sire, vous faites grant honte qui ne vous
so to-him said Lord you do great shame who not yourself
mouvés, et sachiés que se vous ne chevauchiés, nous ne
move and know that if you not ride we not
vous tenrons plus a nous!» Quant li quens de Flandres oï
you will-hold longer to us When the count of Flanders heard
chou, si feri cheval des esperons et tot li autre aprés,
this so struck horse with-the spurs and all the others after
et poinsent tant qu'il atainsent le batalle le conte de
and spurred so-far that-they overtook the battalion (of-)the count of
Saint Pol et monseigneur Pierre d'Amiens, et quant i
Saint Pol and my-lord Peter of-Amiens and when they
l'eurent atainte, si chevauchierent encoste aus tot de front;
it-had overtaken so rode alongside them all in a-line
et le bataille monseigneur Henri chevaucha deriere. Et les
and the battalion (of-)my-lord Henry rode behind And the

batailles l'empereur et les noes batailles s'estoient ja si
battalions (of-)the-emperor and the our battalions themselves-were already so
aprochies, que li arbalestier l'empereur traioient bien en nos
approached that the crossbowmen (of-)the-emperor shot well into our
gens, et nostre arbalestier ensement es gens l'empereur,
people and our crossbowmen likewise into-the people (of-)the-emperor
et n'avoit que un tertre a monter entre l'empereur et
and not-there-had but a hillock to mount between the-emperor and
nos batailles, et montoient les batalles l'empereur, d'une
our battalions and mounted the battalions (of-)the-emperor on-one
part et les noes d'autre. Et quant no gent vinrent en son
side and the ours on-other And when our people came on top-of
le tertre et li empereres les vit, si s'arresta et tote se
the hillock and the emperor them saw so himself-halted and all his
gent ausi, et furent si abaubi et si esbahi de chou que
people also and were so astounded and so dismayed of this that
nos batalles chevauchoient si de front encontre aus, qu'il
our battalions rode so in a-line against them that-they
ne se seurent conseillier. Entrementiers qu'il estoient
not themselves knew-how-to counsel Meanwhile that-they were
illueques si abaubi, les autres batailles l'empereur, qui avoient
there so astounded the other battalions (of-)the-emperor which had
esté envoïes entour l'ost as Franchois, repairierent ariere
been sent around the-host of-the French returned back
et s'asanlerent toutes ensanle avec l'empereur u val. Et
and themselves-assembled all together with the-emperor in-the valley And
quant li Franchois virent trestoutes les batailles l'empereur
when the French saw all the battalions (of-)the-emperor
assanlees ensanle, si s'aresterent en son le tertre tout coi, et
assembled together so themselves-halted on top-of the hillock all still and
se mervellierent que li empereur voloit faire, et envoierent
themselves marveled what the emperor wished to-do and sent

li conte et li haut homme des trois batailles li un as
the counts and the high men of-the three battalions the ones to-the
autres, pour prendre conseil que il feroient, s'il iroient
others for to-take counsel what they would-do if-they would-go
dusques a l'ost l'empereur ou non. Et n'eurent mie consel
as-far to the-host (of-)the-emperor or not And not-had at-all counsel
qu'il i alaissent, car il estoient molt en sus de l'ost
that-they there should-go for they were very away off from the-host
et, s'il se combatoient la ou li empereres estoit, chil
and if-they themselves fought there where the emperor was those
qui wardent l'ost ne les vesroient mie, ne ne leur porroient
who guard the-host not them would-see at-all nor not them could
aidier, se mestiers en estoit, et, d'autre part, entr'ax
help if need thereof was and on-other side between-them
et l'empereur avoit uns grand caneus, uns grans conduis,
and the-emperor there-had a great canal a great conduit
par ou l'iawe venoit en Constantinoble, que, s'il i
by where the-water came into Constantinople so-that if-they there
passaissent, il eussent grant damage de leur gent; et pour
should-cross they would-have great harm of their people and for
chou n'eurent il mie consel qu'il i alaissent. Entrementiers
this not-had they at-all counsel that-they there should-go Meanwhile
que li Franchois parloient ensi ensanle, este me vous que
that the French spoke thus together behold (to-)me you that
li empereres se mist arriere en Constantinoble; et quant
the emperor himself put back into Constantinople and when
il fu venus, si fu molt blasmés durement et de dames
he was come so was very blamed greatly both by ladies
et de demiseles, et d'uns et d'autres de chou qu'il ne
and by damsels and by-ones and by-others of this that-he not

s'estoit combatus a si peu de gent comme li Franchois
himself-was fought with so few of people as the French
estoient, a tot si grant pule comme il avoit mené.
were with all so great multitude as he had led
49 Quant li empereres fu ensi faitement retornés, si s'en
When the emperor was thus wise returned so themselves-thence
renvinrent li pelerin a leur tentes et se desarmerent, et
came-back the pilgrims to their tents and themselves disarmed and
quant il furent desarmé, li Venicien qui estoient passé en nes
when they were disarmed the Venetians who were crossed in ships
et en barges, si vinrent demander de leur nouveles et disent:
and in barges so came to-ask of their news and said
«Par foi! nous aviemes oï dire que vous vous combatiés
By faith we had heard tell that you yourselves fought
as Grius; si aviemes molt grant peur de vous, si veniemes a
with-the Greeks so we-had very great fear for you so we-came to
vous.» Et li Franchois leur respondirent et disent: «Par foi!
you And the French to-them answered and said By faith
le grace Dieu, nous avons bien fait, car nous alames encontre
the grace (of-)God we have well done for we went against
l'empereur, et li empereres n'osa assanler a nous!» Et li
the-emperor and the emperor not-dared to-join-battle with us And the
Franchois redemanderent des nouveles as Veniciens, et il
French asked-in-turn of-the news of-the Venetians and they
leur disent: «Par foi!» fisent il, «nous avons durement asali,
to-them said By faith said they we have hard assailed
et entrames en le cité par deseur les murs, et meismes le fu
and entered into the city right above the walls and we-put the fire
en le chité si comme molt en i eut d'arse de le chité.»
in the city so that much thereof there had of-burned of the city

Si comme li Franchois et li Venicien parloient ensanle, 50
So as the French and the Venetians spoke together
si leva molt grans mumures en le vile, et disent chil de
so rose very great murmurs in the town and said those of
le vile a l'empereur qu'il les delivrast des Franchois
the town to the-emperor that-he them should-deliver from-the French
qui les avoient assis, et que s'il ne se combatoit a
who them had besieged and that if-he not himself fought with
aus, qu'il iroient pour le jone vaslet que li Franchois
them that-they would-go for the young youth whom the French
avoient amené, s'en feroient empereur et leur seigneur.
had brought so-thereof would-make emperor and their lord
Quant li empereres oï chou, si leur creanta que il se 51
When the emperor heard this so to-them promised that he himself
combateroit l'endemain a aus, et quant che vint vers
would-fight the-next-day with them and when this came toward
mie nuit, si s'en fui li empereres hors de le vile
mid night so himself-thence fled the emperor out of the town
a tout tant de gent comme il peut mener avec lui.
with all as-much of people as he could lead with him

Kyrsac Restored

XVI

The Greeks come for Alexius, and the barons lead him to the palace, where his father Kyrsac is freed and seated beside him on the imperial throne, and Murzuphlus is made chief bailiff. The sultan of Iconium asks help against his brother, but the barons will not leave the city. The French empress, wife of Branas, receives them coldly, and a king of Nubia branded with a cross tells of his pilgrimage. The host lodges beyond the port and resolves to pull down fifty fathoms of the wall.

52 Quant che vint l'endemain par matin et que chil de le
When this came the-next-day in morning and that those of the
vile seurent que li empereres se estoit fuis, si ne font
town knew that the emperor himself was fled so not do
il mais el, si vienent il as portes, si les ouvrirent
they more else so come they to-the gates so them opened
et si issirent hors et si vinrent a l'ost des Franchois,
and so went-out out and so came to the-host of-the French
et demanderent et enquisent Alexe, le fil Kyrsaac. Et on
and asked and inquired-after Alexius the son (of-)Kyrsac And one
leur enseigna que a le tente le marchis le troveroient.
to-them showed that at the tent (of-)the marquis him they-would-find
Quant il vinrent la, si le troverent; si en fisent si
When they came there so him found so thereof made his
ami molt grant feste et molt grant goie et merchierent
friends very great feast and very great joy and thanked
molt les barons et disent que molt avoient bien fait et
much the barons and said that very they-had well done and
grant barnage, qui si faitement avoient ouvré, et disent
great valor who in-such wise had wrought and said
que li empereres s'en estoit fuis, et qu'il venissent
that the emperor himself-thence was fled and that-they should-come

en le chité et u palais comme u leur. Adonques si
into the city and into-the palace as into-the theirs Then so
sanlerent tout li haut baron de l'ost, et prisent Alexe, le
assembled all the high barons of the-host and took Alexius the
fil Kyrsac, si l'en menerent u palais a grant goie
son (of-)Kyrsac so him-thence led into-the palace with great joy
et a grant feste. Et quant il furent venu u palais, si
and with great feast And when they were come into-the palace so
fisent Kyrsac sen pere metre hors de prison et se femme,
had Kyrsac his father put out of prison and his wife
que ses freres, qui avoit tenu l'empire, i avoit fait metre.
whom his brother who had held the-empire there had had put
Et quant Kyrsacs fu hors de prison, si eut molt grant
And when Kyrsac was out of prison so had very great
goie de sen fil, et acola loi et baisa, et merchia molt
joy of his son and embraced him and kissed and thanked much
tous les barons qui lueques estoient, et dist que, par l'aiwe
all the barons who there were and said that by the-aid
de Dieu avant et de le leur, estoit il hors de prison.
of God first and of the theirs was he out of prison
Adonques si furent aportees deus caiieres a or, et assist on
Then so were brought two chairs of gold and seated one
Kyrsac en l'une et Alexe, sen fil, en l'autre par delés, et
Kyrsac in the-one and Alexius his son in the-other by beside and
fu Kyrsaacs saisis du siege emperial. Adonques dist on a
was Kyrsac seized of-the seat imperial Then said one to
l'empereeur: «Sire, il a chaiens un haut homme en prison,
the-emperor Lord it has in-here a high man in prison
Morchofles a a non, qui bien i a esté set ans. Se
Murzuphlus has as name who well there has been seven years If
vostre volentés i fust, il fust boin que on le mesist
your will therein were it would-be good that one him should-put

hors de prison.» Adonques si fu Morchofles mis hors de
out of prison Then so was Murzuphlus put out of
prison, puis en fist li empereres sen maistre bailliu, dont
prison then of-him made the emperor his chief bailiff whereof
li empereres eut puis aprés molt mal werredon, si comme
the emperor had then afterward very ill reward so as
nous vous dirons aprés. Or avint, aprés que li Franchois
we to-you will-tell afterward Now happened after that the French
eurent si faitement ouvré, que li soudans du Coine
had in-such wise wrought that the sultan of-the Iconium
oï dire que si faitement avoient fait li Franchois. Si
heard tell that in-such wise had done the French So
vint parler a aus la ou il estoient encore logié dehors
came to-speak to them there where they were still lodged outside
Coustantinoble, si leur dist: «Chertes, seigneur», fist-il,
Constantinople so to-them said Certainly lords said-he
«vous avés fait molt grant barnage et molt grant proeche,
you have done very great valor and very great prowess
qui si grant cose comme Constantinoble est, qui est li kiés
who so great thing as Constantinople is which is the head
du monde, avés conquis, et avés remis le droit oir de
of-the world have conquered and have put-back the rightful heir of
Coustantinoble en sen siege et coroné l'avés a empereeur.»
Constantinople in his seat and crowned him-have as emperor
Che disoient il u païs que Coustantinoble estoit li kiés
This said they in-the country that Constantinople was the head
du monde. «Seigneur,» fist li soudans, «je vous vaurroie
of-the world Lords said the sultan I you would-wish
proier d'une cose que je vous dirai. Jou ai un mien frere
to-pray of-a thing that I to-you will-tell I have a my-own brother
mainsné de mi, qui m'a soustraite me tere et me
younger than me who from-me-has taken-away my land and my

seignorie du Coine par traïson, dont g'estoie sires et dont
lordship of-the Iconium by treason whereof I-was lord and whereof
je sui drois oirs. Se vous me voliés aidier a conquerre me
I am rightful heir If you me wished to-help to conquer my
tere et me seignourie, je vous dourroie molt grant plenté
land and my lordship I to-you would-give very great plenty
de men avoir, et si me feroie crestiener et tous chiax
of my wealth and so myself would-have christened and all those
qui a mi se tenroient, se je ravoie me seignourie, et
who to me themselves would-hold if I had-again my lordship and
se vous me voliés aidier.» Et li baron respondirent qu'il
if you me wished to-help And the barons answered that-they
s'en conselleroient, et fu mandés de Venice li dux
themselves-thereof would-counsel and was summoned of Venice the doge
et li marchis et tout li haut baron, et s'en
and the marquis and all the high barons and themselves-thereon
assenlerent a molt grant consel, et tant que leur consaus
assembled in very great council and so-far that their counsel
ne leur aporta mie qu'il fesissent chou que li soudans
not to-them brought at-all that-they should-do this that the sultan
leur requeroit. Et quant il vinrent de leur consel, si
of-them requested And when they came from their council so
respondirent au soudan qu'il ne pooient mie faire chou
answered to-the sultan that-they not could at-all do this
qu'il leur requeroit, car il avoient encore leur couvenanches
that-he of-them requested for they had still their covenants
a avoir de l'empereeur, et que che seroit uns perix de laier
to have from the-emperor and that this would-be a peril to leave
si grant cose comme Coustantinoble est en tel point comme
so great thing as Constantinople is in such point as

ele estoit; si ne l'osseroient laissier. Quant li soudans oï
it was so not it-they-would-dare leave When the sultan heard
chou, si en fu tous courchiés, si s'en rala.
this so thereat was all angered so himself-thence went-back
53 Aprés quant li baron eurent mené Alexe u palais, si
Afterward when the barons had led Alexius into-the palace so
demanderent de le sereur le roi de Franche, que on apeloit
asked of the sister (of-)the king of France whom one called
l'empeerris de Franche, se ele vivoit encore, et on dist ouil
the-empress of France if she lived still and one said yes
et que ele estoit mariee, que uns haus hons de le chité, li
and that she was married for a high man of the city the
Vernas avoit a non, l'avoit espousee; si manoit en un palais
Branas had as name her-had wedded so dwelt in a palace
pres d'iluec. La si l'alerent veir li baron, et si le saluerent,
near of-there There so her-went to-see the barons and so her greeted
et molt li pramissent a faire lui servige, et ele leur fist
and much to-her promised to do her service and she to-them made
molt mauvais sanlant et molt estoit corchie de chou qu'il
very bad countenance and very was angered of this that-they
estoient la alé et de chou qu'il avoient chelui Alexe coroné;
were there gone and of this that-they had that Alexius crowned
ne ne voloit parler a aus, ains i faisoit parler un latimier, et
nor not wished to-speak to them but there had speak an interpreter and
disoit li latimiers qu'ele ne savoit nient de Franchois. Mais li
said the interpreter that-she not knew anything of French But the
quens Loeis (chis estoit ses cousins) si s'acointa a lui.
count Louis this-one was her cousin so himself-acquainted with her
54 Aprés il avint un jour que li baron alerent esbanier u
Afterward it happened one day that the barons went to-disport in-the
palais pour veir Kyrsac et l'empereur sen fil. Si comme li
palace for to-see Kyrsac and the-emperor his son So as the

baron estoient laiens u palais, si vint illueques uns rois
barons were in-there in-the palace so came there a king
qui toute avoit le char noire, et avoit une crois en mi
who all had the flesh black and had a cross in the-midst-of
le front qui li avoit esté faite d'un caut fer. Chis rois
the forehead which to-him had been made with-a hot iron This king
si sejornoit en une molt rike abeïe en le chité, ou Alexes,
so sojourned in a very rich abbey in the city where Alexius
qui avoit esté empereres, avoit kemandé que il fust et
who had been emperor had commanded that he should-be and
en fust sires et demisiaus, tant comme il i vausist
thereof should-be lord and young-lord so-long as he there would-wish
sejorner. Quant li empereres le vit venir, si se leva
to-sojourn When the emperor him saw come so himself rose
encontre lui et s'en fist molt grant feste. Si demanda
to-meet him and himself-thereof made very great feast So asked
li empereres as barons: «Savés vous ore», fist il, «qui
the emperor of-the barons Know you now said he who
chist hons est? — Sire, nennil», fisent li baron. «Par foi!»
this man is Lord no said the barons By faith
fist li empereres, «ch'est li rois de Nubie, qui est venus
said the emperor this-is the king of Nubia who is come
en pelerinage en cheste vile.» Et fist on parler latimiers a
in pilgrimage to this town And had one speak interpreters to
lui, et fist on lui demander ou se tere estoit, tant qu'il
him and had one of-him asked where his land was so-far that-he
respondi as latimiers, en sen langage, que se tere estoit
answered to-the interpreters in his language that his land was
encore cent journees dela Jherusalem, et de la estoit il
yet hundred days beyond Jerusalem and from there was he
venus en Jherusalem en pelerinage; et si dist que, quant il
come into Jerusalem in pilgrimage and so said that when he

mut de sen païs, qu'il mut bien soixante hommes de se
set-out from his country that-he set-out well sixty men of his
tere avec lui; et quant il vint en Jherusalem n'en i
land with him and when he came into Jerusalem not-thereof there
eut il de vis que dis, et quant il vint de Jherusalem
had it of living but ten and when he came from Jerusalem
en Coustantinoble, n'en avoit il que deus vis. Et si dist
into Constantinople not-thereof had it but two living And so said
qu'il voloit aler en pelerinage a Rome et de Rome a
that-he wished to-go in pilgrimage to Rome and from Rome to
Saint Jake et puis revenir s'ent ariere en Jherusalem,
Saint James and then come himself-thence back into Jerusalem
s'il pooit tant vivre, et puis illueques morir. Et si dist
if-he could so-long live and then there die And so said
que tot chil de se tere estoient crestien, et quant li enfes
that all those of his land were Christians and when the child
estoit nes et on le baptisoit, que on li faisoit une crois
was born and one him baptized that one on-him made a cross
en mi le front d'un caut fer ausi comme il avoit.
in the-midst-of the forehead with-a hot iron just as he had
Si esgarderent li baron chu roi a molt grant merveille.
So looked-at the barons this king with very great wonder
55 Aprés, quant li baron eurent coroné Alexe si faitement
Afterward when the barons had crowned Alexius in-such wise
comme je vous ai dit, si atira on que mesires Pierres
as I to-you have said so arranged one that my-lord Peter
de Braichoel, et il et se gent, manroient u palais avec
of Bracieux both he and his people would-dwell in-the palace with
l'empereur; et puis aprés si atirerent li baron comment il
the-emperor and then afterward so arranged the barons how they
se herbegeroient, et n'oserent mie manoir du tot en
themselves would-lodge and not-dared at-all dwell of-the all in

le chité pour les Grius qui traïteur estoient; ains s'en
the city for the Greeks who traitors were but themselves-thence
alerent herbergier outre le port, par devers le tour de
went to-lodge beyond the port over toward the tower of
Galatha, et se herbegierent illueques tout ensanle en
Galata and themselves lodged there all together in
unes mansions qui i estoient, et traisent leur navie et
some dwellings which there were and drew their navy and
arriverent devant aus, et aloient en le chité quant il
landed before them and went into the city when they
voloient. Et quant il voloient aler par yawe, si passoient en
wished And when they wished to-go by water so crossed in
barges, et quant il voloient aler a cheval, si passoient au
barges and when they wished to-go on horse so crossed at-the
pont. Adonques, quant il furent herbegié, si prisent consel
bridge Then when they were lodged so took counsel
ensanle et li Franchois et li Venicien que il feroient
together both the French and the Venetians that they would-have
abatre cinquante toises des murs de le vile, car il
thrown-down fifty fathoms of-the walls of the town for they
doutoient que chil de le chité ne revelaissent encontre aus.
feared that those of the city — should-rebel against them

The Coronation of Alexius

XVII

Alexius is crowned and pays a hundred thousand marks: half to the Venetians, and most of the rest to clear the French debt for the fleet. Half the host rides with him for three months and wins twenty cities and forty castles, while Kyrsac pays nothing and the Greeks rebuild their walls higher. Called back for All Saints, the barons demand their money. Alexius asks delay after delay and, on Murzuphlus's advice, refuses to pay; the barons threaten to take their due from his goods.

56 Aprés si sanlerent un jour tout li baron u palais
Afterward so assembled one day all the barons in-the palace
l'empereur, et demanderent leur convenanches a l'empereur;
(of-)the-emperor and asked their covenants of the-emperor
et respondi qu'il les tenroit bien, mais il voloit anchois
and he-answered that-he them would-keep well but he wished first
estre coronés. Et puis si atirerent et prisent un jour
to-be crowned And then so they-arranged and took a day
de li coroner; et a chel jour il fu coronés hautement
to him crown and on that day he was crowned highly
comme empereres par le volenté de sen pere qui li otria
as emperor by the will of his father who to-him granted
boinement. Et quant il fut coronés, li baron requisent leur
gladly And when he was crowned the barons requested their
paiement; et il dist qu'il paieroit molt volentiers chou qu'il
payment and he said that-he would-pay very gladly this that-he
porroit, et paia adonques bien .c.m. mars. Et de ches
could and paid then well hundred-thousand marks And of these
.c.m. mars rechurent li Venicien le moitié, car il
hundred-thousand marks received the Venetians the half for they
devoient avoir le moitié des conquestes; et des .l.m.
were-to have the half of-the conquests and of-the fifty-thousand

mars qui remesent, leur paia on .xxxvi.m. mars que li
marks which remained to-them paid one thirty-six-thousand marks that the
Franchois leur devoient encore de leur navie; et des autres
French to-them owed still for their navy and of-the other
.xx.m. mars qui remessent as pelerins, rendi on a tous
twenty-thousand marks which remained to-the pilgrims repaid one to all
chiaus qui avoient presté de leur avoir au paiage du passage.
those who had lent of their wealth to-the payment of-the passage
Aprés li empereres requist les barons, et si leur dist que 57
Afterward the emperor besought the barons and so to-them said that
il n'avoit fors Coustantinoble, et que peu li vauroit s'il
he not-had except Constantinople and that little him would-avail if-he
n'avoit autre cose, car ses oncles tenoit toutes les chités et
not-had other thing for his uncle held all the cities and
les castiax qui siens devoient estre; et requist les barons
the castles which his were-to be and besought the barons
que il li aidaissent a conquerre de le tere entor, et
that they him should-help to conquer of the land around and
il leur douroit encore du sien molt volentiers. Adonques
he to-them would-give yet of-the his very gladly Then
respondirent que che voloient il molt volentiers, que tot
they-answered that this wished they very gladly that all
chil qui gaignier voloient i alaissent. Adonc si i ala
those who to-gain wished there should-go Then so there went
bien le moitié de chiax de l'ost avec Alexe, et l'autre
well the half of those of the-host with Alexius and the-other
moitié remest en Coustantinoble pour rechevoir le paiement,
half remained in Constantinople for to-receive the payment
et Kyrsaacs remest pour faire le paiement as barons.
and Kyrsac remained for to-make the payment to-the barons
Et Alexes s'en ala a toute l'ost et conquist de le
And Alexius himself-thence went with all the-host and conquered of the

tere bien vint chités et bien quarante castiax ou plus; et
land well twenty cities and well forty castles or more and
Alexes, li autres empereres, ses oncles, s'en fuioit tous
Alexius the other emperor his uncle himself-thence fled all
dis avant, et furent bien li Franchois avec Alexe largement
days ahead and were well the French with Alexius fully
trois mois. Et entrementiers que Alexes fist chele chevauchie,
three months And meanwhile that Alexius made that expedition
firent chil de Coustantinoble leur mur refaire plus fort et
had those of Constantinople their wall remade more strong and
plus haut qu'il n'estoit devant, que li Franchois avoient fait
more high than-it was before whereof the French had had
abatre bien chinquante toises quant il eurent le vile prise,
thrown-down well fifty fathoms when they had the town taken
pour chou que il doutoient que li Griu ne revelaissent
for this that they feared that the Greeks — should-rebel
encontre aus. Et quant li baron qui estoit demoré pour
against them And when the barons who were remained for
le paiement rechevoir virent que Kyrsaacs ne leur paioit
the payment to-receive saw that Kyrsac not to-them paid
nient, si manderent as autres barons, qui estoient alé
at-all so sent-word to-the other barons who were gone
avec Alexe, qu'il s'en revenissent, que Kyrsaacs ne
with Alexius that-they themselves-thence should-come-back for Kyrsac not
les paioit nient, et qu'il s'en fussent tout venu
them paid at-all and that-they themselves-thence should-be all come
dedens le feste Tous Sains. Quant li baron oïrent chou, si
within the feast (of-)All Saints When the barons heard this so
disent a l'empereur qu'il s'en retorneroient; quant li
said to the-emperor that-they themselves-thence would-return when the
empereres oï chou, si dist qu'il s'en retorneroit puis
emperor heard this so said that-he himself-thence would-return since

qu'il s'en retornoient, car il ne s'osoit mie fier en
that-they themselves-thence returned for he not himself-dared at-all trust in
ches Grius. Si s'en revinrent arriere en Coustantinoble;
these Greeks So themselves-thence came-back back into Constantinople
si s'en ala li empereres en sen pailais, et li pelerin
so himself-thence went the emperor into his palace and the pilgrims
s'en alerent a leur herberges outre le port.
themselves-thence went to their lodgings beyond the port
Aprés si s'asanlerent li conte et li haut homme et 58
Afterward so themselves-assembled the counts and the high men and
li dux de Venice et li empereres ensanle. Si demanderent
the doge of Venice and the emperor together So asked
li Franchois leur paiement a l'empereur, et li empereres
the French their payment of the-emperor and the emperor
respondi qu'il avoit si se chité raience et ses gens qu'il
answered that-he had so his city ransomed and his people that-he
ne leur avoit que paier, mais dounaissent lui un terme, et
not to-them had what to-pay but they-should-give him a term and
par dedens il se pourvesroit qu'il les paieroit. Il li
by within he himself would-provide that-he them would-pay They to-him
dounerent, et quant li termes fu passés, il ne les paia
gave and when the term was passed he not them paid
nient, et li baron redemanderent de rekief leur paiement. Et
at-all and the barons asked-again of anew their payment And
li empereres redemanda encore un respit, et on li donna.
the emperor asked-again yet a respite and one to-him gave
Et par dedens si homme et ses gens et chis Morchofles
And by within his men and his people and this Murzuphlus
qu'il avoit jeté de prison vinrent a lui et se li disent:
whom-he had cast from prison came to him and so to-him said
«Ha! sire, vous leur avés trop paié, ne leur paiés plus!
Ah lord you to-them have too-much paid not to-them pay more

Vous estes tous raiens, tant leur avés vous paié! Mais
You are all ransomed so-much to-them have you paid But
faites les ent aler et si les congeés hors de vo tere.»
have them thence go and so them dismiss out of your land
Et Alexes si creï chu consel, si ne leur vaut nient paier.
And Alexius so believed this counsel so not them wished at-all to-pay
Quant chus respis fu passés et li Franchois virrent que li
When this respite was passed and the French saw that the
empereres ne les paioit nient, si s'asanlerent tout li conte
emperor not them paid at-all so themselves-assembled all the counts
et li haut homme de l'ost, si s'en alerent u palais
and the high men of the-host so themselves-thence went to-the palace
l'empereur et demanderent de rekief leur paiement. Et li
(of-)the-emperor and asked of anew their payment And the
empereres leur respondi qu'il ne les pooit paier en nule
emperor to-them answered that-he not them could pay in any
fin, et li baron li respondirent que, s'il ne les paioit,
end and the barons to-him answered that if-he not them paid
il pourcacheroient tant du sien qu'il seroient paié.
they would-procure so-much of-the his that-they would-be paid

The Fireships

XVIII

Two knights demand the payment and are told to leave the land. The doge meets Alexius at the harbor and defies him: they took him out of the dung and will put him back in it. Twice the Greeks send burning ships against the fleet, and the Venetians turn them away, losing only a merchant ship; food is dear in the camp. The Greeks build wooden towers on their stone ones, and Murzuphlus promises the traitors to rid them of the French and the emperor within eight days in return for the crown.

A ches paroles se partirent li baron du palais 59
At these words themselves departed the barons from-the palace
et s'en revinrent a leur herberges, et quant il
and themselves-thence came-back to their lodgings and when they
furent revenu, si prisent consel ensanle qu'il feroient, tant
were returned so took counsel together what-they would-do so-far
qu'il renvoierent a l'empereur deus chevaliers, et se lui
that-they sent-again to the-emperor two knights and so to-him
manderent de rekief qu'il leur envoiast leur paiement. Et il
sent-word of anew that-he to-them should-send their payment And he
respondi as messages qu'il ne les paieroit nient, qu'il leur
answered to-the messengers that-he not them would-pay at-all for-he to-them
avoit trop paié et qu'il ne les doutoit nule creature; ains
had too-much paid and that-he not them feared any creature but
leur manda qu'il s'en alaissent et widaissent se
to-them sent-word that-they themselves-thence should-go and should-quit his
tere, et bien seussent il que, s'il ne le widoient auques
land and well should-know they that if-they not it quit somewhat
par tans, qu'il leur feroit anui. A tant li message
in time that-he to-them would-do harm With that the messengers
s'en revinrent et fisent savoir as barons chou que li
themselves-thence came-back and made known to-the barons this that the

empereres avoit respondu. Li baron, quant il oïrent chou,
emperor had answered The barons when they heard this
si se conseillierent qu'il feroient, tant que li dux de
so themselves counseled what-they would-do so-far that the doge of
Venice dist qu'il voloit aler parler a lui. Si prist un message,
Venice said that-he wished to-go to-speak to him So took a messenger
se li manda qu'il venist a lui parler seur le port. Et
so to-him sent-word that-he should-come to him to-speak on the port And
li empereres i vint a cheval; et li dux fist armer quatre
the emperor there came on horse and the doge had armed four
galies, si s'en entra en l'une, et les trois fist aler avec
galleys so himself-thence entered into the-one and the three had go with
lui pour li warder; et quant il vint vers le rive du port,
him for him to-guard and when he came toward the bank of-the port
si vit l'empereur qui i estoit venus a cheval, si parla a lui
so saw the-emperor who there was come on horse so spoke to him
et se li dist: «Alexe, que cuides tu faire?» fist li dux,
and so to-him said Alexius what thinkest thou to-do said the doge
«preng warde que nous t'avons geté de grant caitiveté, si
take heed that we thee-have cast from great wretchedness so
t'avons fait seigneur et coroné a empereur; ne nous tenras
thee-have made lord and crowned as emperor not to-us wilt-keep
tu mie» fist li dux, «nos convenenches, ne si n'en feras
thou at-all said the doge our covenants nor so not-thereof wilt-do
plus? — Naie», fist li empereres, «je n'en ferai plus que
more No said the emperor I not-thereof will-do more than
fait en ai! — Non?» dist li dux, «garchons malvais; nous
done thereof have No said the doge knave wicked we
t'avons», fist li dux, «geté de le merde et en le merde
thee-have said the doge cast from the dung and into the dung

te remeterons; et je te desfi et bien saches tu que je
thee will-put-back and I thee defy and well know thou that I
te pourcacherai mal a men pooir de ches pas en avant.»
for-thee will-procure evil to my power from these steps on forward
A ches paroles s'en parti li dux et s'en revint 60
At these words himself-thence departed the doge and himself-thence came-back
arriere. Si s'asanlerent li conte et tout li haut homme de
back So themselves-assembled the counts and all the high men of
l'ost et li Venicien pour prendre consel que il feroient; et
the-host and the Venetians for to-take counsel what they would-do and
disent li Venicien qu'il ne pooient mie faire leur eschieles
said the Venetians that-they not could at-all make their ladders
ne leur engiens seur leur nes pour le tans qui trop estoit
nor their engines on their ships for the weather which too was
fres; si estoit le saisons entre feste Tous Sains et Noel.
cold so was the season between feast (of-)All Saints and Christmas
Entrementiers qu'il estoient illueques si esmari, si ne fait
Meanwhile that-they were there so dismayed so not does
mais el li empereres et si traïteur qui entour li estoient,
more else the emperor and his traitors who around him were
si se pourpenserent d'une grant traïson, qu'il voloient
so themselves bethought of-a great treason that-they wished
*** il prendre en le chité par nuit nes; si les font il
(lacuna) they take in the city by night ships so them have they
toutes emplir de bien seske legnne et de lardons dedens
all filled with very dry wood and with bacon within
le legnne; si font il bouter le fu ens. Quant che vint
the wood so have they set the fire in When this came
vers mie nuit et les nes furent bien esprises, si ventoit
toward mid night and the ships were well afire so it-blew
mout durement, si laissent li Griu illueques ches nes toutes
very hard so let the Greeks there these ships all

ardans pour ardoir le navie as Franchois, et li vens les
burning for to-burn the navy of-the French and the wind them
acachoit grant aleure vers le navie. Quant s'aperchoivent
drove great pace toward the navy When themselves-perceive
li Venicien, si salent sus, si entrerent en barges et en
the Venetians so leap up so entered into barges and into
galies, si fisent tant que onques le grace Dieu leur navies
galleys so did so-much that ever the grace (of-)God their navy
n'en eut garde. Ne demora mie aprés plus de quinze
not-thereof had fear Not delayed at-all afterward more than fifteen
jours que li Griu refisent autretel; et quant li Venicien les
days that the Greeks did-again the-same and when the Venetians them
raperchurent, si ralerent encontre et deffendirent molt bien
perceived-again so went-again against and defended very well
leur navie de chu fu, si que onques le grace Dieu n'en
their navy from this fire so that ever the grace (of-)God not-thereof
eurent warde, fors une nes markaande qui lueques estoit
had fear except a ship merchant which there was
venue: chele fu arse. Et le kiertés estoit si grans en l'ost
come that was burned And the dearth was so great in the-host
que on i vendoit un sestier de vin .xij. saus, .xiiij. saus,
that one there sold a setier of wine twelve sous fourteen sous
.xv. saus tele eure fu, et une geline .xx. saus, et un oef.
fifteen sous such hour was and a hen twenty sous and an egg
.ij. deniers; mais du bescuit n'i avoit il mie tele kierté,
two pence but of-the biscuit not-there had it at-all such dearth
ains en avoient auques a leur ost maintenir une pieche.
but thereof they-had somewhat to their host maintain a while
61 Entrementiers qu'il sejornoient illuec l'iver, si se
Meanwhile that-they sojourned there the-winter so themselves
warnirent molt bien chil de le chité et fisent leur mur
furnished very well those of the city and had their wall

rehauchier et leur tours, et fisent faire par deseure les tors
raised-higher and their towers and had made right above the towers
de pierre boines tors de fust, et fisent ches tors de fust bien
of stone good towers of wood and had these towers of wood well
hourder par dehors de boines ais, et bien couvrir par deseure
timbered on outside with good planks and well covered right above
de boins cuirs, si qu'il n'eussent warde des esquieles des
with good hides so that-they not-should-have fear of-the ladders of-the
nes as Veniciens; et avoient bien li mur soisante piés de haut
ships of-the Venetians and had well the walls sixty feet of height
et les tors chent. Et fisent bien quarante perrieres rengier par
and the towers hundred And had well forty petraries ranged by
dedens le chité de kief en kief les murs, en chel endroit
within the city from end to end (of-)the walls in that place
ou on cuidoit que on assausit, et ne fu mie merveille se
where one thought that one would-assail and not was at-all wonder if
il fisent chou, car molt en eurent grant loisir. Entre ches
they did this for much thereof they-had great leisure Between these
entrefaites li Griu, li traïtre l'empereeur et Morchofles que
doings the Greeks the traitors (of-)the-emperor and Murzuphlus whom
li empereres avoit geté de prison, s'asanlerent un jor et
the emperor had cast from prison themselves-assembled one day and
pourparlerent une grant traïson, qu'il voloient autre empereur
plotted a great treason that-they wished other emperor
de chelui faire, qui les delivrast des Franchois, car
of him to-make who them should-deliver from-the French for
Alexes ne leur sanloit mie boins; tant que Morchofles dist:
Alexius not to-them seemed at-all good so-far that Murzuphlus said
«Se vous me voliés», fist il, «croire, et vous me voliés faire
If you me wished said he to-believe and you me wished to-make
empereur, je vous deliverroie si bien des Franchois et de
emperor I you would-deliver so well from-the French and from

l'empereur que jamais warde n'en ariés.» Et il disent
the-emperor that ever fear not-thereof you-would-have And they said
que s'il les en pooit delivrer, qu'il le feroient empereur,
that if-he them thereof could deliver that-they him would-make emperor
et Morchofles leur creanta qu'il les en deliverroit dedens
and Murzuphlus to-them promised that-he them thereof would-deliver within
uit jours; et il li otriierent qu'il le feroient empereeur.
eight days and they to-him granted that-they him would-make emperor

Murzuphlus

XIX

Murzuphlus has Alexius and his father strangled and is crowned. Ordered out of his land, the barons defy him for murdering his lord, and he strengthens his walls. John the Vlach, who left the court when a eunuch whipped his face, offers a hundred thousand men if the barons will crown him king; Robert describes his Cumans, who neither plow nor sow. The barons scorn him, which he makes them pay for dearly, and the pope has him crowned.

62 Adont ala Morchofles, ne s'evlia mie; si prist serjans avec
Then went Murzuphlus not himself-forgot at-all so took sergeants with
lui; si s'en entra par nuit en le cambre ou ses sires li
him so himself-thence entered by night into the chamber where his lord the
empereres, qui le geta de prison, se dormoit, si li fist
emperor who him cast from prison himself slept so on-him had
lachier une corde u col, si le fist estranler et sen pere
laced a cord on-the neck so him had strangled and his father
Kyrsaac ausi. Quant il eut chou fait, si vint ariere a chiaus
Kyrsac also When he had this done so came back to those
qui le devoient faire empereur, si leur dist; et chil alerent,
who him were-to make emperor so to-them said and those went

si le coronerent et s'en fisent empereur. Quant Morchofles
so him crowned and so-thereof made emperor When Murzuphlus
fu empereres, si s'en ala le nouvele par le chité: «K'est,
was emperor so itself-thence went the news through the city What-is
que n'est, par foi! Morchofles est empereres, s'a sen seigneur
what not-is by faith Murzuphlus is emperor so-has his lord
mordri.» Aprés on traist de le chité unes letres en l'ost
murdered Afterward one shot from the city some letters into the-host
as pelerins, qui disoient que Morchofles avoit ensi ouvré.
of-the pilgrims which said that Murzuphlus had thus wrought
Quant li baron le seurent, si dist aucuns que dehait eust
When the barons it knew so said some that ill-luck should-have
qui en caloit de chou que Alexes estoit mors, pour chou
who thereof cared of this that Alexius was dead for this
qu'il ne vaut les couvenenches as pelerins tenir. Li autre
that-he not wished the covenants to-the pilgrims to-keep The others
disent qu'il leur en pesoit qu'il avoit esté si faitement
said that-it to-them thereof weighed that-he had been in-such wise
mors. Aprés ne demora mie graument quant Morchofles
killed Afterward not delayed at-all greatly when Murzuphlus
manda au conte de Flandres, au conte Loeis, au marchis
sent-word to-the count of Flanders to-the count Louis to-the marquis
et a tous les autres haus barons, qu'il s'en alaissent
and to all the other high barons that-they themselves-thence should-go
et que il widaissent se tere, et que bien seussent il qu'il
and that they should-quit his land and that well should-know they that-he
estoit empereres et que s'il les i ataingnoit dedens uit
was emperor and that if-he them there overtook within eight
jours, qu'il les ochirroit tous. Quant li baron oïrent chou
days that-he them would-kill all When the barons heard this
que Morchofles leur avoit mandé, si respondirent: «Qui?»
that Murzuphlus to-them had sent-word so answered What

fisent il, «chis qui sen seigneur a mordri par nuit en
said they this-one who his lord has murdered by night in
traïson si nous a mandé chou?» Se li manderent ariere
treason so to-us has sent-word this So to-him sent-word back
que ore le desfioient il et qu'il se gardast d'aus,
that now him defied they and that-he himself should-guard from-them
et que il n'en partiroient du siege, s'aroient
and that they not-thence would-depart from-the siege till-they-would-have
chelui vengié que il avoit mordri et si raroient pris
him avenged whom he had murdered and so would-have-again taken
autre fois Coustantinoble et si raroient tout pleinement
other time Constantinople and so would-have-again all fully
les convenenches que Alexes leur avoit en convent.
the covenants that Alexius to-them had in covenant

63 Quant Morchofles oï chou, si kemanda que on wardast
When Murzuphlus heard this so commanded that one should-guard
molt bien les murs et les tours et les hordast on, si
very well the walls and the towers and them should-timber one so
que il n'eussent garde des assaus as Franchois; et il
that they not-should-have fear of-the assaults of-the French and they
si fisent molt bien, si que li mur et les tours furent
so did very well so that the walls and the towers were
plus fors et plus desfensauvles que devant.
more strong and more defensible than before

64 Il avint aprés, en chu tempore que Morchofles li traïtres fu
It happened afterward in this time that Murzuphlus the traitor was
empereres et que l'os des Franchois estoit si povre com jou
emperor and that the-host of-the French was so poor as I
vous ai par devant dit, et qu'il ratornoient durement leur
to-you have just before said and that-they re-equipped hard their
nes et leur engiens pour assalir, que Jehans li Blakis manda
ships and their engines for to-assail that John the Vlach sent-word

as haus barons de l'ost que se il le voloient coroner a
to-the high barons of the-host that if they him wished to-crown as
roi a estre sires de se tere de Blakie, que il tenroit se tere
king to be lord of his land of Wallachia that he would-hold his land
et sen roiaume d'aus, et qu'il venroit en leur aiwe pour
and his kingdom of-them and that-he would-come in their aid for
aidier a prendre Coustantinoble a tout .c.m. hommes
to-help to take Constantinople with all hundred-thousand men
a armes. Or est Blakie une tere qui est du demaine
at arms Now is Wallachia a land which is of-the domain
l'empereur, et estoit chus Jehans uns serjans l'empereur qui
(of-)the-emperor and was this John a sergeant (of-)the-emperor who
wardoit une huiriere l'empereeur; si que quant li empereres
guarded a stud (of-)the-emperor so that when the emperor
mandoit soisante chevaus ou chent, que chis Jehans li
sent-for sixty horses or hundred that this John to-him
envoioit et venoit a court cascun an devant chou qu'il fust
sent and came to court each year before this that-he was
par mal de le court, et tant qu'il i vint a un jour et
on ill with the court and so-far that-he there came on a day and
que uns escouillés, uns des uissiers l'empereur, li fist un
that a eunuch one of-the ushers (of-)the-emperor to-him did a
lait fait, qu'il le feri d'unes corgies par mi le vissage,
foul deed for-he him struck with-a whip through the-midst-of the face
dont il eut molt grant duel. Et pour chu lait fait que on
whereof he had very great grief And for this foul deed that one
li fist, si s'en parti Jehans li Blakis par mautalent
to-him did so himself-thence departed John the Vlach in anger
de le court, et s'en rala en Blakie. Si est Blakie
from the court and himself-thence went-back into Wallachia So is Wallachia

une molt fort tere qui toute est enclose d'unes montaingnes,
a very strong land which all is enclosed by-some mountains
si que on n'i puet entrer ne issir fors par un destroit.
so that one not-there can enter nor go-out except by a pass
65 Quant Jehans fu venus, si commenche a atraire les haus
When John was come so begins to attract the high
homes de Blakie, comme chis qui estoit rikes hons et qui
men of Wallachia as one who was rich man and who
auques pooir i avoit, si leur commenche a prumetre et
somewhat power there had so to-them begins to promise and
a douner et as uns et as autres, et fist tant que
to give both to-the ones and to-the others and did so-much that
tout chil du païs furent tot subjet a lui, et tant que
all those of-the country were all subject to him and so-far that
il fu sires d'aus. Quant il fu sires d'aus, si traist il as
he was lord of-them When he was lord of-them so drew he to-the
Commains, si fait il tant, que par un que par el, qu'il fu
Cumans so does he so-much that by one or by else that-he was
leur amis et que il furent tot en s'aiwe et que il fu ansi
their friend and that they were all in his-aid and that he was as
comme tous sires d'aus. Or est Commaine une tere qui
it-were all lord of-them Now is Cumania a land which
marchist a Blakie; si vous dirai quel gent chil Commain
borders on Wallachia so to-you I-will-tell what people those Cumans
sont. Che sont une gent sauvage qui ne erent ne ne
are These are a people savage who not plow nor not
semment, ne n'ont borde ne maison, ains ont unes tentes
sow nor not-have but nor house but have some tents
de feutre, uns habitacles ou il se muchent, et se
of felt some dwellings where they themselves hide and themselves
vivent de lait et de formage et de char. Si y a en
live on milk and on cheese and on flesh So there has in

esté tant de mouskes et de mouskerons que il n'osent
summer so-many of flies and of gnats that they not-dare
issir hors de leur tentes waire preu devant en l'iver. En
go-out out of their tents much at-all before in the-winter In
yver si issent hors de leur tentes et de leur païs, quant
winter so go-out out of their tents and of their country when
il voellent faire leur chevauchie. Si vous dirons que il
they wish to-make their raid So to-you we-will-tell what they
font. Cascuns d'aus a bien dis chevax ou douze; si les ont
do Each of-them has well ten horses or twelve so them have
si duis qu'il les sivent partout la ou il les voellent
so trained that-they them follow everywhere there where they them wish
mener, si montent puis seur l'un et puis seur l'autre. Si
to-lead so mount then on the-one and then on the-other So
a cascuns des chevax, quant il oirrent, un sakelet pendu
has each of-the horses when they journey a little-sack hung
au musel la ou se viande est; si menjue si comme il
at-the muzzle there where its fodder is so eats so as it
siut sen maistre, ne ne cessent d'esrer et par nuit et
follows its master nor not cease of-journeying both by night and
par jour. Si vont si durement que il vont bien en une
by day So go so hard that they go well in one
nuit et en un jor sis journees ou set ou uit d'esrure.
night and in one day six days or seven or eight of-journeying
Ne ja tant comme il vont, riens ne carkeront ne ne
Nor ever so-long as they go anything not will-load nor not
prenderont devant au repairier; mais quant il repairent,
will-take before at-the returning but when they return
dont si acuellent proies, si prennent hommes, si prenent
then so seize booty so take men so take
chou qu'il pueent ataindre; ne ja n'iront autrement armé
this that-they can reach nor ever not-will-go otherwise armed

fors qu'il ont unes vesteures de piax de mouton et
except that-they have some garments of skins of sheep and
portent ars et saietes avec aus; ne ne croient autrement
bear bows and arrows with them nor not believe otherwise
fors en le premiere beste qu'il encontrent le matinee, et
except in the first beast that-they meet the morning and
chis qu'il l'encontre, si i croit toute jour quele beste che
he who it-meets so in-it believes all day whatever beast it
soit. Ichés Commains avoit Jehans li Blakis en s'aiwe et
be These Cumans had John the Vlach in his-aid and
venoit cascun an preer le tere l'empereur dusk' a meesme
came each year to-plunder the land (of-)the-emperor as-far to hand
de Coustantinoble, ne n'avoit li empereres tant de pooir
of Constantinople nor not-had the emperor so-much of power
qu'il s'en peust deffendre. Quant li baron de l'ost
that-he himself-therefrom could defend When the barons of the-host
seurent chou que Jehans li Blakis leur mandoit, si disent
knew this that John the Vlach to-them sent-word so said
qu'il s'en conselleroient; et quant il se furent
that-they themselves-thereof would-counsel and when they themselves were
consellié, si eurent malvais consel, si respondirent que ne
counseled so had bad counsel so answered that neither
de lui ne de s'aiwe n'avoient il cure, mais bien seust il
of him nor of his-aid not-had they care but well should-know he
que il le greveroient et que il mal li feroient s'il
that they him would-harm and that they evil to-him would-do if-they
pooient, et il leur vendi puis molt kier. Che fu molt
could and he to-them sold then very dear This was very
grand deus et molt grans damages. Et quant il eut fali a
great grief and very great harm And when he had failed with

aus, si envoia a Rome pour se corone, et li apostoiles y
them so sent to Rome for his crown and the pope there
envoia un cardounal pour lui coroner: si fu coronés a roi.
sent a cardinal for him to-crown so was crowned as king

Philea and the Icon

XX

Henry of Flanders raids the rich city of Philea with thirty knights. Murzuphlus ambushes him on the way back, carrying the icon of Our Lady whose bearer, the Greeks believe, cannot be defeated, but the French rout him, taking the icon, the ensign, and his imperial hat. The icon is promised to Cîteaux. When Murzuphlus claims a victory, the French row icon and ensign along the walls, and the shamed emperor vows revenge.

Or vous dirons d'une autre aventure qu'il avint a mon 66
Now to-you we-will-tell of-an other adventure that-it happened to my
seigneur Henri, le frere le conte de Flandres. Entre ches
lord Henry the brother (of-)the count of Flanders Between these
entrefaites que li Franchois avoient assis Coustantinoble, il
doings that the French had besieged Constantinople it
avint que mesires Henris, et il et chil de se compaingnie,
happened that my-lord Henry both he and those of his company
n'estoient mie molt rike, ains avoient bien mestier et de
not-were at-all very rich but had well need both of
viandes et d'autres coses, tant que on endita une chité,
victuals and of-other things so-far that one pointed-out a city
la Filee avoit a non, a dis liwes loins de l'ost. Ichele
the Philea had as name at ten leagues far from the-host That
chités estoit molt rike et molt plentive; si ne fist mais
city was very rich and very plentiful so not did more

el mesires Henri, si atorna son oirre et s'en parti
else my-lord Henry so prepared his journey and himself-thence departed
de l'ost a chelee par nuit, li trentisme de chevaliers et
from the-host in secret by night the thirtieth of knights and
assés serjans a cheval avec lui, que waires de gens ne
plenty sergeants on horse with him so-that much of people not
le seurent. Quant il vint a le chité, si fist sen fait, si i
it knew When he came to the city so did his deed so there
sejorna un jor; et entrementiers que il i ala, si fu espiés
sojourned one day and meanwhile that he there went so was spied
et endités a Morchofle. Quant Morchofles le seut, si fist
and pointed-out to Murzuphlus When Murzuphlus it knew so had
monter bien dusques a .iiij.m. hommes a armes, et fist
mount well as-far to four-thousand men at arms and had
porter l'ansconne avec lui, un ymage de Nostre Dame que
carried the-icon with him an image of Our Lady that
li Griu apeloient ensi, que li empereeur portent avec aus
the Greeks called thus which the emperors carry with them
quant il vont en bataille; et si grant fianche ont en chel
when they go into battle and so great trust have in that
ansconne que il croient bien que nus qui le port en
icon that they believe well that anyone who it carries in
batalle ne puet estre desfis, et pour chou que Morchofles
battle not can be defeated and for this that Murzuphlus
ne le portoit mie a droit, creons nous qu'il fu desconfis.
not it carried at-all by right believe we that-he was routed
Et li Franchois avoient ja leur gaaing envoié a l'ost;
And the French had already their gain sent to the-host
si les waita Morchofles au repairier, et quand il vint
so them watched-for Murzuphlus at-the returning and when he came
a une liwe pres de nos gens, si mist ses gens en await
at a league near of our people so put his people in ambush

et fist ses embuskemens et nos gens n'en seurent mot,
and made his ambushes and our people not-thereof knew word
si s'en revenoient durement ne ne seurent mot de
so themselves-thence came-back hard nor not knew word of
chel await. Quant li Griu les virent, si s'escrierent, et
that ambush When the Greeks them saw so cried-out and
nos Franchois se regarderent. Quant il les virrent, si
our French themselves looked-round When they them saw so
eurent molt grant peur, et molt commenchierent a reclamer
had very great fear and much began to call-upon
Damedieu et Nostre Dame, et furent si esmari qu'il ne
Lord-God and Our Lady and were so dismayed that-they not
se seurent consellier, et tant qu'il disent entr'aus:
themselves knew-how-to counsel and so-far that-they said among-themselves
«Par foi! se nous fuions, nous sommes tout mort; miex
By faith if we flee we are all dead better
nous vient morir en desfendant que en fuiant.» Adont si
to-us comes to-die in defending than in fleeing Then so
s'aresterent tout coi; et prisent entour uit arbalestiers que
themselves-halted all still and took about eight crossbowmen that
il avoient, si les misent devant aus; et li empereres
they had so them put before them and the emperor
Morchofles li traïtres et li Griu leur vienent molt tres
Murzuphlus the traitor and the Greeks at-them come very very
grant aleure, si se fierent en aus mout radement, mais
great pace so themselves strike into them very swiftly but
onques nul des Franchois, le merchi Dieu, ne misent a
ever anyone of-the French the mercy (of-)God not they-put on
pié. Quant li Franchois virent que li Grieu leur couroient
foot When the French saw that the Greeks on-them ran
si sus de toutes pars, si laissierent les lanches caïr jus, si
so upon from all sides so let the lances fall down so

traient coustiaus et misericordes qu'il avoient, si s'acueillent
draw knives and daggers that-they had so themselves-set
a desfendre molt vigeureusement, si en ochient mout.
to defend very vigorously so of-them kill many
Quant li Griu virent que li Franchois les desconfissoient
When the Greeks saw that the French them routed
si, si se commenchent il a esmaier, si tornent il
so so themselves begin they to dismay so turn they
en fuies. Et nos Franchois les acueillent, si en ochisent
in flight And our French them set-upon so of-them killed
molt, et molt en retinrent et mout y waaingnierent; et
many and many of-them kept and much there gained and
cachierent l'empereur Morchofle largement demie liwe, qu'il
chased the-emperor Murzuphlus fully half league for-they
le cuidoient tous dis prendre, et si le hasterent et lui et
him thought all days to-take and so him pressed both him and
chiaus de se compaingnie que il laierent caïr l'ansconne et
those of his company that they let fall the-icon and
sen capel emperial et l'ensengne et l'ansconne, qui toute
his hat imperial and the-ensign and the-icon which all
estoit d'or et toute carkie de rikes pierres precieuses, et
was of-gold and all laden with rich stones precious and
estoit si bele et si rike que onques si bele ne si rike ne fu
was so fair and so rich that ever so fair nor so rich not was
veue. Quant li Franchois le virent, si laiserent leur cache,
seen When the French it saw so left-off their chase
si furent molt lié durement, si prisent l'image, si l'en
so were very glad greatly so took the-image so it-thence
aporterent a molt grant goie et molt grant feste. Et
brought with very great joy and very great feast And
endementiers qu'il se conbatoient, virrent nouveles a
meanwhile that-they themselves fought came news to

l'ost qu'il estoient encontre des Grieus; et quant chil de
the-host that-they were encountered by-the Greeks and when those of
l'ost oïrent les nouveles, si s'armerent et poinsent encontre
the-host heard the news so themselves-armed and spurred to-meet
seigneur Henri pour lui secorre. Et quant il vinrent la, si
lord Henry for him to-succor And when they came there so
s'en estoient ja li Grieu fui, et nos Franchois en
themselves-thence were already the Greeks fled and our French thence
amenoient leur waaing, et l'ansconne en aportoient, qui si
were-bringing their gain and the-icon thence carried which so
estoit bele et rike com je vous ai dit; et quant il vinrent
was fair and rich as I to-you have said and when they came
pres de l'ost, si alerent li vesque et li clerc, qui en l'ost
near of the-host so went the bishops and the clerks who in the-host
estoient, a pourcession encontre aus, et rechurent l'ansconne
were in procession to-meet them and received the-icon
a grant goie et a grant feste, et le balla on au
with great joy and with great feast and it delivered one to-the
vesque de Troies; si l'emporta li vesques en l'ost, a une
bishop of Troyes so it-carried-off the bishop in the-host to a
eglise ou il repairoient, et canterent li vesque, et fisent
church where they resorted and sang the bishops and made
ent molt grant feste, et tres chu jour qu'ele fu conquise,
thereof very great feast and from this day that-it was won
otrierent tout li baron que ele seroit donnée a Chistiax,
granted all the barons that it would-be given to Cîteaux
et puis i fu ele portee. Et quant Morchofles vint ariere
and then there was it carried And when Murzuphlus came back
en Coustantinoble, si fist acroire qu'il avoit desbareté et
into Constantinople so made believe that-he had worsted and
desconfit seigneur Henri et se gent, et demandoient aucun
routed lord Henry and his people and asked some

des Grius tot belement: «Ou est l'ansconne et l'enseingne?»
of-the Greeks all quietly Where is the-icon and the-ensign
Et li autre disoient que on avoit tout mis en sauf. Tant
And the others said that one had all put in safety So-far
alerent ches nouveles amont et aval que li Franchois seurent
went these news up and down that the French knew
k'ensi faitement avoit fait Morchofles acroire qu'il avoit les
that-thus wise had made Murzuphlus believe that-he had the
Franchois desconfis; et li Franchois ne fisent mais el, si font
French routed and the French not did more else so have
il armer une galie et fisent prendre l'ansconne et lever
they armed a galley and had taken the-icon and raised
bien haut en le galie, et l'enseingne de l'empire, et fisent
well high in the galley and the-ensign of the-empire and had
nagier chele galie a tout l'ansconne et a tout l'enseingne
rowed that galley with all the-icon and with all the-ensign
de kief en kief les murs, si que chil qui a murs estoient
from end to end (of-)the walls so that those who on walls were
et molt de gent de le chité le virent et le connurent
and many of people of the city it saw and it knew
bien que ch'estoit l'enseingne et l'ansconne l'empereur.
well that this-was the-ensign and the-icon (of-)the-emperor
67 Quant li Griu virent chou, si vienent a Morchofle, si
When the Greeks saw this so come to Murzuphlus so
l'acueillent mout a hounir et a blasmer de chou qu'il avoit
him-set-about much to shame and to blame of this that-he had
l'enseingne de l'empire et l'ansconne perdue et de chou qu'i
the-ensign of the-empire and the-icon lost and of this that-he
leur avoit fait acroire qu'il avoit les Franchois desconfis; et
to-them had made believe that-he had the French routed and
quant Morchofles oï chou, si se rescoust le plus belement
when Murzuphlus heard this so himself excused the most handsomely

qu'il peut, si commencha a dire: «Or ne vous esmaiés mie,
that-he could so began to say Now not yourselves dismay at-all
car je leur vendrai molt kier et molt bien me vengerai d'aus!»
for I to-them will-sell very dear and very well myself will-avenge of-them

The Pact and the First Assault

XXI

The French and the Venetians agree that ten electors from each side will choose an emperor, who will hold a quarter of the empire, and they swear to bring all booty to the common store and to spare women and churches. After Christmas they rebuild their bridges and cover the ships against the petraries. Ten days before Palm Sunday they assault, but stones smash their engines, and the Greeks bare their backsides on the walls while Murzuphlus boasts.

Aprés avint que tout li Franchois et tot li Venicien 68
Afterward happened that all the French and all the Venetians
s'asanlerent pour prendre consel entr'aus, comment il
themselves-assembled for to-take counsel among-themselves how they
ouverroient et que il feroient, et de qui il porroient
would-work and what they would-do and of whom they could
faire empereur, s'il avoient le chité prise, tant qu'il
make emperor if-they had the city taken so-far that-they
esgarderent entr'aus que on prendroit dis Franchois des
decided among-themselves that one would-take ten French of-the
plus preudommes de l'ost et dis Venicien ensement des
most worthy-men of the-host and ten Venetians likewise of-the
plus preudommes que on i saroit; et chou que chil vint
most worthy-men that one there would-know and this that those twenty
en atierroient seroit tenu, et par si que se li empereres
thereof would-arrange would-be held and on such that if the emperor

estoit des Franchois que li patriarcles seroit des Veniciens.
were of-the French that the patriarch would-be of-the Venetians
Et atira on que chis qui seroit empereres aroit le
And arranged one that he who would-be emperor would-have the
quarte partie de l'empire et le quarte part de la cité en
fourth part of the-empire and the fourth part of the city in
sen demaine et les autres trois parties partiroit on si que
his domain and the other three parts would-divide one so that
li Venicien en aroient le moitié et li pelerin l'autre, et
the Venetians thereof would-have the half and the pilgrims the-other and
tout tenroit on de l'empereur. Quant il eurent tout chou
all would-hold one of the-emperor When they had all this
atiré, aprés si fist on jurer seur sains a tous chiaus de
arranged afterward so had one swear on relics to all those of
l'ost que les waains d'or et d'argent et de nuef drap, a le
the-host that the gains of-gold and of-silver and of new cloth at the
vaillanche de chinc sols et de plus, aporteroient tout a l'ost
value of five sous and of more they-would-bring all to the-host
a droite partie hors euxtius et viande, et que il a femme
to rightful division except stores and victuals and that they to woman
forche ne feroient ne ne despoullieroient de drap que ele
force not would-do nor not would-strip of cloth that she
eust vestu, car qui en esteroit atains il seroit destruis. Et
had worn for who thereof would-be convicted he would-be destroyed And
se leur fist on jurer seur sains que il main ne meteroient
so them had one swear on relics that they hand not would-put
seur moine, ne seur clerc, ne seur prestre, s'il n'estoit en
on monk nor on clerk nor on priest if-he not-were in
desfense, ne qu'il ne froisseroient eglise ne moustier.
defense nor that-they not would-break church nor minster

Aprés, quant tout chou fu fait, si fu li Noeux passés, si 69
Afterward when all this was done so was the Christmas passed so
fu pres de l'entree du Quaresme, et li Venicien et li
it-was near of the-entrance of-the Lent and the Venetians and the
Franchois se rapareillierent et ratornerent leur nes; si
French themselves prepared-again and re-equipped their ships so
fisent le Venicien refaire les pons de leur nes, et li Franchois
had the Venetians remade the bridges of their ships and the French
fisent faire uns autres engiens que on apeloit cas et carchloies
had made some other engines that one called cats and hurdles
et truis pour miner as murs; et prisent li Venicien
and sows for to-mine at-the walls and took the Venetians
marien de maisons, s'en couvrirent leur nes, si qu'il
timber of houses so-therewith covered their ships so that-they
jounoient le marien, et aprés prisent sarment de vigne, si
joined the timber and afterward took shoots of vine so
en couvrirent le marien, que les perrieres ne peussent
therewith covered the timber so-that the petraries not could
confondre ne despichier leur nes. Et li Griu renforchierent
confound nor smash their ships And the Greeks strengthened
molt durement leur chité par dedens, et fisent molt bien
very greatly their city by within and had very well
couvrir de boins cuirs par dehors les breteskes qui estoient
covered with good hides on outside the brattices which were
par deseur les tours de pierre, ne n'i avoit brestesque
right above the towers of stone nor not-there had brattice
ou il n'eust set estages ou sis ou chinc au mains.
where it not-had seven stories or six or five at-the least
Aprés avint par un devenres, entor dis jours devant Pasques 70
Afterward happened on a Friday about ten days before Easter
flouries, que li pelerin et li Venicien eurent leur nes et leur
flowery that the pilgrims and the Venetians had their ships and their

engiens atornés et qu'il s'apareilloient d'assalir. Si arengierent
engines equipped and that-they themselves-prepared to-assail So ranged
leur nes l'une en coste l'autre, et li Franchois fisent carkier
their ships the-one by side the-other and the French had loaded
leur engiens en barges et en galies, et se misent a
their engines in barges and in galleys and themselves put to
le voie a aler vers le chité, et duroit bien li navies une
the way to go toward the city and extended well the navy a
grandesme liwe de front; et estoient tout li pelerin et li
very-great league of front and were all the pilgrims and the
Venicien molt bien armé. Si avoit un monchiel dedens le
Venetians very well armed So there-had a hillock within the
chité, en chel endroit ou on devoit assalir, que on pooit bien
city in that place where one was-to assail that one could well
veir des nes par deseur les murs, si estoit il haus; et en
see from-the ships right above the walls so was it high and on
chel monchel estoit venus Morchofles li traïtres, li empereres,
that hillock was come Murzuphlus the traitor the emperor
et de se gent avec lui; si i avoit fait tendre ses vermeilles
and of his people with him so there he-had had pitched his vermilion
tendes, et faisoit ses buisines d'argent sonner et ses timbres,
tents and had his trumpets of-silver sounded and his timbrels
et faisoit molt grant beubant, si que li pelerin le pooient
and made very great display so that the pilgrims him could
bien veir, et Morchofles pooit bien veir es nes as pelerins.
well see and Murzuphlus could well see into-the ships of-the pilgrims
71 Quant li navies dut ariver, si prisent boins caauvles, si
When the navy was-to land so took good cables so
traisent leur nes au plus pres k'il peurent des murs,
drew their ships at-the most near that-they could to-the walls
si fisent li Franchois leur engiens drechier, leur cas, leur
so had the French their engines raised their cats their

carcloies et leur truis pour miner as murs; et li Venicien
hurdles and their sows for to-mine at-the walls and the Venetians
monterent seur les pons de leur nes et assalirent durement
mounted on the bridges of their ships and assailed hard
as murs; et li Franchois assalirent ensement par leur
at-the walls and the French assailed likewise by their
engiens. Quant li Griu virent que li Franchois les assaloient
engines When the Greeks saw that the French them assailed
si, si destendent a geter grandesme quarriaus seur ches
so so dash to throw very-great blocks on these
engiens as Franchois si grans que trop; si commenchent
engines of-the French so great that exceedingly so begin
a craventer et a despechier et a esmier tous ches engiens,
to crush and to smash and to crumble all these engines
si que onques nus n'osa demorer dedens ne desous ches
so that ever anyone not-dared remain within nor beneath these
engiens, ne li Venicien d'autre part ne peurent avenir as
engines nor the Venetians on-other side not could reach to-the
murs ne as tours, si erent eles hautes; ne onques chu
walls nor to-the towers so were they high nor ever this
jour li Venicien ne li Franchois riens ne peurent forfaire
day the Venetians nor the French anything not could do-harm
ne as murs ne a le chité. Quant il virent qu'il n'i
neither to-the walls nor to the city When they saw that-they not-there
peurent nient forfaire, si furent molt dolent, si se traisent
could anything do-harm so were very sorrowful so themselves drew
arriere; quant li Griu les virent traire ariere, si s'acueillent a
back when the Greeks them saw draw back so themselves-set to
huer et a escrier si durement que trop, et monterent seur
hoot and to shout so hard that exceedingly and mounted on
les murs et avaloient leur braies et moustroient leur leurs
the walls and lowered their breeches and showed to-them their

cus. Quant Morchofles vit que li pelerin furent retorné, si
asses When Murzuphlus saw that the pilgrims were returned so
akeut a faire sonner ses buisines et timbres et a faire un si
sets to have sounded his trumpets and timbrels and to make a so
grant beubant que trop, et manda se gent et commencha
great display that exceedingly and summoned his people and began
a dire: «Veés, seigneur, sui je boins empereres? Onques mais
to say See lords am I good emperor Ever before
n'eustes vous si boin empereeur. Ai le jou bien fait? Nous
not-had you so good emperor Have it I well done We
n'avons mais warde; je les ferai tous pendre et tous hounir.»
not-have more fear I them will-have all hanged and all shamed

The Second Assault

XXII

The bishops declare the war just, since the Greeks have left the law of Rome and murdered their lord, and send the loose women away. On Monday the sea drives the bishop of Soissons's ship against a tower; a Venetian who climbs in is cut down, but Andrew of Dureboise clears it, and Peter of Bracieux's ship takes a second.

72 Quant li pelerin virent chou, si furent molt corchié et molt
When the pilgrims saw this so were very angered and very
dolent, si s'en revinrent ariere d'autre part du port
sorrowful so themselves-thence came-back back on-other side of-the port
a leur herbeges. Quant li baron furent revenu et il furent
to their lodgings When the barons were returned and they were
descendu des nes, si s'asanlerent et furent molt abaubi et
come-down from-the ships so themselves-assembled and were very astounded and
disent que ch'estoit par pechié qu'il riens ne pooient faire
said that this-was by sin that-they anything not could do

ne forfaire a le chité; tant que li vesque et li clerc de l'ost
nor harm to the city so-far that the bishops and the clerks of the-host
parlerent ensanle, et jugierent que le bataille estoit droituriere
spoke together and judged that the battle was rightful
et que les devoit bien assalir, car anchienement avoient esté
and that them one-ought well assail for anciently had been
chil de le chité obedient a le loi de Rome, et ore en estoient
those of the city obedient to the law of Rome and now thereof were
inobedient, quant il disoient que li lois de Romme ne valoit
disobedient when they said that the law of Rome not was-worth
nient, et disoient que tout chil qui i crooient estoient chien;
anything and said that all those who therein believed were dogs
et disent li vesque que par tant les devoit on bien assalir
and said the bishops that by that them ought one well assail
et que che n'estoit mie pechiés, ains estoit grans aumosnes.
and that this not-was at-all sin but was great almsgiving
Adont cria on par l'ost que tot venissent au sarmon, et 73
Then cried one through the-host that all should-come to-the sermon both
Venicien et un et autre, le diemenche par matin, et il si
Venetians and one and other the Sunday in morning and they so
fisent. Adonc sarmonnerent li vesque par l'ost, li vesques
did Then preached the bishops through the-host the bishop
de Sessons, li vesques de Troie, li veskes de Hanestaist,
of Soissons the bishop of Troyes the bishop of Halberstadt
maistres Jehans Faicete et li abes de Los, et moustrerent
master John Faicete and the abbot of Loos and showed
as pelerins que le bataille estoit droituriere, car il estoient
to-the pilgrims that the battle was rightful for they were
traïteur et mordrisseeur, et qu'il estoient desloial, quant
traitors and murderers and that-they were disloyal when
il avoient leur seigneur droiturier mordri, et qu'il estoient
they had their lord rightful murdered and that-they were

pieur que Juis. Et disent li vesque qu'il assoloient de par
worse than Jews And said the bishops that-they absolved on behalf-of
Dieu et de par l'apostoile tous chiaus qui les asaurroient,
God and on behalf-of the-pope all those who them would-assail
et quemanderent li vesque as pelerins qu'il se
and commanded the bishops to-the pilgrims that-they themselves
confessaissent et kemeniaissent tout molt bien, et qu'il ne
should-confess and should-commune all very well and that-they not
doutaissent mie a assalir les Grieus, car il estoient enemi
should-fear at-all to assail the Greeks for they were enemies
Damedieu. Et quemanda on que on quesist et que on
(of-)Lord-God And commanded one that one should-seek and that one
ostast toutes les foles femmes de l'ost et que on les
should-remove all the loose women from the-host and that one them
envoiast bien loin en sus de l'ost; et on si fist que on les
should-send well far away off from the-host and one so did that one them
mist toutes en une nef, si les envoia on bien loins de l'ost.
put all in a ship so them sent one well far from the-host
74 Aprés quant li vesque eurent preechié et moustré as
Afterward when the bishops had preached and shown to-the
pelerins que le batalle estoit droituriere, si se confesserent
pilgrims that the battle was rightful so themselves confessed
molt bien tout et furent kemenié. Quant che vint le
very well all and were communed When this came the
deluns par matin, si s'atornerent molt bien tot li pelerin
Monday in morning so themselves-equipped very well all the pilgrims
et s'armerent, et li Venicien, et refisent les pons de leurs
and themselves-armed and the Venetians and remade the bridges of their
nes et leur uissiers et leur galies; si les arengierent
ships and their horse-transports and their galleys so them ranged
coste a coste et se misent a le voie pour aler assalir;
side to side and themselves put to the way for to-go to-assail

et avoit li navies bien une grandesme liwe de front;
and had the navy well a very-great league of front
et quant il furent arivé et il se furent trait au
and when they were arrived and they themselves were drawn at-the
plus pres qu'il peurent des murs, si geterent ancres. Et
most near that-they could to-the walls so cast anchors And
quant il furent a ancre, si commenchierent durement a
when they were at anchor so began hard to
assalir et a traire et a lanchier et a geter fu grijois as
assail and to shoot and to hurl and to throw fire Greek at-the
tours; mais ne s'i pooit prendre li fus pour les cuirs
towers but not itself-there could take the fire for the hides
dont eles erent couvertes. Et dedens se desfendoient
with-which they were covered And within themselves defended
molt durement et faisoient bien geter soisante perrieres et
very hard and had well shot sixty petraries and
getoient a cascun caup seur les nes; mais les nes estoient
threw at each shot on the ships but the ships were
si bien couvertes de mairien et de sarment de vingne ker
so well covered with timber and of shoots of vine that
ne leur faisoient mie grant mal, et estoient les pierres
not to-them did at-all great harm and were the stones
si grans que uns hons n'en peust mie une lever de
so great that a man not-thereof could at-all one lift from
se tere. Et Morchofles li empereres estoit en sen monchel;
its ground And Murzuphlus the emperor was on his hillock
si faisoit ses buisines d'argent sonner et ses timbres, et
so had his trumpets of-silver sounded and his timbrels and
faisoit molt grant beubant, et renheudissoit se gent, et
made very great display and heartened his people and
disoit: «Alés la! alés cha!» et les renvoie la ou il veoit
said Go there go here and them sends there where he saw

que li graindes besoins estoit. Et n'avoit mie en tout le
that the greatest need was And not-there-had at-all in all the
navie plus haut de quatre nes ou de chinc qu'il peussent
navy more high than four ships or than five that-they could
avenir as tours, si erent eles hautes; et tout li estage
reach to-the towers so were they high and all the stories
des tours de fust qui erent faites seur les tours de pierre,
of-the towers of wood which were made on the towers of stone
dont il i avoit bien chinc ou sis ou set, et estoient
whereof it there had well five or six or seven and were
toutes warnies de serjans qui les tors desfendoient. Et tant
all furnished with sergeants who the towers defended And so-long
i assalirent que le nef le vesque de Sessons s'ahurta
there assailed that the ship (of-)the bishop of Soissons itself-struck
a une de ches tors par miracle de Dieu, si comme le
against one of these towers by miracle of God so as the
mers, qui onques n'est coie, le porta, et seur le pont de
sea which ever not-is still it bore and on the bridge of
chele nef avoit un Venicien et deus chevaliers armés; si
that ship there-had a Venetian and two knights armed so
comme le nef se fu ahurtee a chele tour, si se prent
as the ship itself was struck against that tower so himself takes
li Veniciens a piés et a mains au miex qu'il peut, si
the Venetian with feet and with hands at-the best that-he could so
fait tant qu'il fu ens. Quant il fu ens, et li serjant qui
does so-much that-he was in When he was in and the sergeants who
estoient en chel estage, Encles, Danois, et Grius que il i
were in that story English Danes and Greeks that it there
avoit, si wardent, si le voient, se li keurent il sus a
had so look so him see so on-him run they upon with
haches et as espees, si le decauperent tout. Si comme
axes and with-the swords so him cut-to-pieces all So as

le mers reporta avant le nef, si se rahurta a chele
the sea bore-again forward the ship so itself struck-again against that
tour; si comme ele s'i fu rahurtee, si ne fait mais
tower so as it itself-there was struck-again so not does more
el li uns des deus chevaliers, Andriex de Dureboise avoit
else the one of-the two knights Andrew of Dureboise had
a non, si se prent il a piés et as mains a chele
as name so himself takes he with feet and with-the hands to that
breteske et fait tant qu'il se mist ens a genoullons.
brattice and does so-much that-he himself put in on knees
Quant il fu laiens a genoullons, et chil li keurent il
When he was in-there on knees and those on-him run they
sus a haches, as espees, si le ferirent durement; mais
upon with axes with-the swords so him struck hard but
qu'il estoit armés, la grace Dieu, si ne le navrerent mie, si
that-he was armed the grace (of-)God so not him wounded at-all so
comme Diex le wardoit qui ne voloit mie consentir qu'il
as God him guarded who not wished at-all consent that-they
duraissent plus, ne que chil i morust mie. Ains voloit,
should-endure longer nor that that-one there should-die at-all But wished
pour le traïson d'aus et pour le murdre que Morchofles
for the treason of-them and for the murder that Murzuphlus
avoit fait et pour le desloiauté d'aus, que le chités fust
had done and for the disloyalty of-them that the city should-be
prise et que il fussent tot honni, que li chevaliers fu en
taken and that they should-be all shamed so-that the knight was on
piés, et quant il fu en piés, si traist s'espee. Quant chil le
feet and when he was on feet so drew his-sword When those him
virrent en piés, si furent si esbahi et si eurent grant peur
saw on feet so were so dismayed and so had great fear
qu'il s'en fuirent en l'autre estage desous. Quant chil
that-they themselves-thence fled into the-other story beneath When those

de l'autre estage virent que chil de deseure aus s'en
of the-other story saw that those of above them themselves-thence
afuioient si, si rewidierent chelui estage, ne onques n'i
fled so so emptied-in-turn that story nor ever not-there
oserent demourer; et li autres chevaliers i entra aprés,
dared remain and the other knight there entered after
et si i entra assés gens aprés. Et quant il furent ens,
and so there entered plenty people after And when they were in
si prenent boines cordes, si loient molt bien chele nef a le
so take good ropes so tie very well that ship to the
tor, et quant il l'eurent loie, si i entrerent assés gent;
tower and when they it-had tied so there entered plenty people
et quant le mers reportoit le nef ariere, si branloit chele
and when the sea bore-again the ship back so shook that
tors si durement que il sanloit bien que le nes le deust
tower so hard that it seemed well that the ship it should
traire jus, si que par forche et par peur leur couvint le nef
drag down so that by force and by fear them behooved the ship
desloier. Et quant chil des autres estages par desous virent
untie And when those of-the other stories by below saw
que le tors emploit si des Franchois, si eurent si grant
that the tower filled so with-the French so had so great
peur que onques nus n'i osa demorer, ains widierent
fear that ever anyone not-there dared remain but emptied
toute le tour. Et Morchofles veoit bien tout chou, si
all the tower And Murzuphlus saw well all this so
renheudissoit se gent et les envoioit la ou il veoit que
heartened his people and them sent there where he saw that
li graindes assaus estoit. Entre ches entrefaites que chele
the greatest assault was Between these doings that that
tours fu par tele miracle prise, si se rahurte le nes
tower was by such miracle taken so itself strikes-in-turn the ship

seigneur Pierrum de Braichoel a une autre tor; et quand
(of-)lord Peter of Bracieux against an other tower and when
ele s'i fu rahurtee, si commenchent chil qui estoient
it itself-there was struck-in-turn so begin those who were
seur le pont de le nef a asalir durement a chele tour,
on the bridge of the ship to assail hard at that tower
et tant que, par miracle de Dieu, que chele tors fu prise.
and so-far that by miracle of God that that tower was taken

Peter of Amiens and Aleaume of Clari

XXIII

Peter of Amiens lands with ten knights and sixty sergeants at a walled-up postern, and with them is the clerk Aleaume of Clari, whom only Peter of Bracieux outdid at the tower of Galata. Under stones and boiling pitch they hack a hole, but the crowd beyond it daunts them. Aleaume crawls in though his brother Robert tries to pull him back by the foot, drives the Greeks before him with a knife, and calls Peter in. The Greeks abandon that stretch of wall, with Murzuphlus a stone's throw away.

Quant ches deus tors furent prises, et eles furent warnies 75
When these two towers were taken and they were furnished
de nos gens et il furent es tours ne ne s'osoient
with our people and they were in-the towers nor not themselves-dared
mouvoir pour le grant plenté de gent que il veoient seur
move for the great plenty of people that they saw on
le mur entour aus et dedens les autres tours et jus des
the wall around them and within the other towers and down from-the
murs, que ch'estoit une fine merveille tant en i avoit
walls that this-was a pure marvel so-many of-them there had
il. Quant mesires Pierres d'Amiens vit que chil qui estoient
it When my-lord Peter of-Amiens saw that those who were

es tours ne se mouvoient et il vit le convine des
in-the towers not themselves moved and he saw the situation of-the
Grius, si ne fait mais el, si descent il a tere a pié, et se
Greeks so not does more else so comes-down he to land on foot and his
gent avec lui, en un peu d'espace de tere qui estoit entre
people with him in a little of-space of land which was between
le mer et le mur. Quant il furent descendu, si gardent
the sea and the wall When they were come-down so look
avant, si veoient il une fause posterne dont li wis avoient
forward so saw they a false postern whereof the doors had
esté osté, si estoit muree de nouvel; si vient il la, si avoit
been removed so was walled-up of new so comes he there so he-had
avec lui bien dis chevaliers et bien soisante serjans. Si i
with him well ten knights and well sixty sergeants So there
avoit un clerc, Aliaume de Clari avoit a non, qui si estoit
had a clerk Aleaume of Clari had as name who so was
preus en tous besoins que ch'estoit li premiers a tous les
valiant in all needs that this-was the first at all the
assaus ou il estoit, et a le tor de Galatha prendre fist
assaults where he was and at the tower of Galata taking did
chis clers plus de proeches par sen cors, un pour un, que
this clerk more of prowess by his body one for one than
tout chil de l'ost, fors seigneur Pierron de Braiechoel. Che
all those of the-host except lord Peter of Bracieux This
fu chis qui tous les autres passa, et haus et bas, que il
was the-one who all the others surpassed both high and low that it
n'en i eut onques nul qui tant i fesist d'armes ne
not-thereof there had ever anyone who so-much there did of-arms nor
de proeches de sen cors comme fist Pierres de Braiechoel.
of prowess of his body as did Peter of Bracieux
Quant il furent venu a chele posterne, si commenchierent
When they were come to that postern so began

a pikier molt durement, et quarrel voloient si dru et tant
to pick very hard and quarrels flew so thick and so-many
i getoit on de pierres de lassus des murs que il sanloit
there threw one of stones from up-there of-the walls that it seemed
enaises k'il y fussent enfoï es pierres, tant en
nearly that-they there were buried in-the stones so-many of-them
i getoit on; et chil de desous avoient escus et targes,
there threw one and those of below had shields and targes
dont il couvroient chiaus qui picoient a le posterne.
with-which they covered those who picked at the postern
Et getoit on leur de lassus pos plains de pois boulie
And threw one on-them from up-there pots full of pitch boiled
et fu grijois et grandesmes pierres, que ch'estoit miracles
and fire Greek and very-great stones that this-was miracle
de Dieu que on ne les confondoit tous; et tant i
of God that one not them confounded all and so-much there
souffri mesires Pierres et se gent d'ahans et de grietés
suffered my-lord Peter and his people of-toils and of hardships
que trop; et tant pichierent a chele posterne de hasches
that exceedingly and so-long picked at that postern with axes
et de boines espees, d'es, de bous et de pis, que
and with good swords with-planks with staves and with picks that
il i fisent un grant pertruis. Et quant chele posterne
they there made a great hole And when that postern
fu perchie, si eswarderent par mi, et virent tant de
was pierced so looked through the-midst and saw so-many of
gent, et haut et bas, que sanloit que demis li mondes
people both high and low that it-seemed that half the world
i fust, si qu'il ne s'osoient enhardir d'entrer i.
there were so that-they not themselves-dared embolden to-enter there

76 Quant Aliaumes li clers vit que nus n'i osoit entrer,
When Aleaume the clerk saw that anyone not-there dared enter
si sali avant et dist qu'il i enterroit. Si avoit illuec
so leapt forward and said that-he there would-enter So had there
un chevalier, un sien frere, Robers de Clari avoit a non,
a knight a his-own brother Robert of Clari had as name
qui li desfendi et qui dist qu'il n'i enterroit mie; et
who him forbade and who said that-he not-there would-enter at-all and
li clers dist que si feroit, si se met ens a piés et
the clerk said that so he-would so himself puts in with feet and
a mains; et quant ses freres vit chou, si le prent par
with hands and when his brother saw this so him takes by
le pié, si commenche a sakier a lui, et tant que maugré
the foot so begins to pull to him and so-far that in-spite
sen frere, vausist ou ne dengnast, que li clers i entra.
(of-)his brother willed-he or not deigned-he that the clerk there entered
Quant il fu ens, se li keurent sus tant de ches Grius
When he was in so on-him run upon so-many of these Greeks
que trop, et chil de deseur les murs li acuellent a
that exceedingly and those of above the walls on-him set to
geter grandesmes pierres. Quant li clers vit chou, si sake
throw very-great stones When the clerk saw this so draws
le coutel, si leur keurt sus, si les faisoit aussi fuir devant
the knife so on-them runs upon so them made as flee before
lui comme bestes. Si disoit a chiax de defors, a seigneur
him as beasts So said to those of outside to lord
Pierron et a se gent: «Sire, entrés hardiement! Je voi qu'il
Peter and to his people Lord enter boldly I see that-they
se vont molt desconfissant et qu'il s'en vont
themselves go much breaking and that-they themselves-thence go
fuiant.» Quant mesires Pierres oï chou et se gent qui par
fleeing When my-lord Peter heard this and his people who on

dehors erent, si entra ens mesires Pierres et se gent, si ne
outside were so entered in my-lord Peter and his people so not
fu mie plus que li disime de chevaliers, mais bien i avoit
was at-all more than the tenth of knights but well there had
soisante serjans avec lui, et tout estoient a pié laiens. Et
sixty sergeants with him and all were on foot in-there And
quant il furent ens et chil qui estoient seur les murs et
when they were in and those who were on the walls and
en chel endroit les virent, si eurent tel peur qu'il n'oserent
in that place them saw so had such fear that-they not-dared
demorer en chel endroit, ains widierent grant partie du
remain in that place but emptied great part of-the
mur, si s'en fuirent qui miex miex. Et li empereres
wall so themselves-thence fled who better better And the emperor
Morchofles li traïtres estoit molt pres d'iluec, a mains de
Murzuphlus the traitor was very near of-there at less than
le getee d'un cailleu, et faisoit sonner ses buisines d'argent
the cast of-a pebble and had sounded his trumpets of-silver
et ses timbres et faisoit un mout grant beubant.
and his timbrels and made a very great display

The City Taken

XXIV

Murzuphlus rides at Peter of Amiens's men and turns back; they break open a gate, the knights ride in, and he flees, leaving his tents to Peter of Bracieux. The barons hold still for the night, fearing the narrow streets, and plan to fight or to burn the city. At midnight Murzuphlus flees, and Lascaris, made emperor, crosses to Nicaea. In the morning the clergy come in procession to beg mercy, and the rich men seize the best houses before the poor knights know it.

77 Quant il vit monseigneur Pierron et se gent qui estoient ens
When he saw my-lord Peter and his people who were in
a pié, si fist molt grant sanlant de lui corre sus et de ferir
on foot so made very great show of him to-run upon and of to-strike
des esperons et vint bien dusques en mi voies. Quant mesires
with-the spurs and came well as-far in mid way When my-lord
Pierres le vit venir, si commencha a reconforter se gent et a
Peter him saw come so began to hearten his people and to
dire: «Or, seigneur, or du bien faire! Nous arons ja le
say Now lords now of-the well doing We will-have presently the
bataille; veschi l'empereur ou il vient. Wardés qu'il n'i
battle behold-here the-emperor where he comes Look that-it not-there
ait si hardi qui refust arriere, mais or pensés du bien faire!»
have so bold who shrink back but now think of-the well doing
78 Quant Morchofles li traïtres vit qu'il ne fuiroient nient,
When Murzuphlus the traitor saw that-they not would-flee at-all
si s'arresta et puis se retorna ariere a ses tentes.
so himself-halted and then himself returned back to his tents
Quant mesire Pierres vit que li empereres fu retornés, si
When my-lord Peter saw that the emperor was returned so
envoie il une trope de ses serjans a une porte qui pres
sends he a troop of his sergeants to a gate which near

estoit d'iluec et kemanda que on le despechast et que on
was of-there and commanded that one it should-smash and that one
l'ouvrist. Et chil alerent, si commenchent a buskier et a
it-should-open And those went so begin to hack and to
ferir a chele porte et de haches et d'espees, tant qu'il
strike at that gate both with axes and with-swords so-far that-they
rompirent les verax de fer qui molt estoient fort et les
broke the bolts of iron which very were strong and the
flaiaus, et qu'il ouvrirent le porte. Et quant le porte fu
bars and that-they opened the gate And when the gate was
ouverte et chil de dehors virent chou, si font atraire leur
opened and those of outside saw this so have drawn their
uissiers avant et les chevax amener hors, si monterent,
horse-transports forward and the horses led out so mounted
si commencherent a entrer grant aleure en le chité par
so began to enter great pace into the city through
mi le porte. Et quant li Franchois furent ens tout
the-midst-of the gate And when the French were in all
monté, et quant li empereres Morchofles li traïtres les
mounted and when the emperor Murzuphlus the traitor them
vit, si eut si grant peur que il laissa ses tentes et ses
saw so had so great fear that he left his tents and his
juiaus illuec, si s'en fui avant en le chité qui molt
jewels there so himself-thence fled ahead into the city which very
estoit grande et longe et lee, car on dit la que a
was great and long and wide for one says there that to
aler entor les murs a bien nuef liwes, tant ont li mur
go around the walls has well nine leagues so-much have the walls
d'achainte qui entor le vile vont, et a bien larguement
of-circuit which around the town go and has well fully
le chités par dedens deus liwes franchoises de lonc et
the city by within two leagues French of length and

deus de lé; et si ke sires Pierres de Braiechoel eut les
two of breadth and so that lord Peter of Bracieux had the
tentes Morchofle et ses cosfres et ses juiaus qu'il illuec
tents (of-)Murzuphlus and his coffers and his jewels that-he there
laissiés avoit. Quant chil qui desfendoient as tors et as
left had When those who defended at-the towers and at-the
murs virent que li Franchois estoient entré en le chité
walls saw that the French were entered into the city
et leur empereres s'en estoit fuis, si n'i oserent
and their emperor himself-thence was fled so not-there dared
demorer, ains s'en fuirent qui miex miex: ensi fu le
remain but themselves-thence fled who better better thus was the
chités prise. Quant le chités fu si faitement prise et li
city taken When the city was in-such wise taken and the
Franchois furent ens, si se tinrent tout coi. Adont si
French were in so themselves held all still Then so
s'asanlerent li haut baron et prisent consel entr'aus
themselves-assembled the high barons and took counsel among-themselves
qu'il feroient; tant que on fist crier par l'ost qu'il
what-they would-do so-far that one had cried through the-host that-it
n'i eust si hardi qui avant alast en le chité, car che
not-there should-have so bold who forward should-go into the city for this
seroit uns perix d'aler i, que on ne leur getast pierres
would-be a peril to-go there that one — on-them should-throw stones
des palais qui molt estoient grant et haut, et que on
from-the palaces which very were great and high and that one
ne les ochisist es rues qui trop estoient estroites, ne il
— them should-kill in-the streets which too were narrow nor they
ne s'i porroient mie desfendre, ou que on ne leur
not themselves-there could at-all defend or that one — on-them
boutast le fu par derriere et que on ne les arsist. Et
should-set the fire from behind and that one — them should-burn And

pour ches aventures et pour ches perix, si ne s'i
for these chances and for these perils so not themselves-therein
oserent mie metre ne espardre, ains demourerent esluec tout
dared at-all put nor spread but remained there all
coi; et si s'acorderent li baron a chest consel que se li
still and so themselves-agreed the barons to this counsel that if the
Griu se voloient combatre l'endemain, qui estoient encore
Greeks themselves wished to-fight the-next-day who were still
chent tans plus de gent armes portans que li Franchois
hundred times more of people arms bearing than the French
n'estoient, qu'il s'armeroient l'endemain par matin et
were that-they themselves-would-arm the-next-day in morning and
ordeneroient leur batailles, et qu'il les atenderoient en
would-order their battalions and that-they them would-await in
unes plaches qui enluec devant estoient en le chité; et
some squares which there before were in the city and
s'il ne se voloient combatre ne il ne voloient le vile
if-they not themselves wished to-fight nor they not wished the town
rendre, qu'il esgarderoient de quel part li vens venroit,
to-render that-they would-see from what side the wind would-come
si bouteroient le fu seur le vent, si les arderoient: ensi si
so would-set the fire on the wind so them would-burn thus so
les prenderoient par forche. A chest consel s'acorderent tout
them would-take by force To this counsel themselves-agreed all
li baron. Quant che vint au vespre, si se desarmerent
the barons When this came at-the evening so themselves disarmed
li pelerin, si se reposerent, si mengierent, si jurent
the pilgrims so themselves rested so ate so lay
iluec le nuit devant leur navie par dedens les murs.
there the night before their navy by within the walls

79 Quant che vint vers mie nuit, que li empereres Morchofles
When this came toward mid night that the emperor Murzuphlus
li traïtres seut que tout li Franchois furent en le chité, si
the traitor knew that all the French were in the city so
en eut mout grant peur, ne onques n'i osa demorer; ains
thereof had very great fear nor ever not-there dared remain but
s'en fui a mie nuit que on n'en seut mot. Quant li
himself-thence fled at mid night so-that one not-thereof knew word When the
Griu virent que leur empereres s'en estoit fuis, si traisent
Greeks saw that their emperor himself-thence was fled so drew
il a un haut homme de le chité, Laskers avoit a non, chele
they to a high man of the city Lascaris had as name that
nuit meesme tantost, si en font il empereur. Quant chis
night same at-once so of-him make they emperor When this-one
fu fais empereres, si n'i osa demorer, ains se mist en
was made emperor so not-there dared remain but himself put into
une galie anchois que il fust jours, si s'en passa outre le
a galley before that it were day so himself-thence passed beyond the
bras Saint Jorge et s'en ala a Nike le grant, qui une
arm (of-)Saint George and himself-thence went to Nicaea the great which a
boine chités est; illuec s'arresta, s'en fu sires et empereres.
good city is there himself-halted so-thereof was lord and emperor
80 Quant che vint l'endemain par matin, si ne font mais el
When this came the-next-day in morning so not do more else
prestre et clerc revestu, Engles, Danois estoient et gens
priests and clerks vested English Danes were and people
d'autres nations, si vienent il a l'ost as Franchois a
of-other nations so come they to the-host of-the French in
pourchession, si leur crient il merchi, si leur disent tout
procession so to-them cry they mercy so to-them say all
ensi comme li Griu avoient fait, et si disent que tout li
thus as the Greeks had done and so say that all the

Griu s'en estoient fui ne n'avoit remés en le chité
Greeks themselves-thence were fled nor not-had remained in the city
fors povre gent. Quant li Franchois oïrent che, s'en furent
except poor people When the French heard this so-thereof were
tout lié; et puis aprés fist on crier par l'ost que nus
all glad and then afterward had one cried through the-host that anyone
ne presist ostel devant la que on aroit atiré comment
not should-take lodging before there that one would-have arranged how
on les prenderoit. Adont si s'asanlerent li haut homme,
one them would-take Then so themselves-assembled the high men
li rike homme, et prisent consel entr'aus, que le menue
the rich men and took counsel among-themselves so-that the small
gent n'en seurent mot ne li povre chevalier de l'ost, que
people not-thereof knew word nor the poor knights of the-host that
il prenderoient les meilleurs ostex de le vile; et tresdont
they would-take the best lodgings of the town and from-then
commenchierent il a traïr le menue gent, et a porter leur
began they to betray the small people and to bear to-them
male foi et male compaingnie, que il compererent puis
bad faith and bad company which they paid-for then
molt kier, si comme nous vous dirons aprés. Si envoierent
very dear so as we to-you will-tell afterward So they-sent
saisir tous les melleurs ostex et les plus rikes de le vile, si
to-seize all the best lodgings and the most rich of the town so
qu'il les eurent tous saisis anchois que li povre chevalier
that-they them had all seized before that the poor knights
ne le menue gent de l'ost s'apercheussent. Et quant le
nor the small people of the-host themselves-perceived And when the
povre gent s'aperchurent, si alerent dont qui miex miex,
poor people themselves-perceived so went then who better better
si prisent chou qu'il atainsent; assés en i trouvérent
so took this that-they reached plenty thereof there found

et assés en prisent et assés en i remest, car le
and plenty thereof took and plenty thereof there remained for the
chités estoit molt grans et molt pueplee. Si fist li marchis
city was very great and very peopled So had the marquis
prendre le palais de Bouke de Lion, et le moustier Sainte
taken the palace of Mouth of Lion and the minster (of-)Saint
Sousphie et les maisons le patriarke; et li autre haut
Sophia and the houses (of-)the patriarch and the other high
homme, si comme li conte, fisent prendre les plus rikes
men so as the counts had taken the most rich
palais et les plus rikes abeïes que on i peut trouver, car,
palaces and the most rich abbeys that one there could find for
puis que le vile fu prise, ne fist on mal n'a povre n'a
since that the town was taken not did one harm not-to poor nor-to
rike. Ains s'en ala qui aler s'en vaut, et qui
rich But himself-thence went who to-go himself-thence wished and who
vaut si remest; si s'en alerent li plus rike de le vile.
wished so remained so themselves-thence went the most rich of the town

The Booty

XXV

The booty is brought to an abbey under ten French and ten Venetian guards, more wealth than was ever seen, for the Greeks say two thirds of the world's wealth is in Constantinople. The guards and the rich men steal the jewels and the cloth of gold, and nothing is shared with the poor knights and sergeants but the coarse silver, such as the ladies' bath basins. The Venetians have their half all the same.

81 Aprés si kemanda on que tous li avoirs des waains fust
Afterward so commanded one that all the wealth of-the gains should-be
aportés a une abeïe qui en le cité estoit. Illuec fu aportés li
brought to an abbey which in the city was There was brought the

avoirs, et prist on dis chevaliers haus hommes des pelerins
wealth and took one ten knights high men of-the pilgrims
et dis Veniciens que on cuidoit a loiaus, si les mist on a
and ten Venetians whom one thought as loyal so them put one to
chel avoir warder. Si comme li avoirs fu la aportés, qui
that wealth guard So as the wealth was there brought which
si estoit rikes et tant i avoit de rike vaisselemente d'or
so was rich and so-much there had of rich plate of-gold
et d'argent et de dras a or et tant de rikes joiaus que
and of-silver and of cloths of gold and so-many of rich jewels that
ch'estoit une fine merveille du grant avoir qui luekes fu
this-was a pure marvel of-the great wealth which there was
aportés, mais puis que chis siecles fu estorés, si grans avoirs,
brought but since that this world was founded so great wealth
ne si nobles, ne si rikes, ne fu veus, ne conquis, ne au
nor so noble nor so rich not was seen nor won neither in-the
tans Alixandre, ne au tans Charlemaine, ne devant ne aprés;
time (of-)Alexander nor in-the time (of-)Charlemagne nor before nor after
ne je ne quit mie, au mien ensient, que es quarante
nor I not think at-all to-the my knowledge that in-the forty
plus rikes chités du monde eust tant d'avoir comme on
most rich cities of-the world there-had so-much of-wealth as one
trouva u cors de Constantinoble. Et si tesmongnoient li
found in-the body of Constantinople And so testified the
Griu que les deus pars de l'avoir du monde estoient en
Greeks that the two parts of the-wealth of-the world were in
Coustantinoble et le tierche estoit esparse par le monde.
Constantinople and the third was scattered through the world
Et chil meïsme qui l'avoir devoient warder si prenoient les
And those same who the-wealth were-to guard so took the
joiaus d'or et chou que il voloient et embloient l'avoir;
jewels of-gold and this that they wished and stole the-wealth

et prenoit cascuns des rikes hommes ou joiaus d'or ou
and took each of-the rich men either jewels of-gold or
dras de soie a or, ou chou que il amoit miex, si l'en
cloths of silk with gold or this that he loved best so it-thence
portoit. Ensi faitement si commenchierent l'avoir a embler,
carried Thus wise so they-began the-wealth to steal
si que on ne departi onques au quemun de l'ost, ne as
so that one not distributed ever to-the commons of the-host nor to-the
povres chevaliers, ne as serjans qui l'avoir avoient aidié a
poor knights nor to-the sergeants who the-wealth had helped to
waaingnier, fors le gros argent, si comme des paieles d'argent
win except the coarse silver so as of-the basins of-silver
que les dames de le chité portoient as bains. Et li autres
that the ladies of the city carried to-the baths And the other
avoirs qui remest a partir fu cachiés si males voies com je
wealth which remained to divide was driven so bad ways as I
vous ai dit, mais totes eures en eurent li Venicien leur
to-you have said but all the-same thereof had the Venetians their
moitié, et les pierres precieuses et li grans tresors qui remest
half and the stones precious and the great treasure which remained
a partir ala si males voies comme nous vous dirons aprés.
to divide went so bad ways as we to-you will-tell afterward

The Wonders of Constantinople

XXVI

The palace of Mouth of Lion holds five hundred mosaic chambers and a Holy Chapel with the True Cross, the lance, the nails, the crown of thorns, and the Baptist's head, and a tile and a cloth bearing Christ's face. Blachernae holds the crowns and robes of earlier emperors. In Saint Sophia the columns heal and a tube at the door sucks out sickness. Before it rides the Greeks' copper Heraclius, and the Seven Apostles, said to be richer, holds seven apostles' bodies.

Quant le chités fu prise et li pelerin se furent 82
When the city was taken and the pilgrims themselves were
herbergié, si com je vous ai dit, et li palais furent pris, si
lodged so as I to-you have said and the palaces were taken so
trova on tant de riqueches es palais que trop. Si estoit
found one so-much of riches in-the palaces that exceedingly So was
li palais de Bouke de Lion si rikes et si fais com je vous
the palace of Mouth of Lion so rich and so made as I to-you
dirai. Il avoit bien dedens chu palais, que li marchis tenoit,
will-tell It had well within this palace that the marquis held
chinc chens mansions, qui toutes tenoient l'une a l'autre et
five hundred chambers which all held the-one to the-other and
estoient totes faites a ore musike, et si en i avoit bien
were all made in gold mosaic and so of-them there had well
trente capeles, que grans que petites; si en i avoit une
thirty chapels both great and small so of-them there had one
que on apeloit le Sainte Capele, qui si estoit rike et noble
that one called the Holy Chapel which so was rich and noble
qu'il n'i avoit ne gons ne verveles ne autres menbres
that-it not-there had neither hinges nor hasps nor other members
qui a fer apartenissent, qui tout ne fussent d'argent, ne
which to iron belonged which all not were of-silver nor

si n'i avoit colombe qui ne fust ou de jaspe, ou de
so not-there had column which not were either of jasper or of
pourfile ou de rikes pierres precieuses. Et li pavemens de
porphyry or of rich stones precious And the pavement of
le capele estoit d'un blanc marbre si liste et si cler que il
the chapel was of-a white marble so smooth and so clear that it
sanloit qu'il fust de cristal; et estoit chele capele si rike et
seemed that-it were of crystal and was that chapel so rich and
si noble, que on ne vous porroit mie aconter le grant biauté
so noble that one not to-you could at-all recount the great beauty
ne le grant nobleche de chele capele. Dedens chele capele,
nor the great nobility of that chapel Within that chapel
si trova on de molt rikes saintuaires, que on i trova deus
so found one of very rich relics for one there found two
pieches de le Vraie Crois aussi groses comme le gambe a un
pieces of the True Cross as thick as the leg of a
homme et aussi longes comme demie toise, et si i trova
man and as long as half fathom and so there found
on le fer de le lanche dont Nostre Sires eut le costé
one the iron of the lance with-which Our Lord had the side
perchié, et les deux cleus qu'il eut fichiés par mi
pierced and the two nails that-he had driven through the-midst-of
les mains et par mi les piés; et si trova on en une
the hands and through the-midst-of the feet and so found one in a
fiole de cristal grant partie de sen sanc; et si i trova on
phial of crystal great part of his blood and so there found one
le tunike qu'il avoit vestue, que on li despoulla quant
the tunic that-he had worn that one from-him stripped when
on l'eut mené au mont de Cauvaire; et si i trova on
one him-had led to-the mount of Calvary and so there found one
le beneoite corone dont il fu coronés, qui estoit de joins
the blessed crown with-which he was crowned which was of rushes

marins aussi pougnans comme fers d'alesnes. Et si i trova
marine as sharp as irons of-awls And so there found
on de le vesteure Nostre Dame, et le kief monseigneur
one of the garment (of-)Our Lady and the head (of-)my-lord
saint Jehan Baptistre, et tant d'autres rikes saintuaires
saint John Baptist and so-many of-other rich relics
illuec, ne le vous porroie mie aconter ne dire le verité.
there not it to-you I-could at-all recount nor tell the truth
Or avoit encore autres saintuaires en chele capele que 83
Now there-had yet other relics in that chapel that
nous vous aviemes evliés a dire, car il i avoit deus
we to-you had forgotten to tell for it there had two
riches vaissiaus d'or qui pendoient en mi le capele
rich vessels of-gold which hung in the-midst-of the chapel
a deus grosses caaines d'argent. En l'un de ches waissiaus,
by two great chains of-silver In the-one of these vessels
si i avoit une tuile, et en l'autre une touaile; si vous
so there had a tile and in the-other a cloth so to-you
dirons dont chil saintuaire estoient venu. Il eut jadis un
we-will-tell whence those relics were come It had once a
saint homme en Coustantinoble; si avint que chus sains
holy man in Constantinople so happened that this holy
hons recouvroit de tiule le maison a une veve femme
man roofed with tile the house of a widowed woman
pour l'amour de Damedieu. Si comme il le recouvroit, si
for the-love of Lord-God So as he it roofed so
s'aparut Nostre Sires a lui, si parla a lui; or avoit
himself-appeared Our Lord to him so spoke to him now had
li boins hons une toaile entour lui: «Cha donne», fist
the good man a cloth around him Here give said
Nostre Sires, «chele toaile», et li boins hons li bailla,
Our Lord that cloth and the good man to-him handed

et Nostre Sires en envolepa sen visage, si que se forme
and Our Lord therein wrapped his face so that his form
i fu emprientee, puis se li rebailla; se li dist
thereon was imprinted then so to-him banded-back so to-him said
qu'il l'emportast et qu'il la toucast as malades, et qui
that-he it-should-carry-off and that-he it should-touch to-the sick and who
creanche i aroit si seroit netiés de se maladie. Et
belief therein would-have so would-be cleansed of his sickness And
li boins hons le prist, si l'enporta; mais devant chou qu'il
the good man it took so it-carried-off but before this that-he
l'emportast, quant Dieus li eut rendue se toaile, si le
it-carried-off when God to-him had returned his cloth so it
prist le boins hons, si le mucha sous une tiule dusques au
took the good man so it hid under a tile until at-the
vespre. Au vespre, quant il s'en ala, si prist se touaile;
evening At-the evening when he himself-thence went so took his cloth
si comme il leva le tiule, si vit le forme emprientee en le
so as he raised the tile so saw the form imprinted in the
tiule aussi comme en le toaile; si enporta le tiule et le
tile just as in the cloth so carried-off the tile and the
toaile, puis en warirent maint malade; et chil saintuaire
cloth then thereby were-healed many-a sick-man and those relics
pendoient en mi le capele, si comme je vous ai dit.
hung in the-midst-of the chapel so as I to-you have said
Or avoit encore en chele Sainte Capele un autre saintuaire,
Now there-had yet in that Holy Chapel an other relic
car il i avoit une ymage de saint Dimitre qui estoit
for it there had an image of saint Demetrius which was
painte en un tavle. Chis ymages si rendoit tant d'oile
painted on a panel This image so gave-forth so-much of-oil
que on n'en savoit tant oster, comme il decoroit de
that one not-thereof knew-how-to so-much remove as it flowed from

chel ymage. Si i avoit bien vint des capeles, et si i
that image So there had well twenty of-the chapels and so there
avoit bien deus chens mansions, ou trois chens, qui toutes
had well two hundred chambers or three hundred which all
tenoient ensement l'une a l'autre et estoient toutes faites
held likewise the-one to the-other and were all made
a ore musike. Et estoit chis palais si rikes et si nobles
in gold mosaic And was this palace so rich and so noble
que on ne le vous saroit mie descrire ne aconter
that one not it to-you would-know-how-to at-all describe nor recount
le grant nobleche ne le grant riqueche de chu palais. En
the great nobility nor the great richness of this palace In
chel palais de Blakerne trova on molt grant tresor et molt
that palace of Blachernae found one very great treasure and very
rike, que on i trova les rikes corones qui avoient esté
rich for one there found the rich crowns which had been
as empereeurs qui par devant i furent, et les riques
of-the emperors who in times-before there were and the rich
joiaus d'or, et les rikes dras de soie a or, et les rikes
jewels of-gold and the rich cloths of silk with gold and the rich
robes emperiaus, et les riques pierres precieuses, et tant
robes imperial and the rich stones precious and so-many
d'autres riqueches que on ne saroit mie nombrer le
of-other riches that one not would-know-how-to at-all number the
grant tresor d'or et d'argent que on trova es palais et
great treasure of-gold and of-silver that one found in-the palaces and
en molt de lieus ailleurs en le chité.
in many of places elsewhere in the city
Aprés li pelerin esgarderent le grandeur de le vile, et 84
Afterward the pilgrims looked-at the greatness of the town and
les palais, et les riques abeïes, et les riques moustiers, et
the palaces and the rich abbeys and the rich minsters and

les grans merveilles qui estoient en le vile; si s'en
the great marvels which were in the town so themselves-thereat
merveillierent molt durement, et se merveillierent molt
marveled very greatly and themselves marveled much
du moustier Sainte Sousphie et de le riqueche qui i estoit.
at-the minster (of-)Saint Sophia and at the richness which there was
85 Or vous dirai du moustier Sainte Souphie com fais
Now to-you I-will-tell of-the minster (of-)Saint Sophia how made
il estoit; Sainte Souphie en griu ch'est Sainte Trinités en
it was Saint Sophia in Greek this-is Holy Trinity in
franchois. Li moustiers Sainte Souphie estoit trestous reons.
French The minster (of-)Saint Sophia was all round
Si i avoit unes vautes par dedens le moustier entor a le
So there had some vaults by within the minster around in the
reonde, qui estoient portees d'unes grosses colombes molt
round which were borne by-some great columns very
rikes, que il n'i avoit colombe qui ne fust ou de jaspe
rich that it not-there had column which not were either of jasper
ou de porphile ou de riques pierres precieuses, ne si n'en
or of porphyry or of rich stones precious nor so not-thereof
i avoit nule de ches colombes qui ne portast medechine:
there had any of these columns which not bore healing
tele i avoit qui warissoit du mal des rains, quant on
such there had which healed of-the pain of-the loins when one
s'i frotoit, tele qui warisoit du mal du flanc, et
oneself-thereon rubbed such which healed of-the pain of-the side and
teles qui warissoient d'autres maladies, ne si n'i avoit huis
such which healed of-other sicknesses nor so not-there had door
en chu moustier, ne gons, ne verveles, ne autres menbres
in this minster nor hinges nor hasps nor other members
qui a fer apartenissent, qui tout ne fussent d'argent. Li
which to iron belonged which all not were of-silver The

maistres auteus du moustier estoit si rikes que on ne le
master altar of-the minster was so rich that one not it
porroit mie esprisier, car le tavle, qui seur l'autel estoit, ert
could at-all appraise for the table which on the-altar was was
d'or et de pierres precieuses esquartelees et molues, tout
of-gold and of stones precious broken and ground all
jeté ensanle, que uns rikes empereres fist faire; si avoit bien
cast together which a rich emperor had made so had well
chele tavle quatorze piés de lonc; entor l'autel avoit unes
that table fourteen feet of length around the-altar there-had some
coulombes d'argent qui portoient un abitacle seur l'autel qui
columns of-silver which bore a canopy over the-altar which
estoit ausi fais comme uns clokiers, qui tous estoit d'argent
was as made as a belfry which all was of-silver
massis, qui estoit si rikes que on ne peust mie nombrer
massive which was so rich that one not could at-all number
l'avoir que il valoit. Li lieus la ou on lisoit l'ewangile
the-wealth that it was-worth The place there where one read the-gospel
estoit si rikes et si nobles que nous ne le vous sariemes
was so rich and so noble that we not it to-you would-know-how-to
mie descrire com fais il estoit. Aprés contreval le moustier
at-all describe how made it was Afterward down-along the minster
pendoit bien chent lampiers; si n'i avoit lampier qui ne
hung well hundred lamp-holders so not-there had lamp-holder which not
pendist a une grosse caaine d'argent, aussi grosse comme le
hung by a great chain of-silver as thick as the
brach a un homme; si i avoit en cascun lampier bien vint
arm of a man so there had in each lamp-holder well twenty
et chinc lampes ou plus, et si n'i avoit lampier qui ne
and five lamps or more and so not-there had lamp-holder which not
vausist bien deus chens mars d'argent. A l'anel du grant
was-worth well two hundred marks of-silver At the-ring of-the great

huis du moustier, qui tous estoit d'argent, si i pendoit
door of-the minster which all was of-silver so there hung
uns buhotiaus que on ne savoit de quele despoise il estoit;
a tube that one not knew of what material it was
si estoit du grant a une fleuste dont chil pasteur fleustent.
so was of-the size of a flute whereon those shepherds pipe
Ichis buhotiaus si avoit tele vertu com je vous dirai. Quant
This tube so had such virtue as I to-you will-tell When
uns enfers hons qui avoit mal dedens le cors si comme
an infirm man who had sickness within the body so as
d'enfle, qui dedens le ventre estoit enflés, le metoit en se
of-swelling who within the belly was swollen it put in his
bouche, ja si peu ne li eust mis, quant chus buhotiaus
mouth ever so little not it had put when this tube
le prenoit, se li suchoit toute chele maladie, et chu
him took so from-him sucked all that sickness and this
venin li faisoit corre hors par mi le geule, si le
venom from-him made run out through the-midst-of the mouth so him
tenoit si fort qu'il le faisoit esruullier et li faisoit les
held so strongly that-it him made goggle and of-him made the
iex torner en le teste, ne ne s'en pooit partir devant
eyes turn in the head nor not himself-therefrom could part before
la que li buhotiaus li avoit suchié chele maladie toute
there that the tube from-him had sucked that sickness all
hors; et avec tout chou, qui estoit plus malades, si le tenoit
out and with all this who was more sick so him held
plus longement, et quant uns hons qui n'estoit mie malades
more long and when a man who not-was at-all sick
le metoit a se bouque, ja ne le tenist ne peu ne grant.
it put to his mouth ever not him would-hold neither little nor much

Aprés devant chu moustier de Sainte Souphie, avoit une 86
Afterward before this minster of Saint Sophia there-had a
grosse colombe qui bien avoit trois brachies a un homme
great column which well had three arm-spans of a man
de groisseur, et si avoit bien chinquante toises de haut;
of thickness and so had well fifty fathoms of height
si estoit faite de marbre et puis de coivre par deseure le
so was made of marble and then of copper right above the
marbre, et estoit molt bien loiie de boines bendes de fer.
marble and was very well bound with good bands of iron
Lassus, seur le bout de chele coulombe, si avoit une pierre
Up-there on the top of that column so there-had a stone
qui bien avoit quinze piés de lonc et autant de lé. Seur
which well had fifteen feet of length and as-much of breadth On
chele pierre si avoit un empereeur jeté de coivre, seur un
that stone so there-had an emperor cast of copper on a
grant cheval de coivre, qui tendoit se main vers paienisme;
great horse of copper who stretched his hand toward heathendom
et avoit letres seur lui escrites qui disoient que juroit
and there-had letters on him written which said that he-swore
que ja li Sarrasin n'aroient triwes de lui, et en s'autre
that ever the Saracens not-would-have truce from him and in his-other
main tenoit une pume d'or et une crois seur le pume. Et
hand held an apple of-gold and a cross on the apple And
disoient li Griu que chou estoit Eracles li empereres; et
said the Greeks that this was Heraclius the emperor and
avoit bien, que seur le crupe du cheval, que seur le teste,
there-had well both on the croup of-the horse and on the head
que entor, dis aires de hairons, qui illuec aaroient cascun an.
and about ten nests of herons which there nested each year

87 Aprés, ailleurs en le chité, avoit un autre moustier que
Afterward elsewhere in the city there-had an other minster that
on apeloit le moustier des Set Apostres. Si disoit on qu'il
one called the minster of-the Seven Apostles So said one that-it
estoit encore plus rikes et plus nobles que li moustiers
was yet more rich and more noble than the minster
Sainte Souphie, et tant i avoit de rikeches et de
(of-)Saint Sophia and so-much there had of riches and of
nobleches que on ne vous saroit mi aconter le
nobilities that one not to-you would-know-how-to at-all recount the
nobleche ne le rikeche de chu moustier. Si i gesoient
nobility nor the richness of this minster So there lay
en chu moustier set cors d'apostres, et si i estoit le
in this minster seven bodies of-apostles and so there was the
colombe de marbre ou Nostre Sires fu loiés, anchois qu'il
column of marble where Our Lord was bound before that-he
fust mis en le crois; et si disoit on que Coustentins li
was put on the cross and so said one that Constantine the
empereres i gesoit, et Helaine, et assés autres empereeurs.
emperor there lay and Helen and plenty other emperors

The Gates, the Hippodrome, and the Columns

XXVII

A golden ball on the Golden Mantle gate keeps off thunder, and the Golden Gate opens only for an emperor coming home a conqueror. At the emperor's games copper beasts once played by enchantment. Two copper women point west, whence the city's conquerors will come, and to a vile place. Two hermits' columns foretell the city's fortunes, this conquest among them. At Blachernae the shroud rose upright every Friday, and Manuel lies in an unmatched tomb.

Or avoit ailleurs en le chité une porte que on apeloit le 88
Now there-had elsewhere in the city a gate that one called the
Mantiau d'or. Seur chele porte, si avoit un pumel d'or, qui
Mantle of-gold On that gate so there-had a ball of-gold which
estoit fais par tel encantement que li Griu disoient que, ja
was made by such enchantment that the Greeks said that ever
tant comme li pumiax i fust, caus de tounoirre ne carroit
so-long as the ball there were stroke of thunder not would-fall
en le chité; seur chu pumel avoit un image jeté de coivre,
in the city on this ball there-had an image cast of copper
qui avoit un mantel d'or afulé, si le tendoit avant seur sen
which had a mantle of-gold donned so it it-stretched forward on its
brach, et avoit letres escrites seur lui qui disoient que
arm and there-had letters written on it which said that
«tout chil», fait li ymages, «qui mainent en Constantinoble
all those says the image who dwell in Constantinople
un an, doivent avoir mantel d'or aussi comme jou ai».
a year ought have mantle of-gold just as I have
Ailleurs en le chité a une autre porte que on apele Portes 89
Elsewhere in the city there-is an other gate that one calls Gates
Ore. Seur chele porte avoit deux olifans jetés de coivre, qui
Golden On that gate there-had two elephants cast of copper which

si estoient grant que ch'estoit une fine mervelle. Ichele porte
so were great that this-was a pure marvel That gate
n'estoit onques ouverte devant la que li empereres revenoit
not-was ever opened before there that the emperor came-back
de bataille, et que il avoit tere conquise. Quant il revenoit
from battle and that he had land conquered When he came-back
de bataille et il avoit tere conquise, dont si venoit li clergiés
from battle and he had land conquered then so came the clergy
de le chité a pourchession encontre l'empereeur, si ouvroit on
of the city in procession to-meet the-emperor so opened one
chele porte, se li amenoit on un curre d'or qui estoit ausi
that gate so to-him brought one a chariot of-gold which was as
fais comme uns cars a quatre roes, que on apeloit curre; ens
made as a cart with four wheels that one called chariot right
en mi chu curre avoit un haut siege, et seur le siege
in the-midst-of this chariot there-had a high seat and on the seat
avoit une caiiere, et entor le caiiere avoit quatre colombes
there-had a chair and around the chair there-had four columns
qui portoient un habitacle qui aombroit le caiiere, qui sanloit
which bore a canopy which shaded the chair which seemed
qu'il fust tout d'or. Si seoit li empereres, en chele caiiere tous
that-it were all of-gold So sat the emperor in that chair all
coronés, si entroit en chele porte, si le menoit on seur chu
crowned so entered at that gate so him led one on this
curre, a grant goie et a grant feste, dusques en sen palais.
chariot with great joy and with great feast as-far into his palace
90 Ore en un autre lieu en le chité avoit une autre mervelle, que
Now in an other place in the city there-had an other marvel for
il i avoit une plache, qui pres estoit du palais de Bouke
it there had a square which near was to-the palace of Mouth
de Lion, que on apeloit les Jus l'empereeur. Ichele plache si
of Lion that one called the Games (of-)the-emperor That square so

a bien arbalestee et demie de lonc et pres d'une de lé;
has well crossbow-shot and half of length and near of-one of breadth
entor chele plache si i avoit bien trente degrés ou quarante,
around that square so there had well thirty steps or forty
la ou li Griu montoient pour eswarder les jus; et par
there where the Greeks mounted for to-watch the games and right
deseure ches degrés, si i avoit unes loges molt cointes et
above these steps so there had some boxes very elegant and
molt nobles, ou li empereres et l'empeerris se seoient
very noble where the emperor and the-empress themselves sat
quant on juoit, et li autre haut homme et les dames. Se i
when one played and the other high men and the ladies If there
avoit deus jus ensanle, quant on juoit; si se wagioient
had two games together when one played so themselves wagered
ensanle li empereres et l'empeerris que li uns des jus
together the emperor and the-empress that the one of-the games
giueroit miex de l'autre, et tout chil ensement qui les gius
would-play better than the-other and all those likewise who the games
esgardoient. Du lonc de chele plache, si avoit une mesiere
watched Along-the length of that square so there-had a wall
qui bien avoit quinze piés de haut et dis de lé; deseure
which well had fifteen feet of height and ten of breadth above
chele maisiere, si avoit il ymages d'ommes et de femmes et
that wall so had it images of-men and of women and
de chevaus et de bués et de cameus et de ors et de lions,
of horses and of oxen and of camels and of bears and of lions
et de molt de manieres de bestes getees de coivre, qui si
and of many of manners of beasts cast of copper which so
estoient bien faites et si natureument formees qu'il n'a si
were well made and so naturally formed that-it not-has so
boin maistre en paienisme ne en crestienté qui seust mie
good master in heathendom nor in Christendom who knew-how-to at-all

pourtraire ne si bien former ymages comme chil ymage estoient
portray nor so well form images as those images were
formé; et soloient cha en arriere giuer par encantement,
formed and were-wont here in past to-play by enchantment
mais ne juoient mais nient; et ches gius l'empereeur
but not played more at-all and these games (of-)the-emperor
esgarderent li Franchois a mervelle, quant il les virent.
looked-at the French for wonder when they them saw
91 Or avoit ailleurs en le chité une autre merveille. Il avoit deus
Now there-had elsewhere in the city an other marvel It had two
ymages jetés de coivre en forme de femme, si bien faites et
images cast of copper in form of woman so well made and
si natureument et si beles que trop; si n'i avoit chelui
so naturally and so fair that exceedingly so not-there had one
n'ait bien vint piés de haut. Si tendoit li uns de ches ymages
not-has well twenty feet of height So stretched the one of these images
se main vers Occident, et avoit letres escrites seur lui qui
its hand toward West and there-had letters written on it which
disoient: «De vers Occident venront chil qui Constantinoble
said From toward West will-come those who Constantinople
conquerront»; et li autres ymages tendoit main en un vilain
will-conquer and the other image stretched hand to a vile
lieu, si disoit: «Ichi,» fait li images, «les boutera on.» Ches
place so said Here says the image them will-thrust one These
deux ymages si seoient devant le cange qui molt soloit estre
two images so sat before the exchange which very was-wont to-be
rikes illuec, et si i soloient estre li rike cangeeur qui
rich there and so there were-wont to-be the rich money-changers who
avoient devant aus les grans mons de besans et les grans mons
had before them the great heaps of bezants and the great heaps

de pierres precieuses, devant chou que le chités fust prise;
of stones precious before this that the city was taken
mais il n'en i avoit tant adont quant le chités fu prise.
but it not-thereof there had so-many then when the city was taken
Encore i avoit il ailleurs en le chité une greigneur 92
Further there had it elsewhere in the city a greater
mervelle, que il i avoit deus colombes; si avoit biem
marvel for it there had two columns so had well
cascune trois brachies a homme de groisseur, et si avoit
each three arm-spans of man of thickness and so had
bien cascune chinquante toises de haut; et seur cascune
well each fifty fathoms of height and on each
de ches colombes manoit uns hermites lassus, en petis
of these columns dwelt a hermit up-there in small
habitacles qui i estoient; et si i avoit huis par dedens
dwellings which there were and so there had doors by within
les colombes par ou on i montoit. Par dehors ches
the columns by where one there mounted On outside these
columbes si estoient pourtraites et escrites par prophetie
columns so were portrayed and written by prophecy
toutes les aventures et toutes les conquestes qui sont
all the happenings and all the conquests which are
avenues en Coustantinoble, ne qui avenir i devoient. Ne
happened in Constantinople or which to-happen there were-to Nor
ne pooit on savoir l'aventure devant la qu'ele estoit avenue,
not could one know the-happening before there that-it was happened
et quant ele estoit avenue, dont si i alloient muser le
and when it was happened then so there went to-gaze the
gent, si veoient et aperchevoient dont a prisme l'aventure:
people so saw and perceived then at first the-happening
nis cheste conqueste que li Franchois le conquisent i
even this conquest that the French it conquered there

estoit escrite et pourtraite, et les nes dont on assali
was written and portrayed and the ships from-which one assailed
par coi le chités fu prise; ne ne le peurent li Griu savoir
by which the city was taken nor not it could the Greeks know
devant la que che fu avenu. Et quant che fu avenu, si ala
before there that this was happened And when this was happened so went
on warder et muser en ches colombes, si trova on que les
one to-look and gaze at these columns so found one that the
letres, qui estoient escrites seur les nes pourtraites, disoient
letters which were written on the ships portrayed said
que de vers Occident venroient une gent haut tondue a
that from toward West would-come a people high shorn with
costeles de fer, qui Constantinoble conquerroient. Toutes ches
coats of iron who Constantinople would-conquer All these
mervelles que je vous ai chi acontées, et encore assés plus
marvels that I to-you have here recounted and yet plenty more
que nous ne vous poons mie aconter, trouverent li Franchois
that we not to-you can at-all recount found the French
en Constantinoble, quant il l'eurent conquis; ne je ne quit
in Constantinople when they it-had conquered nor I not think
mie, par le mien ensient, que nus hons conterres peust
at-all by the my knowledge that any man teller could
nombrer mie toutes les abeïes de le chité, tant en i
number at-all all the abbeys of the city so-many of-them there
avoit il, que de moines que de nonnains, estre les autres
had it both of monks and of nuns besides the other
moustiers de le vile hors; et si nombroit on qu'il avoit
minsters of the town outside and so reckoned one that-it had
bien largement en le chité .xxx. m. prestres, que moines
well fully in the city thirty thousand priests both monks
que autres. Des autres Grius, des haus, des bas, de povres,
and others Of-the other Greeks of-the high of-the low of poor

de riches, de le grandeur de le vile, des palais, des autres
of rich of the greatness of the town of-the palaces of-the other
mervelles qui i sont vous lairons nous ester a dire; car
marvels which there are to-you will-leave we be to tell for
nus hons terriens, qui tant eust mes en le chité, ne le vous
any man earthly who so-long had dwelt in the city not it to-you
porroit nombrer ne aconter, que qui vous en conteroit
could number nor recount for whoever to-you thereof would-recount
le chentisme part de le riqueche, ne de le biauté, ne de le
the hundredth part of the richness nor of the beauty nor of the
nobleche qui estoit es abeïes et es moustiers et es
nobility which was in-the abbeys and in-the minsters and in-the
palais et en le vile, sanleroit il que che fust menchoingne,
palaces and in the town would-seem it that this were lie
ne ne cresriés vous mie. Et entre ches autres en eut
nor not would-believe you at-all And among these others of-them there-had
un autre des moustiers que on apeloit medame Sainte Marie
one other of-the minsters that one called my-lady Saint Mary
de Blakerne, ou li sydoines, la ou Nostres Sires fu
of Blachernae where the shroud there where Our Lord was
envolepés, i estoit, qui cascuns des venres se drechoit
wrapped there was which each of-the Fridays itself raised
tous drois, si que on i pooit bien veir le figure Nostre
all upright so that one therein could well see the figure (of-)Our
Seigneur, ne ne seut on onques, ne Griu, ne Franchois,
Lord nor not knew one ever neither Greek nor French
que chis sydoines devint quant le vile fu prise. Et si en
what this shroud became when the town was taken And so of-them
i avoit une autre des abeïes ou li boins empereres
there had an other of-the abbeys where the good emperor
Manuaus gesoit, qu'il ne nasqui onques cors seur tere, ne
Manuel lay that-it not was-born ever body on earth nor

sains, ne sainte, qui si rikement ne si noblement geust en
saint nor she-saint who so richly nor so nobly lay in
sepulture comme faisoit chis empereres. En chel abeïe si
tomb as did this emperor In that abbey so
estoit le tavle de marbre ou Nostre Sires fu estendus,
was the table of marble where Our Lord was laid-out
quant il fu despendus de le crois, et si i paroient
when he was taken-down from the cross and so there appeared
encore les lermes que Nostre Dame avoit plouré deseure.
still the tears that Our Lady had wept above

The Election of Baldwin

XXVIII

The marquis wants his own men among the electors, and the doge has the palaces put under common guard, for whoever is chosen. After fifteen days of discord the clergy of the host are made electors, and the doge chooses his ten through sworn men. After a mass of the Holy Spirit the twenty agree on Baldwin of Flanders, and the bishop of Soissons names him. In Saint Sophia he is vested, anointed, and crowned, and a stone Manuel bought for sixty-two thousand marks is hung at his neck.

93 Aprés avint que tout li conte et tout li haut home
Afterward happened that all the counts and all the high men
s'asanlerent un jor u palais de Bouke de Lion, que
themselves-assembled one day in-the palace of Mouth of Lion which
li marchis tenoit, et disent entr'aus qu'il fesisent
the marquis held and said among-themselves that-they should-make
empereeur et qu'il esleussent leur dis, et disent au duc
emperor and that-they should-choose their ten and said to-the doge
de Venice qu'il esleut les siens dis. Quant li marchis oï
of Venice that-he should-choose the his ten When the marquis heard

chou, si i vaut metre les siens et chiax que il cuidoit qui
this so there wished to-put the his and those whom he thought who
l'esleussent a empereur, et voloit estre empereres entresait.
him-would-choose as emperor and wished to-be emperor outright
Et li baron ne s'i acorderent mie que li marchis
And the barons not themselves-thereto agreed at-all that the marquis
i mesist les siens, mais il s'acorderent bien qu'il en
there should-put the his but they themselves-agreed well that-it of-them
i eust aucuns des siens. Quant li dux de Venice, qui
there should-have some of-the his When the doge of Venice who
molt ert preusdons et sages, vit chou, si parla oiant tous
very was worthy-man and wise saw this so spoke hearing all
et dist: «Seigneur, or m'entendés,» fist li dus, «je voel que
and said Lords now me-hear said the doge I wish that
anchois que on eslise empereeur, que li palais soient wardé
before that one choose emperor that the palaces be guarded
de le kemune warde de l'ost; car se on m'eslit a empereur,
by the common guard of the-host for if one me-chooses as emperor
que jou i voise tout maintenant sans nul contredit et
that I there go all at-once without any gainsaying and
que je soie saisis des palais, et ensement, se on eslit le
that I be seized of-the palaces and likewise if one chooses the
conte de Flandres, qu'il ait les palais sans nul contredit,
count of Flanders that-he have the palaces without any gainsaying
ou se on eslit le marchis, ou le conte Loeis, ou le conte
or if one chooses the marquis or the count Louis or the count
de Saint Pol, ou se on eslit un povre chevalier, que chis
of Saint Pol or if one chooses a poor knight that he
qui ert empereres ait les palais sans nul contredit, ne
who will-be emperor have the palaces without any gainsaying neither
de marchis, ne du conte de Flandres, ne d'un, ne d'autre.
of marquis nor of-the count of Flanders nor of-one nor of-other

94 Quant li marchis oï chou, si ne peut mie estre encontre,
When the marquis heard this so not could at-all be against
ains wida le palais que il tenoit; et on ala, si mist on
but quitted the palace that he held and one went so put one
wardes es palais de le communité de l'ost qui les palais
guards in-the palaces of the community of the-host who the palaces
warderoient. Quant li dux de Venice eut si faitement
would-guard When the doge of Venice had in-such wise
parlé, aprés si dist as barons qu'il esleussent les leur
spoken afterward so said to-the barons that-they should-choose the their
dis, que il aroit molt tost eslit les siens dis; et quant
ten for he would-have very soon chosen the his ten and when
li baron oïrent chou, si i vaut metre cascuns les siens.
the barons heard this so there wished to-put each the his
Li cuens de Flandres i vaut metre les siens, li cuens
The count of Flanders there wished to-put the his the count
Loeis, li cuens de Saint Pol et li autre rike homme, et
Louis the count of Saint Pol and the other rich men and
tant que onques a chele voie ne se peurent acorder
so-far that ever at that time not themselves could agree
quex il i mesissent ne eslisissent. Ains prisent un autre
which they there should-put nor should-choose But took an other
jour d'eslirre ches dis, et quant che vint au jour, si ne
day to-choose these ten and when this came to-the day so not
se peurent acorder quex il esleussent de rekief. Ains
themselves could agree which they should-choose of anew But
i voloit tous jours metre li marchis chiax que il cuidoit
there wished all days to-put the marquis those whom he thought
qui l'esleussent a empereeur, et voloit estre empereres aussi
who him-would-choose as emperor and wished to-be emperor as
comme par forche. Et dura bien cheste descorde quinze jors,
it-were by force And lasted well this discord fifteen days

qu'il ne se pooient concorder; si n'estoit jour qu'il
that-they not themselves could agree so not-was day that-they
n'assanlaissent pour chestui afaire, et tant que au deesrain
not-assembled for this affair and so-far that at-the last
se concorderent que li clergiés de l'ost, li vesque, li
themselves agreed that the clergy of the-host the bishops the
abé, qui i estoient, en fussent esliseeur. Adont, quant il
abbots who there were thereof should-be electors Then when they
se furent acordé, si ala li dux de Venice, si eslut les
themselves were agreed so went the doge of Venice so chose the
siens dis en tele maniere com je vous dirai. Il apela quatre
his ten in such manner as I to-you will-tell He called four
des plus preusdomes que il cuidoit en se tere, si leur fist
of-the most worthy-men that he thought in his land so them had
jurer seur sains que, a leur ensient, eslirroient dis des
swear on relics that to their knowledge they-would-choose ten of-the
plus preudommes de se tere qui en l'ost estoient, et il si
most worthy-men of his land who in the-host were and they so
fisent, si que quant il en apeloient un, qu'il l'estouvoit
did so that when they of-them called one that-it him-behooved
venir avant, ne ne li s'osoit puis parler ne conselier
to-come forward nor not to-him himself-dared thereafter speak nor counsel
a nului; ains le metoit on tantost en un moustier, et
with anyone but him put one at-once in a minster and
tout ensement les autres, tant que li dux eut les siens dis;
all likewise the others so-far that the doge had the his ten
et quant il furent tout en chu moustier, li dis Venicien
and when they were all in this minster the ten Venetians
et li vesque, si canta on une messe du Saint Esperit,
and the bishops so sang one a mass of-the Holy Spirit

que li Sains Esperis les conseillast, et qu'i les donnast
that the Holy Spirit them should-counsel and that-he them should-grant
a tel homme assener qui boins i fust et pourfis.
to such man light-upon who good therein were and profitable
95 Quant le messe fu cantee, si sanlerent li esliseeur et
When the mass was sung so assembled the electors and
parlerent en leur consel, et parlerent d'uns et d'autres,
spoke in their council and spoke of-ones and of-others
et tant que Venicien et vesque et abé et tout li vint
and so-far that Venetians and bishops and abbots and all the twenty
eslisseeur omniement s'acorderent que li cuens de Flandres
electors unanimously themselves-agreed that the count of Flanders
le fust, ne onques n'en i eut nul qui en fust
it should-be nor ever not-thereof there had anyone who thereof was
encontre. Quant il furent si acordé ensanle et leur consaus
against When they were so agreed together and their council
dut departir, si carkierent le parole a dire au vesque de
was-to break-up so charged the word to say to-the bishop of
Sessons. Quant il furent departi, si s'asanlerent tout chil
Soissons When they were parted so themselves-assembled all those
de l'ost por oïr et pour escouter qui on nommeroit a
of the-host for to-hear and for to-listen whom one would-name as
empereeur. Quant il furent assanlé, si furent tout coi, si
emperor When they were assembled so were all still so
avoient li pleuseur grant peur et grant doute que on ne
had the most great fear and great dread that one —
nommast le marchis, et chil qui se tenoient devers le
should-name the marquis and those who themselves held toward the
marchis avoient grant doute que on ne nommast autrui que
marquis had great dread that one — should-name another than
le marchis. Si comme il estoient si coi, si se leva li
the marquis So as they were so still so himself rose the

vesques de Sessons em piés, si leur dist: «Seigneur,» fist li
bishop of Soissons on feet so to-them said Lords said the
vesques, «par le quemun assentement de vous tous, fumes
bishop by the common assent of you all were
nous envoié a ceste eslection faire. Nous i avons eslut
we sent to this election make We therein have chosen
tel comme nous saviemes a nostre ensient qui boins i
such as we knew to our knowledge who good therein
est et en qui empires est bien emploiés et qui bien est
is and in whom empire is well bestowed and who well is
poissans de tenir loi et gentix hons et haus hons; nous
able to hold law and noble man and high man we
le vous nommerons: ch'est Bauduins, li cuens de Flandres.»
him to-you will-name this-is Baldwin the count of Flanders
Quant le parole fu oïe, si en furent tout li Franchois
When the word was heard so thereof were all the French
molt liés, et teus autres i eut qui en furent molt
very glad and such others there had who thereof were very
dolent, si comme chil qui devers le marchis se tenoient.
sorrowful so as those who toward the marquis themselves held
Quant li empereres fu eslus, si le prenent li vesque et 96
When the emperor was chosen so him take the bishops and
tout li haut baron et li Franchois, qui molt en furent
all the high barons and the French who very thereof were
lié, si l'en mainent il u palais de Bouke de Lion a
glad so him-thence lead they into-the palace of Mouth of Lion with
molt grant goie et a molt grant feste. Et quant li haut
very great joy and with very great feast And when the high
homme furent trestot laiens, si prisent jour de l'empereeur
men were all in-there so took day to the-emperor
coroner; et quant che vint au jour, si monterent et li
crown and when this came to-the day so mounted both the

vesque et li abé et trestout li haut baron et Venicien
bishops and the abbots and all the high barons both Venetians
et Franchois, si s'en alerent u palais de Bouke
and French so themselves-thence went to-the palace of Mouth
de Lion. Adont si en amenerent l'empereeur au moustier
of Lion Then so thence led the-emperor to-the minster
Sainte Souphie, et quant il furent venu au moustier,
(of-)Saint Sophia and when they were come to-the minster
si mena on l'empereur en un destour du moustier, en
so led one the-emperor into a recess of-the minster into
une cambre. La si le desvesti on de ses dras et si le
a chamber There so him unclothed one of his clothes and so him
descaucha on, si li caucha on unes vermelles cauches
unshod one so on-him put one some vermilion hose
de samit, se li caucha on uns saullers tous carkiés de
of samite so on-him put one some shoes all laden with
rikes pierres par deseure, puis se li vesti on une cote
rich stones right above then so on-him put one a coat
molt rike, qui toute estoit cousue a boutons d'or par
very rich which all was sewn with buttons of-gold in
devant et par derriere des espaulles dusques au chaint.
front and at back from-the shoulders as-far to-the waist
Et puis se li vesti on le palle: une maniere d'afulement
And then so on-him put one the pall a manner of-garment
estoit qui batoit seur le col du pié par devant, et par
was which beat on the neck of-the foot in front and at
derriere estoit si lons que il s'en chaingnoit, et puis
back was so long that he himself-therewith girded and then
se li reversoit on arriere par deseure le senestre brach,
so on-him threw-back one back right above the left arm
ensement comme un fanol, et estoit chus palles molt rikes
just as a maniple and was this pall very rich

et molt nobles et tous carkiés de rikes pierres precieuses.
and very noble and all laden with rich stones precious
Aprés se li asfula on par deseure un molt rike mantel,
Afterward so on-him donned one right above a very rich mantle
qui tous estoit carkiés de rikes pierres precieuses, et li
which all was laden with rich stones precious and the
aigle qui par dehors erent, estoient fait de pierres precieuses
eagles which on outside were were made of stones precious
et resplendissoient si que che sanloit que li mantiaus fust
and shone so that it seemed that the mantle were
alumés. Quant il fu si faitement vestus, si l'amena on
alight When he was in-such wise clothed so him-led one
devant l'autel; si comme on le mena devant l'autel, se
before the-altar so as one him led before the-altar so
li porta li cuens Loeis sen gonfanon emperial, et li
for-him carried the count Louis his gonfanon imperial and the
cuens de Saint Pol li porta s'espee, et li marchis li
count of Saint Pol for-him carried his-sword and the marquis for-him
porta se corone, et doi vesque soustenoient les deus bras
carried his crown and two bishops supported the two arms
le marchis qui le corone portoit, et doi autre vesque
(of-)the marquis who the crown carried and two other bishops
adestroient l'empereeur; et estoient li baron trestout molt
escorted the-emperor and were the barons all very
rikement vestu, ne si n'i avoit Franchois ne Venicien qui
richly clothed nor so not-there had Frenchman nor Venetian who
n'eust robe ou de samit ou de drap de soie. Et quant li
not-had robe either of samite or of cloth of silk And when the
empereres vint devant l'autel si s'agenoulla, et puis se li
emperor came before the-altar so himself-knelt and then so from-him
osta on le mantel et puis le palle; si remest en pure le
removed one the mantle and then the pall so remained in mere the

cote, se li descousi on le cote des boutons d'or par
coat so from-him unsewed one the coat from-the buttons of-gold in
devant et par derriere, si qu'il fu tous nus puis le chaint
front and at back so that-he was all naked from the waist
en amont, et puis si l'enoinst on. Quant il fu enoins,
on up and then so him-anointed one When he was anointed
se li recousi on le cote as boutons d'or, et puis se
so for-him sewed-back one the coat with-the buttons of-gold and then so
le revesti on le palle, et puis le mantel li frema on
on-him clothed-again one the pall and then the mantle on-him fastened one
seur l'espaulle; et puis, quant il fu si vestus, et doi vesque
on the-shoulder and then when he was so clothed and two bishops
tenoient le corone seur l'autel, si alerent tout li vesque,
held the crown on the-altar so went all the bishops
si prisent le corone tout ensanle, se le beneïrent et si le
so took the crown all together so it blessed and so it
prinsennierent, se li misent u chief; et puis aprés se
signed so on-him put on-the head and then afterward so
li pendi on au col une molt grant rike pierre en liu de
on-him hung one at-the neck a very great rich stone in place of
fremal, que li empereres Manuaus acata .lxij.m. mars.
clasp which the emperor Manuel bought sixty-two-thousand marks

The Treasure Shared

XXIX

Baldwin is seated in the chair of Constantine. Only the coarse silver is shared, and Aleaume of Clari wins a knight's share when the count of Saint Pol testifies that he did more in arms than three hundred knights. Baldwin rides out to conquer the land and is received everywhere with keys and processions. The marquis, who has married Kyrsac's widow and been told Salonika is not Baldwin's alone to give, follows him and threatens to leave him if he enters it.

Quant il l'eurent coroné, si l'assisent en une haute caiiere, et 97
When they him-had crowned so him-seated in a high chair and
fu illuec tant que le messe fu cantee, et tenoit en se main
was there so-long that the mass was sung and held in his hand
sen septre et en l'autre main une pume d'or et une croisete
his scepter and in the-other hand an apple of-gold and a little-cross
par deseure; et valoient mix li warnement qu'il avoit seur lui
right above and were-worth more the adornments that-he had on him
que li tresors a un rike roi ne faiche. Et quant il eut messe
than the treasure of a rich king — would-do And when he had mass
oïe, si li amena on un blanc cheval ou il monta; si
heard so to-him brought one a white horse on-which he mounted so
l'en ramenerent li baron en sen palais de Bouke de Lion,
him-thence led-back the barons into his palace of Mouth of Lion
si le fist on seir en le caiiere Coustentin. Adont, quant il eut
so him had one sit in the chair (of-)Constantine Then when he had
sis en le caiiere Coustentin, se le tinrent tout pour empereeur,
sat in the chair (of-)Constantine so him held all for emperor
et tout li Griu qui illuec estoient l'aouroient tout comme saint
and all the Greeks who there were him-adored all as holy
empereeur; et puis si furent les tavles mises, si mengna li
emperor and then so were the tables set so ate the

empereres et tout li baron avec lui u palais. Quant on eut
emperor and all the barons with him in-the palace When one had
mengié, si se departirent li baron et alerent s'ent
eaten so themselves departed the barons and went themselves-thence
tout a leur ostex, et li empereres remest en sen palais.
all to their lodgings and the emperor remained in his palace
98 Aprés avint a un jour que li baron s'asanlerent et
Afterward happened on a day that the barons themselves-assembled and
disent entr'ax que on partesist l'avoir. Si n'en departi
said among-themselves that one should-divide the-wealth So not-thereof distributed
on fors le gros argent qui i estoit, les paieles d'argent
one except the coarse silver which there was the basins of-silver
seulement que les dames de le chité portoient as bains; si
only which the ladies of the city carried to-the baths so
en dona on a cascun chevalier, a cascun serjant a cheval
thereof gave one to each knight to each sergeant on horse
et a totes les autres menues gens de l'ost, as femmes et a
and to all the other small people of the-host to-the women and to
enfans, a cascun. Tant que Aliaumes de Clari, li clers, dont
children to each So-far that Aleaume of Clari the clerk of-whom
je vous ai parlé par devant, qui si i fu preus de sen
I to-you have spoken just before who so there was valiant of his
cors et qui tant i fist d'armes, comme nous vous avons
body and who so-much there did of-arms as we to-you have
dit par devant, dist qu'il voloit partir comme chevaliers; et
said just before said that-he wished to-share as knight and
aucuns dist que che n'estoit mie drois que il partesist comme
someone said that this not-was at-all right that he should-share as
chevaliers, et il dist que si estoit, que ausi avoit il eu cheval
knight and he said that so it-was for as had he had horse
et hauberc comme uns chevaliers, et que autant i avoit il
and hauberk as a knight and that as-much there had he

fait d'armes et plus que teux chevaliers i avoit il; tant que
done of-arms and more than such knight there had it so-far that
li cuens de Saint Pol fist le jugement que aussi devoit il
the count of Saint Pol made the judgment that as ought he
partir comme uns chevaliers, que plus i avoit il fait d'armes
share as a knight for more there had he done of-arms
et de proeches, che li tesmoingna li cuens de Saint Pol,
and of prowess this for-him testified the count of Saint Pol
que teux trois chens chevaliers en i eut il ne fisent, et
than such three hundred knights of-them there had it — did and
par tant devoit il bien partir comme uns chevaliers. La si
by that ought he well share as a knight There so
desraisna li clers que li clerc partiroient tout aussi comme
won the clerk that the clerks would-share all just as
li chevalier. Adont fu partis tous li gros argens, si comme
the knights Then was shared all the coarse silver so as
je vous ai dit, et li autres avoirs, li ors, li drap de soie,
I to-you have said and the other wealth the gold the cloths of silk
dont il avoit tant que ch'estoit une fine mervelle, se remest
whereof it had so-much that this-was a pure marvel so remained
a partir et fu mis en kemune warde de l'ost, en le warde
to share and was put in common guard of the-host in the guard
a teux gens que on cuidoit qui loialment le wardaissent.
of such people whom one thought who loyally it would-guard
Aprés ne demora mie graument quant li empereres manda 99
Afterward not delayed at-all greatly when the emperor summoned
tous les haus barons et le duc de Venice et le conte Loeis
all the high barons and the doge of Venice and the count Louis
et le conte de Saint Pol et tous les haus hommes, et dist
and the count of Saint Pol and all the high men and said
qu'il voloit aler conquerre de le tere, et tant que on atira
that-he wished to-go to-conquer of the land and so-far that one arranged

qui avec l'empereeur iroit, et atira on liquel remanrroient
who with the-emperor would-go and arranged one which would-remain
pour le chité warde. Et atira on que li dux de Venice
for the city guard And arranged one that the doge of Venice
demora, et li cuens Loeis, et de leur gens avec aus; et
remained and the count Louis and of their people with them and
si demora li marchis, si espousa le femme Kyrsaac, qui
so remained the marquis so wedded the wife (of-)Kyrsac who
empereres fu, qui estoit suers le roi de Hongerie. Quant
emperor was who was sister (of-)the king of Hungary When
li marchis vit que li empereres dut mouvoir pour aler
the marquis saw that the emperor was-to set-out for to-go
conquerre le terre, si vint, si demanda a l'empereur que il
to-conquer the land so came so asked of the-emperor that he
li donnast le roiame de Salenike, une tere qui estoit bien
to-him should-give the kingdom of Salonika a land which was well
quinze journees loins de Coustantinoble, et li empereres
fifteen days far from Constantinople and the emperor
li respondi qu'ele n'estoit mie siwe a donner, car li baron
to-him answered that-it not-was at-all his to give for the barons
de l'ost et li Venicien i avoient le greigneur partie;
of the-host and the Venetians therein had the greater part
mais, tant comme a lui en asferoit, li dounoit il molt
but as-much as to him thereof pertained to-him gave he very
volentiers et molt ameement, mais le partie as barons de
gladly and very lovingly but the part of-the barons of
l'ost ne as Veniciens ne li pooit il mie donner. Quant
the-host nor of-the Venetians not to-him could he at-all give When
li marchis vit qu'il n'en pooit mie avoir, s'en fu tous
the marquis saw that-he not-thereof could at-all have so-thereat was all
courchiés. Aprés li empereres s'en ala la ou il eut
angered Afterward the emperor himself-thence went there where he had

pourposé a aler a toute se gent. Si comme il venoit as
resolved to go with all his people So as he came to-the
castiax et as chités, se li rendoit on sans contredit
castles and to-the cities so to-him rendered one without gainsaying
et aportoit li on les cles encontre lui, et venoient li
and brought to-him one the keys to-meet him and came the
prestre et li clerc revestu a pourchession encontre lui et
priests and the clerks vested in procession to-meet him and
le rechevoient, et l'aouroient li Griu tout comme saint
him received and him-adored the Greeks all as holy
empereur. Et metoit li empereres ses wardes es castiaus
emperor And put the emperor his guards in-the castles
et es chités partout si comme il venoit; et tant que il
and in-the cities everywhere so as he came and so-far that he
conquist bien de le tere de si a quinze journées loins de
conquered well of the land as far as fifteen days far from
Coustantinoble, et tant que il vint a une journee pres de
Constantinople and so-far that he came to a day near of
Salenike. Entre ches entrefaites que li empereres conquerroit
Salonika Between these doings that the emperor conquered
si le terre, si estoit li marchis esmus a toute se femme et
so the land so was the marquis set-out with all his wife and
a tote se gent a venir aprés l'empereeur et si qu'il atainst
with all his people to come after the-emperor and so that-he overtook
l'ost l'empereeur anchois que li empereres venist a Salenike.
the-host (of-)the-emperor before that the emperor came to Salonika
Et quant il eut l'ost atainte, si s'ala logier bien une liwe
And when he had the-host overtaken so himself-went to-lodge well a league
en sus, et quant il se fu logiés, si prist messages, si les
away off and when he himself was lodged so took messengers so them
envoia a l'empereeur, et se li manda qu'il n'alast mie
sent to the-emperor and so to-him sent-word that-he not-should-go at-all

en se tere de Salenike que on li avoit donnee, car bien
into his land of Salonika which one to-him had given for well
seust il que s'il i aloit, qu'il n'iroit plus avec lui,
should-know he that if-he there went that-he not-would-go more with him
ne il plus ne se tenroit a lui, ains s'en retorneroit
nor he more not himself would-hold to him but himself-thence would-return
arriere en Coustantinoble et feroit le miex qu'il porroit.
back into Constantinople and would-do the best that-he could

Boniface Rebels

XXX

The barons refuse the marquis, who takes one of the emperor's cities by treason and besieges Adrianople, showing its people Kyrsac's widow and her children. Baldwin takes Salonika, and Peter of Amiens dies near Philippi. A truce with the marquis is made only with great pains, and the returning knights find the city and its wealth divided without them. When John the Vlach and his men ask Peter of Bracieux why he came so far, Peter answers that Troy belonged to his forefathers.

100 Quant li baron de le compaingnie l'empereeur oïrent chu
When the barons of the company (of-)the-emperor heard this
mant que li marchis avoit mandé, si en eurent molt grant
message that the marquis had sent so thereof had very great
engaingne et molt grant duel; se li remanderent arriere au
indignation and very great grief so to-him sent-word-back back to-the
marchis que pour lui ne pour sen mant n'i lairoient il
marquis that for him nor for his message not-there would-leave-off they
mie a aler plus que pour nient, car le tere n'estoit mie siwe.
at-all to go more than for nothing for the land not-was at-all his

Quant li marchis oï chou, si s'en retorna arriere, si 101
When the marquis heard this so himself-thence returned back so
s'en vint a une chité ou li empereres avoit mis de
himself-thence came to a city where the emperor had put of
ses gens pour le chité warder; si le prent il par traïson.
his people for the city to-guard so it takes he by treason
Quant il eut chele chité prise, si i mist wardes de se
When he had that city taken so there put guards of his
gent; et puis quant il eut che fait, si s'en vint a une
people and then when he had this done so himself-thence came to an
autre chité, Andernople avoit a non, ou li empereres avoit
other city Adrianople had as name where the emperor had
mis de se gent, si l'assist, et fist drechier ses perrieres et
put of his people so it-besieged and had raised his petraries and
ses mangouniaus pour assalir a le chité, et chil de le chité
his mangonels for to-assail at the city and those of the city
se contretinrent bien encontre lui. Et quant il vit que
themselves held-out well against him And when he saw that
il ne les porroit prendre par forche, si parla a chiax qui
he not them could take by force so spoke to those who
estoient as murs, et si leur dist: «Ba! seigneur, de ne
were on-the walls and so to-them said Bah lords what not
connissiés vous que che fust chi femme Kyrsaac l'empereeur?»
know you that this was here wife (of-)Kyrsac the-emperor
Si amenoit se femme avant, et disoit se femme: «Ba! de
So brought his wife forward and said his wife Bah what
ne me connissiés vous que je soie empereris et de ne
not me know you that I am empress and what not
connissiés vous mes deux enfans que jou euch de Kyrsaac
know you my two children that I had by Kyrsac
l'empereeur?» Si amenoit avant ses enfans, tant que uns sages
the-emperor So brought forward her children so-far that a wise

hons de le chité respondi: «Ouil», fist chis, «nous connissons
man of the city answered Yes said this-one we know
bien que che fu femme Kyrsaac et que che furent si
well that this was wife (of-)Kyrsac and that these were his
enfant. — Ba!» fist li marchis, «pour coi ne connissiés
children Bah said the marquis for what not know
vous dont l'un des enfans a seigneur? — Je le vous dirai»,
you then the-one of-the children as lord I it to-you will-tell
fist chis, «alés en Constantinoble et faites loi coroner; et
said this-one go into Constantinople and have him crowned and
quant il ara sis en le caiiere Coustentin et nous le
when he will-have sat in the chair (of-)Constantine and we it
sarons, adont si en ferons chou que faire en deverons.»
will-know then so thereof we-will-do this that to-do thereof we-shall-owe
102 Entre ches entrefaites que li marchis ouvra ensi, si ala li
Between these doings that the marquis wrought thus so went the
empereres a Salenike, si l'assist; et quant il l'eut assise, si fu
emperor to Salonika so it-besieged and when he it-had besieged so was
l'os si povre qu'il n'i avoit mie pain a paistre plus de
the-host so poor that-it not-there had at-all bread to feed more than
chent hommes, mais char et vin avoient il assés. Et n'i
hundred men but flesh and wine had they plenty And not-there
sist mie longement li empereres, quant on li rendi le chité;
sat at-all long the emperor when one to-him rendered the city
et quant le chités li fu rendue, si eut puis assés chou que
and when the city to-him was rendered so had then plenty this that
mestier li fu et pain et vin et char. Et puis si i mist li
need to-him was both bread and wine and flesh And then so there put the
empereres ses wardes, et puis n'eut mie consel d'aler avant; ains
emperor his guards and then not-had at-all counsel to-go forward but
s'en retorna ariere a revenir s'ent en Coustantinoble.
himself-thence returned back to come-back himself-thence into Constantinople

Adont si avint molt grant damaches et molt grans deus en 103
Then so happened very great harm and very great grief in
l'ost, que mes sires Pierres d'Amiens, li biaus et li preus,
the-host for my lord Peter of-Amiens the fair and the valiant
morut au repairier, a une chité, le Blanche l'apeloit on, qui
died at-the returning at a city the White it-called one which
estoit molt pres de Phelipe, la ou Alixandres fu nes, et si
was very near of Philippi there where Alexander was born and so
morurent bien chinquante chevaliers en chele voie. Et si comme
died well fifty knights on that way And so as
li empereres s'en revenoit, si oï les nouveles que li
the emperor himself-thence came-back so heard the news that the
marchis avoit prise une de ses chités par traïson et qu'il i
marquis had taken one of his cities by treason and that-he there
avoit mises ses wardes de se gent et avoit assise Andernople.
had put his guards of his people and had besieged Adrianople
Quant li empereres et li baron de l'ost oïrent chou, si 104
When the emperor and the barons of the-host heard this so
furent si corchié et si tormenté que trop, et manechierent
were so angered and so tormented that exceedingly and threatened
le marchis et se gent que s'il les ataingnoient, qu'il les
the marquis and his people that if-they them overtook that-they them
decauperoient tous, ne ne le lairoient pour homme vivant.
would-cut-to-pieces all nor not it would-leave-off for man living
Quant li marchis seut que li empereres revenoit, si eut
When the marquis knew that the emperor was-coming-back so had
molt grant peur, si comme chis qui molt avoit meffait, si que
very great fear so as he who much had misdone so that
a paines se seut il consellier, et tant que il manda en
with pains himself knew-how-to he counsel and so-far that he sent-word into
Coustantinoble au duc de Venice et au conte Loeis et as
Constantinople to-the doge of Venice and to-the count Louis and to-the

autres barons qui i estoient remés qu'il se meteroit en leur
other barons who there were remained that-he himself would-put in their
eswart et qu'il amenderoit par aus chou qu'il avoit mesfait;
judgment and that-he would-amend by them this that-he had misdone
tant que li dux et li cuens et li autre baron, quant il
so-far that the doge and the count and the other barons when they
oïrent que li marchis voloit amender par aus chou qu'il avoit
heard that the marquis wished to-amend by them this that-he had
mesfait et entrepris, si envoierent quatre messages a l'empereur,
misdone and undertaken so sent four messengers to the-emperor
et manderent lui k'ensi faitement leur avoit li marchis
and sent-word to-him that-thus wise to-them had the marquis
mandé, et que il ne li fesist mal, ne a lui ne a se gent.
sent-word and that he not to-him should-do harm neither to him nor to his people
105 Quant li baron et li chevalier de l'ost oïrent chou, si
When the barons and the knights of the-host heard this so
respondirent que chou ne valoit riens qu'il ne hounesissent
answered that this not availed anything that-they — should-shame
le marchis et se gent et qu'il ne les decaupaissent tous,
the marquis and his people and that-they — them should-cut-to-pieces all
si les pooient ataindre, et tant que a grans paines les
if them they-could overtake and so-far that with great pains them
en apaisa on, mais que toutes heures donnerent il triwes
thereof appeased one but that all the-same gave they truce
le marchis. Aprés si demanderent li baron as messages
(to-)the marquis Afterward so asked the barons of-the messengers
des nouveles de Coustantinoble et que on i faisoit; et
of-the news of Constantinople and what one there did and
li message respondirent que on i faisoit bien, et que il
the messengers answered that one there did well and that they
avoient l'avoir parti, qui estoit demorés, et le vile. «Qui?»
had the-wealth divided which was remained and the town What

fisent li chevalier et li joule bacheler de l'ost, «nostre avoir
said the knights and the young bachelors of the-host our wealth
avés vous parti, dont nous avons souffert les grans paines et
have you divided whereof we have suffered the great pains and
les grans travaus, les fains et les sois et les frois et les
the great travails the hungers and the thirsts and the colds and the
caus, si l'avés parti sans nous? Tenés!» faisoient il as
heats so it-you-have divided without us Hold said they to-the
messages, «veschi men wage», faisoit li uns, «que je vous
messengers behold-here my gage said the one that I to-you
mousterrai que vous estes tout traïteur!» Resaloit uns autres
will-prove that you are all traitors Leapt-in-turn an other
avant, si disoit aussi, et li autres aussi, si que il furent si
forward so said also and the other also so that they were so
iré durement qu'il vaurrent les messages tous decauper,
wrathful greatly that-they wished the messengers all to-cut-to-pieces
et si que pour un peu qu'il ne les ochisent; et tant que
and so that for a little that-they — them killed and so-far that
li empereres et li haut homme de l'ost i misent consel
the emperor and the high men of the-host therein put counsel
et plus bele concorde que il peurent, et qu'il s'en
and more fair concord that they could and that-they themselves-thence
vinrent ariere ensanle en Coustantinoble. Et quant il furent
came back together into Constantinople And when they were
revenu, si n'en i eut onques nul qui seust rassener
returned so not-thereof there had ever anyone who knew-how-to find-the-way
a sen ostel, car li ostel dont il estoient parti ne leur
to his lodging for the lodgings whence they were departed not to-them
estoient mie demoré, pour chou que on avoit le chité
were at-all remained for this that one had the city
partie, et leur maisnies avoient pris leur ostex ailleurs en
divided and their households had taken their lodgings elsewhere in

le chité, si que il leur couvenoit querre leur ostex en sus
the city so that it them behooved to-seek their lodgings away off
de chiax dont il estoient parti bien une liwe ou deus.
from those whence they were departed well a league or two
106 Or aviemes evlié a conter une aventure qu'il avint
Now we-had forgotten to recount an adventure that-it happened
a monseigneur Pierrom de Braiechoel. Il avint que li
to my-lord Peter of Bracieux It happened that the
empereres Henris estoit en ost, et Jehans li Blaks et
emperor Henry was in host and John the Vlach and
li Commain si estoient corut en le tere l'empereeur, et
the Cumans so were run into the land (of-)the-emperor and
s'estoient logié bien deus liwes ou mains loins de l'ost
themselves-were lodged well two leagues or less far from the-host
l'empereeur, et avoient molt oï parler de monseigneur
(of-)the-emperor and had much heard speak of my-lord
Pierron de Braiechoel et de se boine chevalerie, et tant
Peter of Bracieux and of his good knighthood and so-far
qu'il manderent un jour monseigneur Pierron de Braiechoel
that-they sent-word one day (to-)my-lord Peter of Bracieux
par messages qu'il parleroient molt volentiers a lui un jor
by messengers that-they would-speak very gladly to him one day
et par conduit; et mesires Pierres respondi que, s'il avoit
and under safe-conduct and my-lord Peter answered that if-he had
sauf conduit, qu'il i iroit volentiers parler a aus, et
safe conduct that-he there would-go gladly to-speak to them and
tant que li Blak et li Commain envoierent boins ostages
so-far that the Vlachs and the Cumans sent good hostages
a l'ost l'empereeur tant que mesires Pierres fust revenus.
to the-host (of-)the-emperor until that my-lord Peter should-be returned
Adont si ala mesires Pierres, lui quart de chevaliers, si
Then so went my-lord Peter him fourth of knights so

monta seur un grant cheval; si comme il vint pres de l'ost
mounted on a great horse so as he came near of the-host
as Blaks et Jehans li Blaks seut qu'il venoit, si ala
of-the Vlachs and John the Vlach knew that-he was-coming so went
encontre lui et des haus hommes de Blakie avec; si
to-meet him and some-of-the high men of Wallachia with so
le saluerent et bienvignierent et si l'eswarderent a molt
him greeted and welcomed and so him-gazed-at with very
grant paine, car il estoit molt grans, et parlerent a lui
great pains for he was very great and spoke to him
d'une coses et d'autres, et tant qu'il li disent: «Sire,
of-some things and of-others and so-far that-they to-him said Lord
nous nous merveillons molt de vo boine chevalerie, et si
we ourselves marvel much at your good knighthood and so
nous merveillons mout que vous estes quis en chest païs,
ourselves marvel much what you are seeking in this country
qui de si loingtaines teres estes, qui chi estes venu pour
who from so distant lands are who here are come for
conquerre tere. De n'avés vous», fisent il, «teres en vos
to-conquer land What not-have you said they lands in your
païs dont vous vous puissiés warir?» Et mesires Pierres
countries whereby you yourselves may keep And my-lord Peter
respondi: «Ba!» fist il, «de n'avés vous oï comment Troies
answered Bah said he what not-have you heard how Troy
le grant fu destruite ne par quel tor? — Ba ouil!» fisent
the great was destroyed or by what trick Bah yes said
li Blak et li Commain, «nous l'avons bien oï dire, mout
the Vlachs and the Cumans we it-have well heard tell much
a que che ne fu. — Ba!» fist mesires Pierres, «Troies fu
has-been that this not was Bah said my-lord Peter Troy was
a nos anchiseurs, et chil qui en escaperent si s'en
of our ancestors and those who thence escaped so themselves-thence

vinrent manoir la dont nous sommes venu; et pour che
came to-dwell there whence we are come and for this
que fu a nos anchisieurs, sommes nous chi venu conquerre
that it-was of our ancestors are we here come to-conquer
tere.» A tant si prist congié, si s'en revint ariere.
land With that so took leave so himself-thence came-back back

The Fiefs, and the Death of Murzuphlus

XXXI

The emperor takes a quarter of the city, the Venetians and pilgrims share the rest, and the land is given out in fiefs. Thierry, brother of the count of Loos, captures Murzuphlus in a pass, and Baldwin imprisons him. On the doge's advice, high justice for a high man, he is thrown from one of the two columns on which the city's fortunes were written. The marquis makes peace with the emperor, who is blamed for not calling the barons, and has Salonika.

107 Quant li empereres fu revenus et li baron qui avec lui
When the emperor was returned and the barons who with him
alerent et il eurent conquis grant partie de le tere et bien
went and they had conquered great part of the land and well
soisante chités, estre les castiaus et les viles hors, et le
sixty cities besides the castles and the towns outside and the
chités de Coustantinoble fu partie, si que li empereres en
city of Constantinople was divided so that the emperor thereof
eut le quarte partie franke, et les autres trois parties furent
had the fourth part free and the other three parts were
departies si que li Venicien en eurent le motié des trois
divided so that the Venetians thereof had the half of-the three
parties et li pelerin l'autre. Si devisa on aprés a partir
parts and the pilgrims the-other So arranged one afterward to divide

le tere qui estoit conquise; si departi on avant as contes
the land which was conquered so distributed one first to-the counts
et puis aprés as autres haus hommes, et eswardoit on
and then afterward to-the other high men and considered one
selonc chou qu'il estoit plus rikes hons et plus haus hons
according-to this that-he was more rich man and more high man
et qu'il avoit eu plus de gent de se maisnie en l'ost, se
and that-he had had more of people of his household in the-host so
li donnoit on plus tere. Si i eut tel a cui on donna
to-him gave one more land So there had such to whom one gave
deus chens fiés a chevalier, a tel i eut chent, a tel i
two hundred fiefs of knight to such there had hundred to such there
eut soisante et dis, a tel i eut soisante, a tel i eut
had sixty and ten to such there had sixty to such there had
quarante, a tel i eut vint, a tel i eut dis, et chil qui le
forty to such there had twenty to such there had ten and those who the
mains en avoient si en avoient set ou sis, et valoit li
least thereof had so thereof had seven or six and was-worth the
fiés trois chens livrees d'angevins; et disoit on a cascun
fief three hundred pounds'-worth of-Angevins and said one to each
des haus homes: «Vous arés tant de fiés, et vous tant,
of-the high men You will-have so-many of fiefs and you so-many
et vous tant, s'en fieverés vos hommes et chiaus
and you so-many so-thereof you-will-enfeoff your men and those
qui de vous vaurront tenir, et si arés chele chité, et
who of you will-wish to-hold and so you-will-have that city and
vous chelu, et vous chel autre», et les seigneries qui i
you that-one and you that other and the lordships which thereto
apendoient. Quant on eut si faitement donné a cascun se
pertained When one had in-such wise given to each his

partie, si aloient li conte et li haut homme veir leur teres
part so went the counts and the high men to-see their lands
et leur chités et y metoient leur ballius et leur wardes.
and their cities and there put their bailiffs and their guards
108 Tant qu'il avint un jour que mesires Tierris, li freres
So-far that-it happened one day that my-lord Thierry the brother
le conte de Los, aloit veir se tere; si comme il en
(of-)the count of Loos went to-see his land so as he thence
aloit, si encontra par aventure un jor Morchofle le traïteur,
went so met by chance one day Murzuphlus the traitor
a un destroit, qui s'en aloit ne sai ou. Si avoit
at a pass who himself-thence went not I-know where So he-had
en se compaignie dames et demiseles et assés autre gent,
in his company ladies and damsels and plenty other people
et chevauchoit cointement et noblement comme empereres
and rode elegantly and nobly as emperor
a tout tant de gent comme il pooit. Et mesires Tierris
with all as-much of people as he could And my-lord Thierry
ne fist mais el, se li keurt il sus et fist tant, et
not did more else so on-him runs he upon and did so-much both
il et se gent, qu'il le prist par forche; et quant il l'eut
he and his people that-he him took by force and when he him-had
pris, si l'en amena en Coustantinoble, si le rendi a
taken so him-thence led into Constantinople so him rendered to
l'empereeur Bauduin. Quant li empereres le vit, si le fist
the-emperor Baldwin When the emperor him saw so him had
metre en prison et l'i fist bien warder.
put in prison and him-there had well guarded
109 Quant Morchofles fu en prison, si manda li empereres
When Murzuphlus was in prison so summoned the emperor
Bauduins un jour tous ses barons et tous les plus haus qui
Baldwin one day all his barons and all the most high who

estoient en le tere de Coustantinoble qu'il venissent u
were in the land of Constantinople that-they should-come to-the
palais, le duc de Venice, le conte Loeis, le conte de Saint Pol
palace the doge of Venice the count Louis the count of Saint Pol
et tous les autres, et il i vinrent. Et quant il furent
and all the others and they there came And when they were
venu, si leur dist si faitement li empereres Bauduins qu'il
come so to-them said in-such wise the emperor Baldwin that-he
avoit Morchofle en prison, et leur demanda qu'il l'en
had Murzuphlus in prison and of-them asked what-they him-thereof
looient qu'il en fesist, tant que li un disent que on le
advised that-he thereof should-do so-far that the ones said that one him
pendist, et li autre disent que on le trainast, tant que li
should-hang and the others said that one him should-drag so-far that the
dux de Venice dist que trop estoit haus hons pour pendre:
doge of Venice said that too was high man for to-hang
«Mais de haut home», fist li dux, «haute justiche je vous
But of high man said the doge high justice I to-you
dirai», fist li dux, «que on en fache: il a en chele vile
will-tell said the doge what one thereof should-do it has in that town
deus hautes colombes, n'i a chelui qui n'ait tost soisante
two high columns not-there has one which not-has fully sixty
toises ou chinquante de haut; si le fache on monter en
fathoms or fifty of height so him should-have one mount on
som l'une, et puis si le faiche on tresbuskier jus a tere.»
top-of the-one and then so him should-have one tumble down to earth
Or estoit cho de ches deus colombes ou sus li hermite
Now was this of these two columns where up-there the hermits
manoient, et la ou les aventures de Coustantinoble estoient
dwelt and there where the happenings of Constantinople were
escrites, si com je vous ai dit par devant. A chou que li
written so as I to-you have said just before To this that the

dux dist s'acorderent li baron. Si prent on Morchofle, si le
doge said themselves-agreed the barons So takes one Murzuphlus so him
mainne on a une de ches coulombes, si le fait on monter
leads one to one of these columns so him has one mount
en son par les degrés qui dedens estoient. Quant Morchofles
on top by the steps which within were When Murzuphlus
fu lassus, si le bouta on jus a tere, si que il fu tous
was up-there so him thrust one down to earth so that he was all
esmiés. Tele venjanche prist on de Morchofle le traïteur.
shattered Such vengeance took one on Murzuphlus the traitor
110 Aprés chou que les teres furent si departies comme je vous ai
After this that the lands were so divided as I to-you have
dit, si avint que le pais fu faite du marchis et de l'empereeur,
said so happened that the peace was made of-the marquis and of the-emperor
si que li empereres en fu blasmés, pour chou que n'i
so that the emperor thereof was blamed for this that not-thereto
apela mie tous les haus barons. Toutes eures si demanda li
he-called at-all all the high barons All the-same so asked the
marchis le roiame de Salenike, et toutes heures l'eut il et li
marquis the kingdom of Salonika and all the-same it-had he and to-him
donna li empereres. Et quant li roiames li fu otriiés, si ala
gave the emperor And when the kingdom to-him was granted so went
li marchis a toute se femme et a toute se gent, et quant
the marquis with all his wife and with all his people and when
il vint la, si en prist les warnestures, s'en fu sires et rois.
he came there so thereof took the garrisons so-thereof was lord and king

Adrianople

XXXII

Henry asks for Adramyttium, and the Venetians get Crete, Corfu, and Modon. The count of Saint Pol dies. Baldwin besieges rebel Adrianople, but John the Vlach and the Cumans in their pelisses, whom the French despise, rout the host. The emperor vanishes, Count Louis and three hundred knights are lost, and the doge flees: God's vengeance, Robert says, for their pride, their bad faith to the poor, and their sins in the city. The barons send for Henry.

Aprés mesires Henris, li freres l'empereeur, demanda le 111
Afterward my-lord Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor asked the
roiaume l'Andremite, qui estoit outre le brach Saint Jorge,
kingdom (of-)Adramyttium which was beyond the arm (of-)Saint George
s'il le pooit conquerre, et on li donna. Adonques i ala
if-he it could conquer and one to-him gave Then there went
mesires Henris a toute se gent, si conquist grant partie de
my-lord Henry with all his people so conquered great part of
le tere. Aprés li cuens Loeis demanda un autre roiaume,
the land Afterward the count Louis asked an other kingdom
et on li donna; et li cuens de Saint Pol redemanda un
and one to-him gave and the count of Saint Pol asked-in-turn an
autre roiaume, et on li donna; aprés mesires Pierres de
other kingdom and one to-him gave afterward my-lord Peter of
Braiechoel un autre roiaume qui estoit en tere de Sarrasins vers
Bracieux an other kingdom which was in land of Saracens toward
le Coine, s'il le pooit conquerre, et on li otria, et mesires
the Iconium if-he it could conquer and one to-him granted and my-lord
Pierres i ala a toute se gent, si conquist chu roiaume
Peter there went with all his people so conquered this kingdom
molt bien et s'en fu sires. Si faitement demanderent li
very well and so-thereof was lord In-such wise asked the

rike homme les roiaumes qui n'estoient mie encore conquis;
rich men the kingdoms which not-were at-all yet conquered
et li dux de Venice et li Venicien eurent l'isle de Crete et
and the doge of Venice and the Venetians had the-isle of Crete and
l'isle de Corfaut et l'isle de Mosson, et encore autres assés
the-isle of Corfu and the-isle of Modon and yet others plenty
que il ja ameerent. Aprés si avint molt grans damaches
that they already desired Afterward so happened very great harm
en l'ost que li cuens de Saint Pol morut ne demora waires.
in the-host for the count of Saint Pol died not delayed much
112 Puis si avint aprés que une chités que li empereres
Then so happened afterward that a city which the emperor
avoit conquise revela encontre lui, Andernople avoit a non
had conquered rebelled against him Adrianople had as name
chele chités. Quant li empereres le seut, si manda le duc
that city When the emperor it knew so summoned the doge
de Venice, le conte Loeis et les autres barons; si leur
of Venice the count Louis and the other barons so to-them
dist qu'il voloit aler aseir Andernople qui estoit revelee
said that-he wished to-go to-besiege Adrianople which was rebelled
encontre lui, et qu'il li aidaissent a conquerre chele chité,
against him and that-they him should-help to conquer that city
et li baron respondirent que sil feroient il volentiers, et
and the barons answered that so-it would-do they gladly and
tant que li empereres s'apareilla et li baron d'aler a chele
so-far that the emperor himself-prepared and the barons to-go to that
chité. Quant il vinrent a chele chité, si l'assisent; si comme
city When they came to that city so it-besieged so as
il seoient esluec, este me vous un jour ou Jehans li
they sat there behold (to-)me you one day when John the
Blaks, et il et li Commain, a tout molt grant gent,
Vlach both he and the Cumans with all very great people

venoient le tere de Coustantinoble, si comme il avoient
came(-through) the land of Constantinople so as they had
autre fois fait; si trouverent l'empereeur a toute s'ost seant
other time done so found the-emperor with all his-host sitting
a Andernople. Quant chil de l'ost virrent ches Commains
at Adrianople When those of the-host saw these Cumans
a ches plichons vestus, si ne les douterent ne ne prisierent
in these pelisses clad so not them feared nor not prized
nient plus que un trope d'enfans; et chil Commain et
at-all more than a troop of-children and those Cumans and
chele gent venoient grandesme aleure, si keurent il sus
that people came very-great pace so run they upon
as Franchois, si en ochisent mout, si les desconfissent
at-the French so of-them killed many so them rout
il tous en chele batalle. Si fu perdus li empereres, que
they all in that battle So was lost the emperor so-that
on ne seut onques que il devint, et li cuens Loeis et
one not knew ever what he became and the count Louis and
molt d'autres haus hommes, et tant d'autre gent que
many of-other high men and so-many of-other people that
nous n'en savons le nombre, mais que bien i perdi
we not-thereof know the number but that well there lost
on trois chens chevaliers; et qui escaper peut, si s'en
one three hundred knights and who escape could so himself-thence
vint fuiant en Coustantinoble, si que li dux de Venice
came fleeing into Constantinople so that the doge of Venice
s'en vint fuiant et assés gens avec lui, et laissierent
himself-thence came fleeing and plenty people with him and left
leur tentes et leur harnas, tout si comme il seoient a
their tents and their harness all so as they sat at
chele chité, que onques n'oserent vertir chele part, si i fu
that city for ever not-dared turn that way so there was

le desconfiture grans. Ensi faitement se venja Damedieus
the defeat great Thus wise himself avenged Lord-God
d'aus pour leur orguel et pour le male foi qu'il avoient
of-them for their pride and for the bad faith that-they had
portee a le povre gent de l'ost, et les oribles pekiés qu'il
borne to the poor people of the-host and the horrible sins that-they
avoient fais en le chité, aprés chou qu'i l'eurent prise.
had done in the city after this that-they it-had taken
113 Quant li empereres fu perdus par si faite mesaventure, si
When the emperor was lost by so made mishap so
en furent li baron qui remessent molt courchiet. Aprés
thereof were the barons who remained very angered Afterward
si sanlerent un jour pour faire empereeur. Si manda
so they-assembled one day for to-make emperor So summoned
on monseigneur Henri, le frere l'empereeur Bauduin qui
one my-lord Henry the brother (of-)the-emperor Baldwin who
fu, pour faire ent empereeur, qui estoit en se tere qu'il
was for to-make of-him emperor who was in his land that-he
avoit conquise outre le bras Saint Jorge.
had conquered beyond the arm (of-)Saint George

The Emperor Henry

XXXIII

The Venetians accept Henry as emperor only in exchange for the Greeks' icon of Our Lady. Henry marries the marquis's daughter, who soon dies. The marquis falls fighting John the Vlach and the Cumans, who besiege Salonika until Saint Demetrius lances John in his tent. Henry weds the daughter of Burun, John's nephew and heir, and dies at Salonika after crowning the marquis's son. Robert de Clari, who was there, vouches for his account.

Quant li dux de Venice et li Venicien virent que on 114
When the doge of Venice and the Venetians saw that one
veut faire empereeur de monseigneur Henri, si en furent
wishes to-make emperor of my-lord Henry so thereof were
encontre, ne si ne le vaurrent mie sousfrir, s'il n'eussent un
against nor so not it wished at-all to-suffer if-they not-had an
ymage de Nostre Dame qui estoit painte en une tavle. Si
image of Our Lady which was painted on a panel So
estoit chis ymages si rikes que molt, et estoit tous carkiés
was this image so rich that much and was all laden
de rikes pierres precieuses. Si disoient li Griu que chou
with rich stones precious So said the Greeks that this
estoit li premiers ymages de Nostre Dame qui onques fust
was the first image of Our Lady which ever was
fais ne pourtrais. En chel ymage si avoient li Griu si grant
made nor portrayed In that image so had the Greeks so great
fianche que il l'aouroient seur toute rien, et si le portoient
trust that they it-adored above all thing and so it carried
cascun demars a pourchession; si l'aouroient li Griu et
each Tuesday in procession so it-adored the Greeks and
donnoient lui molt grans dons. Ore ne voloient nient li
gave it very great gifts Now not wished at-all the

Venicien souffrir que mesires Henris fust empereres, s'il
Venetians to-suffer that my-lord Henry should-be emperor if-they
n'eussent chel ymage, tant c'on leur donna chel ymage.
not-had that image so-far that-one to-them gave that image
Puis si corona on monseigneur Henri a empereeur.
Then so crowned one my-lord Henry as emperor
115 Quant mesires Henri fu empereres, si parlerent tant ensanle
When my-lord Henry was emperor so they-spoke so-long together
aprés, entre lui et le marchis qui estoit rois de Salenike, que
afterward between him and the marquis who was king of Salonika that
li marchis li donna se fille et que li empereres l'espousa;
the marquis to-him gave his daughter and that the emperor her-wedded
et puis si ne veski mie longement l'empeerris, ains morut.
and then so not lived at-all long the-empress but died
116 Ne demoura mie lonc tans aprés que Jehans li Blaks et li
Not delayed at-all long time after that John the Vlach and the
Commain coururent en le tere le marchis de Salenike. Et
Cumans ran into the land (of-)the marquis of Salonika And
li marchis estoit en se tere, et tant qu'il se combati a
the marquis was in his land and so-far that-he himself fought with
ches Blaks et a ches Commains et que il fu ochis en cele
these Vlachs and with these Cumans and that he was killed in that
bataille et se gent toute desconfite. Si va Jehans li Blaks et
battle and his people all routed So goes John the Vlach and
chil Commain, si assient il Salenike, si font drechier leur
those Cumans so besiege they Salonika so have raised their
engiens pour assalir a le chité; et le femme le marchis
engines for to-assail at the city and the wife (of-)the marquis
estoit remese en le chité, et chevaliers et autres gens avec
was remained in the city and knights and other people with
lui qui le vile desfendoient. Or gesoit li cors monseigneur
her who the town defended Now lay the body (of-)my-lord

saint Dimitre en le chité, qui ne vaut onques sousfrir que
saint Demetrius in the city who not wished ever to-suffer that
se chités fust prise par forche; si decouroit si grans plentés
his city should-be taken by force so flowed so great plenty
d'oille de chu cors saint que ch'estoit une fine merveille. Si
of-oil from this body holy that this-was a pure marvel So
avint, si comme Jehans li Blaks se gesoit une matinee en
happened so as John the Vlach himself lay one morning in
se tente, que mesires sains Dimitres vint, si le feri d'une
his tent that my-lord saint Demetrius came so him struck with-a
lanche par mi le cors, si l'ochist. Quant se gent et
lance through the-midst-of the body so him-killed When his people and
li Commain seurent qu'il fu mors, si se deslogierent,
the Cumans knew that-he was dead so themselves decamped
si s'en ralerent en le tere. Et puis aprés si escaï
so themselves-thence went-back into the land And then afterward so fell
li roiaumes de Blakie a un neveu Jehan, Burons avoit a
the kingdom of Wallachia to a nephew (of-)John Burun had as
non. Chus Burus si fu aprés rois de Blakie, et avoit
name This Burun so was afterward king of Wallachia and had
une bele fille. Aprés avint que li empereres Henris, qui
a fair daughter Afterward happened that the emperor Henry who
molt fu boins empereres, se conseilla a ses barons que
very was good emperor himself counseled with his barons what
il porroit faire de ches Blaks et de ches Commains, qui
he could do of these Vlachs and of these Cumans who
si faitement werioient l'empire de Coustantinoble et qui
in-such wise warred-on the-empire of Constantinople and who
l'empereeur Bauduin sen frere li avoient mort; tant que
the-emperor Baldwin his brother for-him had killed so-far that
li baron li loerent qu'il envoiast a chelui Burus, qui estoit
the barons him advised that-he should-send to that Burun who was

rois de Blakie, et que il li mandast qu'il li donnast
king of Wallachia and that he to-him should-send-word that-he to-him should-give
sa fille a femme. Et li empereres respondi ke femme de
his daughter to wife And the emperor answered that wife of
si bas parage ne prendroit il ja. Et li baron disent: «Sire,
so low lineage not would-take he ever And the barons said Lord
si ferés! nous vous loons bien que vous vous acordés a
so you-will-do we you advise well that you yourself accord with
aus, car che sont le plus fort gent et le plus doutee de
them for these are the most strong people and the most feared of
l'empire ne de le tere.» Et tant parlerent li baron que li
the-empire nor of the land And so-long spoke the barons that the
empereres i envoia deus chevaliers haus hommes, et si
emperor there sent two knights high men and so
les fist atourner molt belement, et s'en alerent li
them had equipped very handsomely and themselves-thence went the
message molt doutanment en chele sauvage tere, et quant
messengers very fearfully into that savage land and when
il vinrent la, si les vaut on destruire. Et toutes eures
they came there so them wished one to-destroy And all the-same
pallerent tant li message a chelui Burus que il leur
spoke so-long the messengers to that Burun that he to-them
respondi que il envoieroit volentiers se fille a l'empereeur.
answered that he would-send gladly his daughter to the-emperor
117 Adonques si fist atorner Burus li rois se fille molt
Then so had equipped Burun the king his daughter very
rikement et molt noblement, et assés gent avec lui; si
richly and very nobly and plenty people with her so
l'envoia a l'empereeur, et li fist baillier soisante sommiers
her-sent to the-emperor and to-her had delivered sixty packhorses
tous carkiés d'avoir et d'or et d'argent et de dras de
all laden with-wealth and of-gold and of-silver and of cloths of

soie et de rikes joiaus; ne n'i avoit sommier qui ne fust
silk and of rich jewels nor not-there had packhorse which not were
couvers d'un vermel samit, qui si estoit lons qu'il trainoit
covered with-a vermilion samite which so was long that-it trailed
bien set piés ou uit a cascun par derriere, ne ja tant
well seven feet or eight on each at back nor ever so-much
n'alaissent par boe ne par laides voies que ja en fust
not-they-should-go through mud nor through foul ways that ever thereof was
nus des samis escorchiés, tout par cointise et par nobleche.
any of-the samites torn all for elegance and for nobility
Quant li empereres seut que le demisele venoit, si ala encontre 118
When the emperor knew that the damsel was-coming so went to-meet
lui, et li baron avec lui, et si en fist molt grant feste
her and the barons with him and so thereof made very great feast
de lui et de se gent, et puis aprés si l'espousa l'empereres.
of her and of her people and then afterward so her-wedded the-emperor
Ne demoura mie grant tans aprés que on manda l'empereur 119
Not delayed at-all great time after that one summoned the-emperor
a Salenike pour courouner le fil le marchis a roi, et
to Salonika for to-crown the son (of-)the marquis as king and
li empereres i ala. Et quant il l'eut couronné, le fil
the emperor there went And when he him-had crowned the son
le marchis, si amaladi la et si i morut, dont che
(of-)the marquis so fell-sick there and so there died whereof this
fu molt grans damages et mout grans pitiés.
was very great harm and very great pity
Ore avés oï le verité, confaitement Coustantinoble fu 120
Now you-have heard the truth how Constantinople was
conquise, et confaitement li cuens de Flandres Bauduins en
conquered and how the count of Flanders Baldwin thereof
fu empereres, et mesires Henris ses freres aprés, que chis qui
was emperor and my-lord Henry his brother after as he who

i fu et qui le vit et qui l'oï le tesmongne, Robers de Clari,
there was and who it saw and who it-heard it testifies Robert of Clari
li chevaliers, et a fait metre en escrit le verité, si comme
the knight and has had put in writing the truth so as
ele fu conquise; et ja soit chou que il ne l'ait si belement
it was conquered and although be this that he not it-has so handsomely
contee le conqueste, comme maint boin diteeur l'eussent contee,
told the conquest as many-a good writer it-would-have told
si en a il toutes eures le droite verité contee, et assés de
so thereof has he all the-same the right truth told and plenty of
verités en a teutes qu'il ne peut mie toutes ramembrer.
truths thereof has left-untold for-he not could at-all all remember
Explicit.
Here-ends

HENRI DE VALENCIENNES

Histoire de l'empereur Henri

The History of the Emperor Henry

The Prologue, and Boril's Surprise Attack

I

Henri de Valenciennes will tell of the emperor Henry's victory over Boril, which he witnessed; God punishes those who persist in sin, and good and ill lie in the heart. At Pentecost, when Cumans and Vlachs invade his land, Henry, eager to find Boril, whose uncle Johanitsa killed Henry's brother Baldwin, marches past Adrianople to seek the aid of Slav, Boril's cousin and enemy. At Beroe Boril surprises the half-armed camp at sunrise.

Henris de Valenchienes dist ke, puis ke li hom s'entremet 501
Henry of Valenciennes says that since that the man himself-busies
de biel dire et de traitier, et il en est graciiés de
with fair speaking and with treating and he thereof is thanked by
toz discrés et autorisiés, il se doit bien travellier ke il
all discreet-men and authorized he himself ought well labor that he
ensiuce le vou de se grace par traitement de plaine verité. Et
follow the vow of his grace by treatment of plain truth And
por chou veut-il dire et traitier aucune cose dont il ait
for this wishes-he to-tell and to-treat some thing whereof he may-have
garant et tiesmoignage de verité, o les preudomes ki furent
warrant and testimony of truth with the worthy-men who were
à le desconfiture de Henri l'empereour de Constantinoble et
at the defeat of Henry the-emperor of Constantinople and
de Burile. Et veut ke l'ounours ke Nostre Sires fist illuec à
of Boril And wishes that the-honor which Our Lord did there to
l'empereour et à chiaus de l'empire, soit seue communement.
the-emperor and to those of the-empire be known commonly
Car Henris vit oell à oell toz les fais ki là furent, et
For Henry saw eye to eye all the deeds which there were and
sot toz les consaus des haus homes et des barons.
knew all the counsels of-the high men and of-the barons

502 Si dist en son premerain commenchement. Quant Nostre Sires
So he-says in his first beginning When Our Lord
voit ke li hom et li feme sont en pechié et il tournent à
sees that the man and the woman are in sin and they turn to
repentanche, et puis vont au lavement de confiession, plourant
repentance and then go to-the washing of confession weeping
en vraie repentanche de cuer et souspirant, dont estent-il sor
in true repentance of heart and sighing then extends-he over
aus le largheche de se grace et de se majesté. Et quant il
them the largess of his grace and of his majesty And when he
voit k'il s'atornent à malisse en perseverant cascun jour plus
sees that-they themselves-turn to malice in persevering each day more
et plus en lor errour, dont en prent il si cruel venganche
and more in their error then thereof takes he so cruel vengeance
com nos trovons en le divine page de le sainte Escripture.
as we find in the divine page of the holy Scripture
Nonporquant ou juer ne ou rire ne ou solaciier ne
Nevertheless in-the playing nor in-the laughing nor in-the taking-solace not
gist mie toz li maus; ne toz li biens ne regist mie ou
lies at-all all the ill nor all the good not lies-in-turn at-all in-the
plourer ne el simple habit, anchois gist ou cuer de cascun.
weeping nor in-the simple habit rather lies in-the heart of each
Et Dex, ki set et voit apertement les repostailles des cuers,
And God who knows and sees openly the hidden-things of-the hearts
rendra à cascun se desierte selonc le devin jugement.
will-render to each his desert according-to the divine judgment

503 Mais por chou ke jou ne voell mie k'i tourt à aucun à
But for this that I not wish at-all that-it turn to anyone to
anui de tant traitier sor mon prologhe, est-il mestiers
annoyance of so-much treating upon my prologue is-it needful
ke jou retorne à traitier sor le propre matere pour lequele
that I return to treat upon the proper matter for which

jou commenchai à traitier ceste œvre: dont Dex me prest,
I began to treat this work whereof God me may-lend
par son plaisir, sens et forche et discrecion.
by his pleasure sense and strength and discretion
Il avint à une Pentecouste, che dist Henris, ke li empereres 504
It happened at a Pentecost this says Henry that the emperor
ert à sejour en Constantinoble, tant ke nouvieles li
was at stay in Constantinople so-far that news to-him
vinrent ke Commain estoient entré en se tierre, et Blascois,
came that Cumans were entered into his land and Vlachs
et molt malmenoient se gent. Dont fist erramment li
and much ill-treated his people Then had at-once the
empereres semonre ses os; et quant elles furent assamblées,
emperor summoned his hosts and when they were assembled
si commanda ke tout s'en ississent apriès lui; et il
so he-commanded that all themselves-thence should-issue after him and they
firent son commandement. Puis fist tant li empereres ke
did his command Then did so-much the emperor that
il vint à toute s'ost en uns prés ki sont par delà
he came with all his-host into some meadows which are by beyond
Salembrie; et commanda s'ost à logier, et tant atendi
Selymbria and commanded his-host to lodge and so-long waited
illuec ke tout furent assemblé, et petit en faloit.
there that all were assembled and little thereof was-lacking
Adont s'esmut de Salembrie, et chevauça li empereres 505
Then himself-moved from Selymbria and rode the emperor
tout adiès avant contre Commains et Blas; et tout adiès
all continually forward against Cumans and Vlachs and all continually
croissoit li os de jor en jour. Ke vaut chou? Tant erra
grew the host from day to day What avails this So-long he-journeyed
k'il vint en uns prés par delà Andrenople, et dont primes
that-he came into some meadows by beyond Adrianople and then first

fu toute se gens parvenue, si se logierent. Lors prisent
was all his people arrived so themselves they-lodged Then they-took
consel ke il iroient vers Blaquie por requerre l'ayue et le
counsel that they would-go toward Vlachia for to-seek the-aid and the
forche d'un haut hom ki avoit nom Esclas, et estoit en guerre
strength of-a high man who had name Slav and was in war
contre Burille (ki ses cousins germains estoit), por chou ke
against Boril who his cousin german was for this that
chil Burilles li avoit tolue se tierre en trahison. Et s'il
that Boril from-him had taken his land in treason And if-they
pooient avoir celui en lor aide, il envaïroient Burille seurement.
could have him in their aid they would-attack Boril surely
506 Lors commanda li empereres ke li os chevauçast, comme
Then commanded the emperor that the host should-ride as
chil ki molt avoit grant desirrier de trouver Burille son
he who very had great desire to find Boril his
anemi; car Johanisses, ses oncles, li avoit ochis son frere
enemy for Johanitsa his uncle to-him had killed his brother
l'empereour Bauduin: dont molt fu grans damages à le gent
the-emperor Baldwin whereof very was great damage to the people
de Flandres et de Haynau. Ke vous diroie-jou plus? Li
of Flanders and of Hainaut What to-you would-say-I more The
empereres vint à Berua; là dormirent le nuit; et quant che
emperor came to Beroe there they-slept the night and when this
vint au demain ke li solaus fu levés, Burilles lor vint en
came to-the morrow that the sun was risen Boril on-them came in
larrechin et lor fist une envaïe. Et lors n'avoit de toute
stealth and on-them made an attack And then not-there-had of all
nostre gent armés fors ke l'arriere-garde et l'avant-garde.
our people armed except that the-rear-guard and the-vanguard

Ki dont fust là, molt peust veir asprement paleter et bierser 507
Who then were there much could see fiercely skirmish and shoot
les uns contre les autres. Et por che ke nostre gens n'estoit
the ones against the others And for this that our people not-was
encore conreée, se elle auques en fu espoentée che ne fu
yet arrayed if it somewhat thereof was frightened this not was
mie mervelle. Car se tout chil ki sont en Roumenie fussent
at-all marvel For if all those who are in Romania were
encontre Burille et les siens, et si evussent en lor aïe toz cels
against Boril and the his and so had in their aid all those
de Flandres et de France et de Normendie, n'i pevussent
of Flanders and of France and of Normandy not-there could
il jà riens conquerre, se Dex proprement ne lor aidast.
they ever anything conquer if God in-person not them aided

Liénard Rescued

II

Liénard of Hélesmes charges the Vlachs alone and without orders, and the emperor rides to his rescue on his horse Moriel, unhorsing a Vlach with his lance. Henry calls Liénard a fool, though he rode in himself with only a padded jacket for armor. Peter of Douai rebukes him for leaving his men: the army has no fortress or standard but God and him. Henry asks pardon, promises to take care, and turns the host toward Philippopolis.

Uns chevaliers de Hielemes, ki Lyenars avoit non, preudom 508
A knight of Hélesmes who Liénard had name worthy-man
durement et de grant pooir, pierchut l'orguel et le beubant ki
greatly and of great power perceived the-pride and the arrogance which
iert en eus, et ot pitié de chou k'il biersoient si cruelment
was in them and had pity of this that-they shot so cruelly

le nostre gent. Si mist arriere-dos tote couardie, et se feri
the our people So he-put behind-back all cowardice and himself struck
en els l'espée traite. Et nonporquant, por chou ke il assambla
among them the-sword drawn And nevertheless for this that he engaged
sans commandement, li preudome de l'ost disent k'il avoit
without command the worthy-men of the-host said that-he had
fait un fol hardement, et ke nus hom ne le deveroit plaindre
done a foolish boldness and that any man not him ought pity
s'i li mescaoit de cheste emprise. Ke vaut chou? Il n'ot
if-it to-him befell-ill of this enterprise What avails this He not-had
point de siute; si evust esté pris sans faille et retenus, se li
a-whit of following so would-have been taken without fail and held if the
empereres ne fust; mais par le grant cortoisie de son cuer et par
emperor not were but by the great courtesy of his heart and by
le grant hardement emprist toz seus le rescousse de son homme.
the great boldness undertook all alone the rescue of his man
509 Quant li empereres vit ke Lyenars ne pooit escaper sans
When the emperor saw that Liénard not could escape without
mort u sans prison, il monta sor un sien cheval Moriel,
death or without prison he mounted upon a his-own horse Moriel
et le hurta des esperons, et s'adrecha vers un Blac.
and him struck with-the spurs and himself-directed toward a Vlach
Et quant vint à l'aprocier, il le feri parmi le costé
And when it-came to the-approaching he him struck through the side
de le lanche, si ke li fiers en parut d'autre part; et
with the lance so that the iron thereof appeared on-other side and
chil ki le cop ne pot soustenir, caï à terre comme chil
he who the blow not could sustain fell to earth as he
kil ne pot mais. Moriaus fu navrés en deus lius.
who-it not could more Moriel was wounded in two places

Et quant chil ki Lienart tenoient virent venir l'empereour 510
And when those who Liénard held saw come the-emperor
embrasé d'ire et de mautalent, il n'orent cure d'atendre,
inflamed with-anger and with ill-will they not-had care to-wait
ains li guerpirent Lyenart; et s'enfui li uns chà, et
but to-him abandoned Liénard and himself-fled the one here and
li autres là. Et nonporquant Lyenars fu navrés en le
the other there And nevertheless Liénard was wounded in the
main (ne sai de sajete u d'espée). Et li empereres li
hand not I-know by arrow or by-sword And the emperor to-him
dist iréement: «Lienart! Lyenart! se Dex me saut! kiconques
said angrily Liénard Liénard if God me save whoever
vous tiegne por sage, je vous tieng por fol; et bien sai
you hold for wise I you hold for fool and well I-know
ke jou meismes serai blasmés por vostre fait.»
that I myself shall-be blamed for your deed
Ensi come vous avés oï, fu Lyenars rescous par l'empereour. 511
Thus as you have heard was Liénard rescued by the-emperor
Et li empereres meismes i ala auques folement; car il n'avoit
And the emperor himself there went somewhat foolishly for he not-had
de garnison por son cors à cel point ke un seul gasygan;
of protection for his body at that point except one single gambeson
et nonporquant il desconréa toz les Blas ke il à cele pointe
and nevertheless he disarrayed all the Vlachs whom he at that charge
consivi. Et por chou k'il ot paour et doute ke ses chevaus
overtook And for this that-he had fear and doubt that his horse
ne fust mors u mehaigniés, il s'en torna le petit pas, le
— were dead or maimed he himself-thence turned the little pace the
pignon el puing tout ensanglenté. Et au cheval reparoit
pennon in-the fist all bloodied And on-the horse appeared
auques k'il avoit esté espouronnés par besoing; car li sans li
somewhat that-it had been spurred by need for the blood from-it

raioit par ansdeus les costés, et estoit navrés en deus lius. Et
streamed through both the sides and was wounded in two places And
à paines savoient chil encore de le compaignie l'empereour ù
with difficulty knew those yet of the company (of-)the-emperor where
il estoit alés; si en estoient auques dolant et desconforté. Et
he was gone so thereof they-were somewhat sorrowful and disheartened And
por eus donner confort, lor dist-il k'il fussent tout asseur.
for them to-give comfort to-them said-he that-they should-be all assured
512 Et quant Pieres de Douay le vit, il vint à lui, et si li
And when Peter of Douai him saw he came to him and so to-him
dist: «Sire, sire, teus hom comme vous iestes, et ki tant
said Lord lord such man as you are and who so-many
de preudomes a à garder et à gouverner comme vous avés,
of worthy-men has to guard and to govern as you have
ne se doit mie si folement departir de ses homes comme
not himself ought at-all so foolishly part from his men as
vous à ceste fois vos en iestes departis. Car s'il avenist ke
you at this time yourself thence are parted For if-it happened that
vous i fussiés, par aucune mesaventure, u mors u pris, ne
you there were by some misadventure either dead or taken not
fussiemes-nous tout mort et deshouneré? Oill, se Dex me saut!
were-we all dead and dishonored Yes if God me save
Nous n'avons chi autre frameté ne autre estandart fors Diu
We not-have here other fortress nor other standard except God
tant seulement et vous. Or vous dirai une cose, s'il vous
so only and you Now to-you I-shall-tell a thing if-it you
plaist, ke jou voell ke vos saciés: ke se vous une autre fois
pleases which I wish that you know that if you an other time
vous embatés en autel peril (dont Dex vous gart!), nous vous
yourself thrust into such peril whence God you guard we to-you
rendons chi or endroit tout chou ke nos tenons de vous.»
render here now right all this that we hold of you

Et quant li empereres entent comment Pieres de Douay le vait 513
And when the emperor hears how Peter of Douai him goes
reprendant por s'ounour, si li respondi molt deboinairement:
reproving for his-honor so to-him answered very graciously
«Ciertes, Pieres, bien sai ke jou i alai trop folement;
Certainly Peter well I-know that I there went too foolishly
si vous pri ke vous le me pardonnés, et jou m'en
so you I-pray that you it to-me pardon and I myself-thereof
garderai une autre fois. Mais che me fist faire Lyenars, ki
shall-guard an other time But this me had do Liénard who
trop folement s'i embati; si l'en ai plus laidengié
too foolishly himself-there thrust so him-thereof have-I more reviled
et dit de honte ke jou ne deusse. Et nonporquant, s'il i
and said of shame than I — ought And nevertheless if-he there
fust remés, trop fust vilaine cose à nous. Car ki piert un
had remained exceedingly were churlish thing to us For who loses a
si preudome comme il est, chou est damages sans restorer;
so worthy-man as he is this is damage without restoring
et mains en seriesmes cremu. Mais ralés en vostre conroi,
and less thereby would-we-be feared But go-back into your troop
et laissommes les Blas à tant, et tornons viers Phinepople.»
and let-us-leave the Vlachs at so-much and let-us-turn toward Philippopolis

The Foragers at Philippopolis

III

The host camps before Philippopolis, in a land where nothing grows for twelve days' journey. Peter of Douai, Renier of Trith, and Anseau of Cayeux go out to guard the foragers, and the Vlachs and Cumans cut them off. Henry arms his men and tells them that God has not forgotten them for that rabble: each should be a falcon and the enemy buzzards. At the sight of his oriflamme the Vlachs and Cumans turn back, and the weary French do not pursue.

514 Puis ke li empereres l'ot commandé, nus n'i mist
Since that the emperor it-had commanded anyone not-there put
contredit. Lors vinrent viers Phinepople, et se logierent
contradiction Then they-came toward Philippopolis and themselves lodged
hastivement. Et quant li trés l'empereour fu tendus, si se
hastily And when the tent (of-)the-emperor was pitched so himself
fist maintenant desarmer; et puis s'est un petit desjeunés
he-had at-once disarmed and then himself-is a little breakfasted
de pain bescuit et de vin. Si fisent li autre (ki l'orent); et ki
on bread biscuit and on wine So did the others who it-had and who
ne l'ot, si l'en convint consirer. Car bien saciés k'en douse
not it-had so him-thereof behooved to-do-without For well know that-in twelve
grans jornées ne croissoit ne blés, ne orges, ne vins, ne avaine.
great days not grew nor wheat nor barley nor wine nor oats
Et quant nostre gens virent k'il en tel terre s'estoient
And when our people saw that-they into such land themselves-were
embatu, nus ne se doit mervellier se il furent desconforté.
thrust anyone not himself ought marvel if they were disheartened
515 Pieres de Douay et Reniers de Trit et Ansiaus de Chaeu,
Peter of Douai and Renier of Trith and Anseau of Cayeux
et pluisour autre chevalier, s'en vinrent devant
and several other knights themselves-thence came before

Phinepople en fuerre pour les fourriers garder. Dont garderent
Philippopolis in foraging for the foragers to-guard Then they-looked
devant els; si ont les Blas coisis, ki tout estoient entalenté
before them so have the Vlachs espied who all were eager
d'aus faire anui s'il faire le pevussent. Nonporquant il
of-them to-do harm if-they do it could Nevertheless they
orent nos fourriers arestés devant Phinepople, et fourclos
had our foragers stopped before Philippopolis and shut-out
de lor gent meismes. Ensi comme il estoient en tel
from their people own Thus as they were in such
maniere, vint uns messages à l'empereour, ki li dist k'il
manner came a messenger to the-emperor who to-him said that-he
montast errant, et k'il venist secourre ses fourriers;
should-mount at-once and that-he should-come to-succor his foragers
car li Commain et li Blac les avoient assaillis.
for the Cumans and the Vlachs them had assailed
Et quant li empereres l'oï, si se fist maintenant armer, et 516
And when the emperor it-heard so himself had at-once armed and
aussi ses homes; et puis lor dist k'il pensassent, cascuns
also his men and then to-them said that-they should-think each
endroit lui, dou bien faire, et ne quidassent pas ke chil Sire
as-for himself of-the well doing and not should-think at-all that that Lord
ki fais les avoit à se propre samblanche et à s'ymage, les
who made them had in his own likeness and in his-image them
evust entroubliés por cele chienaille. «Se vous, fait-il dont, metés
had forgotten for that rabble If you says-he then put
vostre fianche del tout en lui et vostre esperanche, n'aiés jà
your trust of-the all in him and your hope not-have ever
paour ne doutanche k'il contre vous puissent eure durer.»
fear nor doubt that-they against you can hour to-last

517 Ke vous diroie-jou? tant lor a li empereres preecié de
What to-you would-say-I so-much to-them has the emperor preached of
Nostre Segnor, et mis avant de boines paroles et amonnestés
Our Lord and put forward of good words and admonished
de bieles proeches, ke il n'i ot si couart ki maintenant ne
of fair prowesses that it not-there had so coward who at-once not
fust garnis de hardement, et desirans de proeche faire, s'il
were furnished with boldness and desirous of prowess to-do if-he
en pooit venir en point. Ensi preece li empereres ses homes
thereto could come in point Thus preaches the emperor his men
et amonieste de bien faire, tant ke tous les a resvigourés.
and admonishes of well doing so-far that all them he-has reinvigorated
518 Et Pieres de Douay et Ansiaus de Chaeu et Reniers de
And Peter of Douai and Anseau of Cayeux and Renier of
Trit ierent devant Phinepople, ensi comme vous avez oï,
Trith were before Philippopolis thus as you have heard
pour les fourriers garder. Et endementres k'il entendoient
for the foragers to-guard And meanwhile that-they attended
au furrer, comme chil ki bien besoigne en avoient, à tant
to-the foraging as those who well need thereof had at that
es vous venir sour aus Blas et Commains; et envoierent
behold you to-come upon them Vlachs and Cumans and they-sent
avant lor archiers huant et glatissant, et faisant une noise
forward their archers booting and yelping and making a noise
si grant k'avis estoit ke toute le plaigne en tremblast.
so great that-opinion was that all the plain thereof trembled
519 Li jours estoit biaus, et li cans si plains k'il n'i avoit
The day was fair and the field so level that-it not-there had
fossé, ne mont, ne val. Et s'or ne remansist li bataille de
ditch nor hill nor valley And if-now not remained the battle on
le partie des Blas et des Commains, bien croi ke de le
the side of-the Vlachs and of-the Cumans well I-believe that on the

nostre partie ne remansist elle pas. Car li empereres fu armés
our side not would-remain it at-all For the emperor was armed
et montés sor un cheval bayart, por chou ke Moriaus, ses
and mounted upon a horse bay for this that Moriel his
autres chevaus, estoit navrés si comme vous avés oï. Et quant
other horse was wounded so as you have heard And when
il fu montés, si armés et si aparelliés comme à lui convint,
he was mounted so armed and so equipped as to him befitted
bien sambla prinches ki terre eust à garder et à maintenir.
well he-seemed prince who land had to guard and to maintain
«Segnour, fait-il dont à ses homes, vous véés ore bien ke 520
Lords says-he then to his men you see now well that
il est mestiers ke cascuns soit preudom et loiaus endroit
it is needful that each be worthy-man and loyal as-for
soi. Or soit cascuns de nos faucons, et nostre avresaire
himself Now be each of us falcon and our adversaries
soient bruhier. Prenge cascuns reconfort en soi-meismes, car
be buzzards Let-take each comfort in himself for
desconfors n'i vaut noient; et nos les desconfirons toz.
discomfort not-there avails anything and we them shall-defeat all
Et se nos avons mains de gent par deviers nous ke il
And if we have less of people on toward us than they
n'ont, nos avons Diu pardeviers nous en le nostre aide.»
have we have God with us in the our aid
A tant se metent à le voie, et chevaucent contre 521
At that themselves they-put on the way and ride against
Blas et Commains. Et lues ke il perchoivent l'oriflambe
Vlachs and Cumans And as-soon that they perceive the-oriflamme
l'empereour, et les autres ensegnes ki sont en se compaignie,
(of-)the-emperor and the other ensigns which are in his company
et nostre gent ki bien estoient priès de deus mile, Blac
and our people who well were near of two thousand Vlachs

et Commain s'en retornent sans plus faire à cele
and Cumans themselves-thence return without more to-do at that
fois; et nostre gent se retraient arriere sans encaucier.
time and our people themselves withdraw back without pursuing
Et nonporquant, se il ne fussent si travellié comme il
And nevertheless if they not were so wearied as they
estoient, volentiers fussent assamblé. Et lor gens s'en
were willingly would-have engaged And their people itself-thence
rala par devers le montaigne, et li nostre retorna à l'ost.
went-back by toward the mountain and the ours returned to the-host

Confession, and the Marshal's Message

IV

Peter of Bracieux and Nicholas of Mailly are chosen to charge first, and the chaplain Philip urges every man to confess. On the first of August the host hears mass, receives communion, and sets out under the Holy Cross. Geoffrey the marshal sends word that Boril's men are coming, and Henry rejoices, since a Boril who fled and burned the land would starve them. Peter of Douai swears that the emperor will not be four feet ahead of him that day.

522 Cele nuit deviserent lor batalles, et ordenerent ki poinderoit
That night they-arranged their battalions and ordained who would-charge
premerains se che venoit à l'assambler. Si i esgarderent
first if this came to the-engaging So there they-appointed
Pieron de Braiescuel et Nicholon de Mailli: à ces deus fu
Peter of Bracieux and Nicholas of Mailly to these two was
li cose commandée. Puis lor commencha uns capelains
the thing commanded Then to-them began a chaplain

de l'ost, ki Phelippes estoit apielés, à monstrer le parole
of the-host who Philip was called to show the word
Nostre-Segnour, et dist:
(of-)Our-Lord and said
«Biau segnor, vous ki chi estes assamblé por le service Nostre 523
Fair lords you who here are assembled for the service (of-)Our
Segnor, por Diu gardés ke li paine ne li travail ke vos avés
Lord for God take-heed that the pain nor the labor which you have
eu ne soient pierdu. Vos estes chi assamblé en estrange contrée,
had not be lost You are here assembled in strange country
ne n'i avés castiel ne recet ù vos aiiés esperanche de
nor not-there have castle nor refuge where you may-have hope of
garant avoir, fors les escus et les espées et les chevaus, et
protection to-have except the shields and the swords and the horses and
l'aide de Diu premierement, liquele vos serra prestée, pruec
the-aid of God first which to-you will-be lent provided
ke vous soiés confiès à vo pooir. Car confiessions o vraie
that you be confessed to your power For confession with true
repentanche de cuer si est eslavemens de toz visses. Et por
repentance of heart so is washing of all vices And for
chou prions-nous à toz ke cascuns soit confiès à son pooir.»
this pray-we to all that each be confessed to his power
Tout ensi lor anoncha li capelains Phelippes le parole 524
All thus to-them announced the chaplain Philip the word
Nostre-Segnour. Et quant che vint à l'endemain par matin,
(of-)Our-Lord And when this came to the-next-day in morning
li os se desloga et s'arma. Et li capelain ki estoient en
the host itself dislodged and itself-armed And the chaplains who were in
l'ost celebrerent le sierviche Nostre-Segnour en l'ounour dou
the-host celebrated the service (of-)Our-Lord in the-honor of-the
Saint-Esperit, por chou ke Dex lor donnast hounour et
Holy-Spirit for this that God to-them might-give honor and

victore contre leur anemis. Apriès che se confiessierent
victory against their enemies After this themselves confessed
li preudome par l'ost, et puis rechurent corpus Domini,
the worthy-men through the-host and then received body of-the-Lord
cascuns endroit soi, au plus devotement k'il pot. Puis fu
each as-for himself at-the most devoutly that-he could Then was
prise li sainte Crois de no redemption, et fu commandée
taken the holy Cross of our redemption and was entrusted
au capelain Phelippe por chou ke il le portast.
to-the chaplain Philip for this that he it should-carry
525 Apriès che, se murent les batailles molt ordenéement,
After this themselves moved the battalions very orderly
cascuns garnis et apparelliés de son cors deffendre u
each furnished and equipped of his body to-defend or
d'autrui assaillir, se faire le convenist. Et fu droit une
of-another to-assail if to-do it should-behoove And it-was right an
nuit saint Piere, le premerain jour d'auoust. Ki là
eve (of-)saint Peter the first day of-August Who there
fust à cel point, assés peust veoir banieres et escus de
were at that point plenty could see banners and shields of
divierses connissanches, et desus toutes l'ensegne emperial,
different devices and above all the-ensign imperial
et l'empereour meismes ki vait ses batalles ordenant et
and the-emperor himself who goes his battalions ordering and
destraingnant de l'une partie. Et Pieres de Braiescuel faisoit
tightening on the-one side And Peter of Bracieux did
auté de l'autre part, entre lui et Nicholon de Mailli.
likewise on the-other side between him and Nicholas of Mailly
526 Li jors estoit biaus et seris, et li plains tant ingaus ke il
The day was fair and serene and the plain so even that it
n'i avoit mal pas, ne cose ki destorber les peust. Or ne
not-there had bad passage nor thing which hinder them could Now not

porent-il veoir ke il mais peust remanoir sans bataille, à chou
could-they see that it more could remain without battle at this
ke lor anemi estoient assés priès d'aus, dejouste une bruiere.
that their enemies were quite near of-them beside a heath
Et Buriles, ki avoec aus estoit, ot ordenées ses batailles et
And Boril who with them was had ordered his battalions and
mises en conrois. Si commenchierent lors à aprocier li un
put in troops So began then to approach the ones
des autres, si ke auques s'entreconnurent. Li noise i estoit
to-the others so that somewhat each-other-recognized The noise there was
si grans de toutes pars, et li tumulte et li hannissemens
so great from all sides and the tumult and the neighing
des chevaus, ke on n'i oïst neis Diu tonnant.
of-the horses that one not-there would-have-heard even God thundering
Et li empereres Henris vait se gent sermonnant d'esciele en 527
And the emperor Henry goes his people exhorting from-squadron to
esciele, et disant: «Segneur, je vos pri à toz communement
squadron and saying Lords I you pray to all jointly
ke vous soiés hui cest jor frere li uns à l'autre; et se il a
that you be today this day brothers the one to the-other and if there is
entre vous par aucune mesaventure, courous ne ire, ke tout
between you by some misadventure wrath or anger that all
soit entrepardonné. Et ne vous esmaiés point, mais soiés tout
be pardoned-each-other And not yourselves dismay at-all but be all
hardi et tout seur; ke nous les vaincrons hui, se Diu plaist.»
bold and all sure for we them shall-conquer today if to-God it-pleases
Et il respondirent ke de chou ert li consaus pris, ke jà
And they answered that of this was the counsel taken that ever
de couardie n'i aroit parlé ne pensé. Ke vous diroie-jou?
of cowardice not-there would-be spoken nor thought What to-you would-say-I
Par le predication del boin empereour Henri, et por chou
By the preaching of-the good emperor Henry and for this

ke cascuns estoit confiès selonc son pooir et cumeniiés,
that each was confessed according-to his power and communicated
cascuns estoit convoitans et desirans de conquerre ses anemis.
each was coveting and desiring to conquer his enemies
528 Et endementiers k'il parloient ensi, li marescaus de nostre
And meanwhile that-they spoke thus the marshal of our
ost esgarda par-desoz un casal, et pierchut le gent Burille
host looked below a hamlet and perceived the people (of-)Boril
ki venoient huant et glatissant, et menant une si grant
who came hooting and yelping and making a so great
tempieste ke bien cuidoient contrester à nos fourriers. Joffrois,
tempest that well they-thought to-resist to our foragers Geoffrey
ki marescaus estoit de nostre ost, manda à l'empereour ke
who marshal was of our host sent-word to the-emperor that
il aroit le bataille contre Burile le trahitour, ki empereour
he would-have the battle against Boril the traitor who emperor
se faisoit contre Diu et contre raison, et ke il chevauçast.
himself made against God and against reason and that he should-ride
Et quant li empereres l'oï, si li plot molt durement
And when the emperor it-heard so him pleased very greatly
chil mandemens; car molt estoit desirans à avoir le bataille.
that message for very he-was desirous to have the battle
529 «Biaus Sire Dex, dist-il, plaise vous ke nous hui nos
Fair Lord God said-he may-it-please you that we today ourselves
puissons vengier des Blas et des Commains, s'il vous vient
may avenge on-the Vlachs and on-the Cumans if-it to-you comes
à plaisir.» Lors apiela Pieron de Douay, et li dist ke il
to pleasure Then he-called Peter of Douai and to-him said that he
molt se fioit en lui, et ke il por Diu ne l'eslongast
much himself trusted in him and that he for God not him-should-distance
point ke il tout adiès ne li fust priès en cette besoingne
at-all that he all continually not to-him were near in this business

por son cors garder. «Car j'ai, dist-il, molt grant joie de che
for his body to-guard For I-have said-he very great joy of this
ke je voi ke il atendent; car s'il fesissent samblant de fuir,
that I see that they wait for if-they made semblance to flee
et Buriles vausist apriès lui ardoir le terre, sachiés bien ke je
and Boril wished after him to-burn the land know well that I
n'eusse nule fianche en nostre repaire; ains fust cascuns de
not-would-have any trust in our return but were each of
nous pierdus par droite famine et par soufraite de viande.»
us lost by sheer famine and by want of food
Adont apiela Gossiel le Moigne, Nicholon de Byarch, Gadoul 530
Then he-called Gossiel the Monk Nicholas of Byarch Gadoul
et Aalart, et ne sai quans des autres, et lor dist:
and Aalart and not I-know how-many of-the others and to-them said
«Segneur, gardés-vous bien ke nus de vous ne se desrenge
Lords take-heed-yourselves well that anyone of you not himself break-rank
devant che ke jou le commanderai. Vous véés bien ke che n'est
before this that I it shall-command You see well that this not-is
mie geus d'enfant ne solas; anchois est si crueus bataille et si
at-all game of-child nor solace rather is so cruel battle and so
morteus, ke se li uns de nous tenoit l'autre, je ne quit mie ke
deadly that if the one of us held the-other I not think at-all that
il le rendist por cent mil besans, ke il ne l'ochesist. —
he him would-render for a-hundred thousand bezants that he not him-would-kill
Sire, dist Pieres de Douay, k'alés-vous chi plaidant? Alés avant
Lord said Peter of Douai what-go-you here pleading Go forward
hardiement; et bien saciez ke se mors ne m'en destorne,
boldly and well know that if death not me-thence turn
vous ne serés hui devant moi le montant de quatre piés.»
you not will-be today before me the amount of four feet

531 Et quant li empereres oï chou, si se teut et ne
And when the emperor heard this so himself was-silent and not
dist plus à cele fois; ains chevauça viers le gent Burille,
said more at that time but rode toward the people (of-)Boril
dont il ot molt desiré le bataille. A celui matin, pour
whereof he had much desired the battle On that morning for
le douchour dou tans, chil oiselon cantoient clerement,
the sweetness of-the weather those little-birds sang clearly
cascuns selonc se maniere, et envoisiement. Dont Henris
each according-to its manner and merrily Whence Henry
de Valenchienes dist bien et aferme ke onkes mais, à nul
of Valenciennes says well and affirms that ever before on any
jor de se vie, n'avoit veu plus biel jour de celui.
day of his life not-had-he seen more fair day than that-one

The Chaplain's Sermon

V

Boril comes on with thirty-three thousand men in thirty-six battalions, sure of taking the emperor alive. Henry laces on his helmet, and the first charge goes to Peter of Bracieux, Nicholas of Mailly, and Milo the Brabançon; Geoffrey says that whoever dies will go to paradise. As the Vlachs sound their trumpets, the chaplain Philip, holding the Cross, tells the army it is the grain and the enemy the chaff, absolves them, and orders the charge.

532 K'i vaut alongemens? Les escieles s'entre-aprocierent par
What-there avails lengthening The squadrons each-other-approached with
grant orguel et par grant ire. Or en soit en lor aïde
great pride and with great anger Now thereof be in their aid
li Sires por cui li nostre se metent en abandon. A
the Lord for whom the ours themselves put in abandon At

tant es vous Burille venant o trente-trois mile homes
that behold you Boril coming with thirty-three thousand men
dont il avoit ordenées trente-sis batailles. Et portoient uns
whereof he had ordered thirty-six battalions And they-carried some
glaives vers à uns lons fiers de Bohaigne, et venoient
lances green with some long irons of Bohemia and came
par grant orguel, comme chil ki point ne prisoient nostre
with great pride as those who at-all not prized our
empereour ne son pooir, ains cuidoient prendre as mains
emperor nor his power but thought to-take with-the hands
l'empereour et tous chiaus ki o lui estoient.
the-emperor and all those who with him were
Et li empereres fist chevaucier se gent, et lor dist ke or 533
And the emperor had ride his people and to-them said that now
se contenist cascuns come preudom; car il véoient bien ke
himself should-bear each as worthy-man for they saw well that
li besoins en estoit venus. Adont commanda ke on tenist
the need thereof was come Then he-commanded that one should-hold
Baiart priès de lui. Apriès che lacha son hyaume, et fist
Bayard near of him After this he-laced his helmet and had
porter devant lui l'ensegne emperial. Et lors s'aprocierent
carried before him the-ensign imperial And then themselves-approached
les batailles; et Pieres de Braiescuel et Nicholes de Mailli
the battalions and Peter of Bracieux and Nicholas of Mailly
si furent en l'avant-garde avoec Joffroi le marescal, et li
so were in the-vanguard with Geoffrey the marshal and to-him
disent ke il poinderoient avant, entre els et Milon le
said that they would-charge forward between them and Milo the
Braibant, et puis Guillaumes dou Parcoi, et Lyenars de
Brabançon and then William of-the Perchoy and Liénard of
Hyelemes; et li empereres garderoit les poigneours.
Hélesmes and the emperor would-guard the chargers

534 «Por Diu, segnour, dist Joffrois, or gardés ke chil poindres soit
For God lords said Geoffrey now take-heed that that charge be
si bien furnis, et si à point ke nous n'en soiesmes blasmé
so well furnished and so to point that we not-thereof be blamed
de nos anemis ne gabé. Et chil ki chi fera mauvais samblant
by our enemies nor mocked And he who here will-make bad semblance
doit bien iestre banis de le glore de Nostre Segnour. Por Diu,
ought well be banished from the glory of Our Lord For God
souviegne-vous des prudomes anciiens ki devant nous ont esté,
remember-you of-the worthy-men ancient who before us have been
ki encore sont ramenteu es livres des estores. Et bien saciés
who still are recalled in-the books of-the histories And well know
ke ki por Diu morra en ceste besoigne, s'ame en ira toute
that who for God will-die in this business his-soul thence will-go all
florie en paradis; et chil ki vis en escapera, sera toz les
flowering into paradise and he who alive thence will-escape will-be all the
jors de se vie honnerés et ramanteus en bien apriès se mort.
days of his life honored and recalled in good after his death
535 «Se nos créons bien en Nostre Segneur, li cans sera nostres.
If we believe well in Our Lord the field will-be ours
S'il ont plus grant gent ke nous, ke nous caut? Il ne
If-they have more great people than we what to-us matters They not
valent riens. Chou les a hui si enruhis ke il nos troverent
are-worth anything This them has today so emboldened that they us found
ier un poi travelliés. Ore dont, segneur, por Dieu n'atendons
yesterday a little wearied Now then lords for God not-let-us-wait
mie tant ke il premierement nos requierent. Car tant
at-all so-long that they first us attack For so-much
sai-jou bien de guerre, ke ki requiert ses anemis asprement et
know-I well of war that who attacks his enemies fiercely and
vistement au comencier, plus en sont legier à desconfire
quickly at-the beginning more thereby are-they easy to defeat

et plus en sont espoenté. Et ki encore se faindra à
and more thereby are-they frightened And who yet himself will-shirk in
cestui besoing, jà Dex de glore ne li doinst hounour.»
this need ever God of glory not to-him give honor
A tant guerpissent les palefrois, si sont es destriers monté; 536
At that they-leave the palfreys so are on-the chargers mounted
et se d'ore en avant ne remaint en le gent Burille, hui
and if from-now on forward not it-remains in the people (of-)Boril today
mais ert li estours fels et crueus, si comme vous le
henceforth will-be the fight fell and cruel so as you it
porés oïr. A tant s'aprocent les batailles d'ambes-deus
will-be-able to-hear At that themselves-approach the battalions from-both
pars, et chevaucent en conroi, et s'entrevienent de si priès
sides and ride in array and each-other-come from so near
ke il s'entrevoient tout de plain. Li jours estoit si biaus
that they each-other-see all in full The day was so fair
comme vous avez oï, et li Blac firent lor trompes sonner;
as you have heard and the Vlachs had their trumpets sounded
et li capelains Phelippes, ki tint en se main le crois de
and the chaplain Philip who held in his hand the cross of
nostre redemption, lors commencha à sermonner, et dist:
our redemption then began to preach and said
«Segnor, por Diu soiés preudome en vous meismes, et 537
Lords for God be worthy-men in you yourselves and
aiiés fianche en Nostre-Segnor, ki por nous soufri paine
have trust in Our-Lord who for us suffered pain
et torment, et ki por le pechié d'Adan et d'Evain soufri
and torment and who for the sin of-Adam and of-Eve suffered
martyre par l'ocoison del mors ke il morsent en le pume,
martyrdom by the-occasion of-the bite which they bit in the apple
por lequele tout aliemes es paines del tenebrous infier; et
for which all we-went into-the pains of-the shadowy hell and

par le propre mort Jhesu-Crist en fumes racaté. Et ki chi
by the own death (of-)Jesus-Christ thence were-we redeemed And who here
morra por lui, il ira ou sain Saint Abrahan pardevant lui.
will-die for him he will-go into-the bosom (of-)Saint Abraham before him
538 «Toutes ces gens ke vous véés ichi ne croient Diu ne
All these people whom you see here not believe God nor
se poissanche; et vous ki boin crestien iestes et tout
his power and you who good Christians are and all
preudome, se Diu plaist, et ki de mains païs iestes chi
worthy-men if to-God it-pleases and who from many countries are here
assamblé par le commandement l'apostole, vous iestes tout
assembled by the command (of-)the-pope you are all
confiessé et mondé de toz pechiés et de toutes ordures
confessed and cleansed of all sins and of all filths
de vilenie. Vous iestes li grains, et véés de là le paille.
of villainy You are the grain and see from there the chaff
Et por Diu gardés-vous ke cascuns vaille un castelain
And for God take-heed-yourselves that each be-worth a castellan
au besoing, et ke li cuers de cascun soit plus gros
at-the need and that the heart of each be more big
d'un hyaume. Ke vaut chou? Je vos commant à toz, en
than-a helmet What avails this I you command to all in
non de penitanche, ke vous poigniés encontre les anemis
name of penance that you charge against the enemies
Jhesu-Crist; et je vous assoil, de par Diu, de toz les
(of-)Jesus-Christ and I you absolve on behalf-of God of all the
pechiés ke vous onques feistes jusques au point d'ore.»
sins which you ever did until to-the point of-now

The Defeat of Boril

VI

The first charge strikes crying "Holy Sepulcher," and the Vlachs and Cumans scatter like larks before sparrowhawks, while Henry rides in a red samite coat with little gold crosses. The chronicler counts it a miracle: thirty-six battalions routed by fifteen, with twenty knights apiece where Boril's smallest had nine hundred men. The host, which had no food to last half a day, finds plenty that night and says Saint Julian's paternoster for good lodging.

Quant li capelains ot son sermon definé, et il ot monstré le 539
When the chaplain had his sermon ended and he had shown the
crois ù Nostre Sires rechut, por son povre pueple racater,
cross where Our Lord received for his poor people to-redeem
mort et passion, chil ki poindre devoient devant par son
death and passion those who charge were-to first by his
commandement, quant il virent liu et tans, cascuns endroit
command when they saw place and time each as-for
soi, lanche baissie, hurte cheval des espourons en escriant
himself lance lowered strikes horse with-the spurs in crying
Saint Sepulcre! molt humlement. Et assamblent as Blas
Holy Sepulcher very humbly And they-engage with-the Vlachs
et as Commains, et porte cascuns le sien par tierre
and with-the Cumans and bears each the his-own to earth
molt felenessement. Et saciés ke molt en i ot à cele
very fiercely And know that many thereof there were at that
empointe d'ochis et de navrés. Et de chiaus ki ciéent, c'est
onset of-killed and of wounded And of those who fall this-is
niens ke il mais aient pooir del relever; car tout à fait
nothing that they more may-have power of-the rising for all in step
ke li un les abatent, sont aparellié li autre ki les ochient.
that the ones them throw-down are ready the others who them kill

540 Et sitost comme Blac et Commain connurent le desconfiture
And as-soon as Vlachs and Cumans knew the defeat
ki sor eus tornoit si mortelment et si cruelment, il se
which upon them turned so mortally and so cruelly they themselves
misent au fuir sans plus atendre, es s'esparsent, li uns chà,
put to-the fleeing without more to-wait lo themselves-scatter the ones here
li autres là, aussi comme les aloes font por les espreviers.
the others there just as the larks do for the sparrowhawks
Et les autres batailles ki ordenées estoient repoingnent
And the other battalions which ordered were charge-in-turn
erramment, si comme Nicholes de Mailli et Pieres de
at-once so as Nicholas of Mailly and Peter of
Braiescuel. Et s'abandonnerent vers le bataille de Burile, ki
Bracieux And themselves-abandoned toward the battalion of Boril which
seise cens homes avoit en s'esciele; et li nostre de chà
sixteen hundred men had in his-squadron and the ours from here
ne furent ke vint-cinq, et si assamblerent as seise cens.
not were but twenty-five and so engaged with-the sixteen hundred
Joffrois et Miles li Braibans poinsent cascuns o le soie.
Geoffrey and Milo the Brabançon charged each with the his-own
541 Ke vous diroie-jou? Il se misent à le fuite, et li
What to-you would-say-I They themselves put to the flight and the
nostre les ochioient en fuiant. Et por chou k'il venissent
ours them killed in fleeing And for this that-they might-come
à garison plus tost, cascuns jetoit jus tels armes k'il portoit.
to safety more soon each threw down such arms that-he carried
Et li empereres toutes voies chevauce armés si ricement
And the emperor all the-same rides armed so richly
comme à lui convenoit; et por se reconnisanche il ot vestu
as to him befitted and for his recognition he had put-on
une cote de vermel samit à petites croisetes d'or; et tout
a coat of red samite with little crosslets of-gold and all

d'autretel maniere estoit li hyaumes ke il avoit ou chief.
of-such manner was the helmet which he had on-the head
Ke vaut chou? Por noient quesist-on plus biel chevalier de
What avails this For nothing would-seek-one more fair knight than
lui, ne ki mius samblast estre preudom as armes, quant il
him nor who better seemed to-be worthy-man in-the arms when he
fu montés sour Bayart, et fist devant lui porter s'oriflambe,
was mounted upon Bayard and had before him carried his-oriflamme
de tels desconnissanches menues com vous avez oï.
with such devices small as you have heard
Et si compaignon chevauçoient environ lui, ardant molt 542
And his companions rode around him burning very
durement de poindre et desirant; et sivoient à espouron
greatly to charge and desiring and followed at spur
cels ki devant broçoient et aloient caçant. Por noient en
those who before spurred and went chasing For nothing thereof
blasmeroit-on un; car tout i furent preudome, et bien
would-blame-one one for all there were worthy-men and well
en fist cascuns samblant. Chil as quels il fu commandé
thereof made each semblance Those to which it was commanded
poinsent premiers et li autre les garderent si comme
charged first and the others them guarded so as
drois fu. Ceste desconfiture fu faite de là Phinepople un
right was This defeat was done of beyond Philippopolis a
joesdi. Et bien avoient à celui point nostre gent mestier de
Thursday And well had at that point our people need of
tel secours ke Nostre Sires leur fist iluec: car bien saciés,
such succor as Our Lord to-them did there for well know
il n'avoient mie viande seulement à demi jour passer.
they not-had at-all food only to half day to-pass

543 Ke vaut chou? Molt fu grans li encaus apriès Burile et
What avails this Very was great the pursuit after Boril and
apriès se gent; et il s'enfuirent toutes voies cemme chil
after his people and they themselves-fled all the-same as those
ki plus n'i oserent atendre; et nostre gens les encaucent
who more not-there dared to-wait and our people them pursue
toutes voies tant ke trache lor en dure. Molt fist
all the-same so-long that track to-them thereof lasts Much did
illuec Nostre Sires apiert miracle à nostre gent, quant il
there Our Lord open miracle to our people when they
desconfirent Burile, ki requis les avoit atout trente-trois
defeated Boril who attacked them had with thirty-three
mille homes, dont il avoit fait trente sis batailles, et nostre
thousand men whereof he had made thirty six battalions and our
gent n'en avoient ke quinze, et trois de purs Grifons.
people not-thereof had but fifteen and three of pure Griffons
Mais molt ot grant devise des uns as autres; car en
But very there-had great difference of-the ones to-the others for in
cascune de nos batailles n'avoit ke vint chevaliers, fors en
each of our battalions not-there-had but twenty knights except in
la bataille de l'empereour, ù il en ot cinquante; et en
the battalion of the-emperor where it thereof had fifty and in
toute le menour de Burile, en ot neuf cens. Ceste cose ne
all the least of Boril thereof had nine hundred This thing not
fust mie bien partie, se Dex n'i mesist consel; mais no
were at-all well divided if God not-there put counsel but our
gent estoient comme li innocent, et li gens Burile li deable.
people were as the innocents and the people (of-)Boril the devils
544 Ke vous diroie-jou plus? Quant il furent desconfit, Nostre
What to-you would-say-I more When they were defeated Our
Sires envoia si grans plentés de toz biens en nostre ost, ke
Lord sent so great plenties of all goods into our host that

tout furent de joie raempli. Cele nuit n'orent en l'ost fors
all were with joy filled That night not-had-they in the-host except
ke grant joie et grant solas. Et por esperanche d'avoir boin
that great joy and great solace And for hope to-have good
hostel, dist cascuns le patre nostre saint Julien. Ke vaut
lodging said each the pater noster (of-)saint Julian What avails
chou? Tels miracles comme vous avés oï, et tel acrossement
this Such miracles as you have heard and such increase
à l'empire de Constantinoble, et si grant essauchement à le
to the-empire of Constantinople and so great exaltation to the
Esglise de Rome, fist Nostre-Sires as crestiens à cel termine.
Church of Rome did Our-Lord to-the Christians at that time

Slav's Homage, and the Flight of the Lascaris

VII

At Crucemont Slav falls at Henry's feet and becomes his man; he asks for the emperor's daughter, and Henry grants her, with the conquered land, and sends his brother Eustace with Slav and two battalions. Henry sets masons to rebuilding Pamphilon and leaves the marshal to finish it. When Theodore the Lascaris attacks David, Henry crosses the Arm; the Lascaris flees to Nicaea, a thousand men drowning in the rivers. Winter rains stop the pursuit.

Ensi comme vous avés oï fu Buriles desconfis, et teus 545
Thus as you have heard was Boril defeated and so
menés comme vous avés oï. Ke vos diroie-je plus? Nostre
treated as you have heard What to-you would-say-I more Our
gent vinrent à Crucemont, et asseurerent le ville et le
people came to Crucemont and secured the town and the
castiel. Esclas, uns haus hom ki Burile guerrioit, et si estoit
castle Slav a high man who Boril warred and so was

ses cousins germains (car chil Buriles disoit ke le terre
his cousin german for that Boril said that the land
ke Esclas tenoit devoit estre soie, et Esclas disoit ke non
which Slav held ought be his and Slav said that not
faisoit; et por chou s'entreguerrioient-il, si ke Esclas couroit
it-did and for this each-other-warred-they so that Slav ran
souvent sour lui, et l'afoiblioit molt de gent et d'amis et de
often upon him and him-weakened many of people and of-friends and of
castiaus); ichil Esclas, por chou ke il voloit avoir le forche
castles that Slav for this that he wished to-have the strength
et l'aïde de l'empereour Henri, il envoia à lui pour pais faire.
and the-aid of the-emperor Henry he sent to him for peace to-make
546 Tout ensi comme je vous di, apriès tout chou, vint chil
All thus as I to-you say after all this came that
Esclas à l'empereour, et le trova séant en se tente, en le
Slav to the-emperor and him found sitting in his tent in the
compaignie de ses plus haus barons. Esclas vint en le tente
company of his most high barons Slav came into the tent
devant toz les barons ki laiens estoient, et se laissa caïr
before all the barons who in-there were and himself let fall
as piés l'empereour, et li baisa, et puis le main. Ke vous
at-the feet (of-)the-emperor and him kissed and then the hand What to-you
diroie-jou? li pais fu faite et confremée, et Esclas devint
would-say-I the peace was made and confirmed and Slav became
illuec hom à l'empereour Henri, et li jura à porter foi
there man to the-emperor Henry and to-him swore to bear faith
et loiauté d'ore en-avant comme à son droiturier seignour.
and loyalty from-now forward as to his rightful lord
547 Et lors li dist li marescaus privéement ke il rouvast
And then to-him said the marshal privately that he should-ask
à l'empereour une soie fille ke il avoit. Et Esclas se
to the-emperor a his-own daughter which he had And Slav himself

ragenoilla de rechief devant l'empereour, et li dist: «Sire,
knelt-again over again before the-emperor and to-him said Lord
on me fait à entendant ke vous avés une fille, lequele je
one me makes to understanding that you have a daughter which I
vos pri, s'il vous plaist, ke vous me doingniez à moillier.
you pray if-it you pleases that you to-me give to wife
Jou sui assés riches hom de terre et de tresor d'argent et
I am quite rich man of land and of treasure of-silver and
d'or, et assés me tient-on en mon païs por jentill home.
of-gold and quite me holds-one in my country for noble man
Si vous pri, s'il vous plaist, ke vous le me donnés.»
So you I-pray if-it you pleases that you her to-me give
Et tout li haut home ki illuec estoient en present li loent 548
And all the high men who there were in presence to-him advise
ke il li doinst, por chou ke il de melleur cuer l'en
that he to-him give for this that he with better heart him-thereof
sierve et plus volentiers. Et li empereres dist: «Segnor,
serve and more willingly And the emperor said Lords
et puiske vous le me conselliés, et jou l'otroi.» Puis
and since you it to-me counsel and I it-grant Then
commencha à sorire, si apiela Esclas, et li dist: «Esclas,
he-began to smile so called Slav and to-him said Slav
je vous doins me fille par tel maniere ke Dex vous en
I to-you give my daughter in such manner that God you thereof
laist joïr; et vous otroi avoec, toute le conqueste ke nous
let enjoy and to-you grant with-it all the conquest which we
avons faite ichi, par tel maniere ke vous en serés mes hom
have made here in such manner that you thereof will-be my man
et m'en siervirés. Et si vous otroi avoec, Blakie-le-Grant,
and me-thereof will-serve And so to-you grant with-it Great-Vlachia
dont je vous ferai segnour, se Diu plaist et jou vif.»
whereof I you shall-make lord if to-God it-pleases and I live

De chou li vait Esclas au pié, si l'en gracie molt
For this to-him goes Slav at-the foot so him-thereof thanks very
durement tout en plourant. A tant s'en torna Esclas, et
greatly all in weeping At that himself-thence turned Slav and
nostre gent s'en revinrent à un castel ke on apiele
our people themselves-thence came-back to a castle which one calls
Estanemach; et là revint Esclas à nostre gent. Dont
Stenimaka and there came-back Slav to our people Then
vont entre els no baron devisant là ù on espouseroit le
go between them our barons deliberating there where one would-espouse the
damoisiele, et quant. Et li empereres li presenta son cheval
damsel and when And the emperor to-him presented his horse
ke il amoit mervelleusement, et si li carga Wistasse son
which he loved marvelously and so to-him entrusted Eustace his
frere o deus batailles de se gent; mais tant i ot ke li
brother with two battalions of his people but so-much there was that the
une fu des Grifons d'Andrenople, et li autre de nos François.
one was of-the Griffons of-Adrianople and the other of our French
Dont ne demourerent plus nostre gent illuec, ains s'en
Then not remained more our people there but themselves-thence
repairierent à Andrenople sans destourbier, et d'illuec
returned to Adrianople without hindrance and from-there
s'en vinrent à le Panphile. Et là fist tendre ses trés,
themselves-thence came to the Pamphilon And there he-had pitched his tents
et esgarda le castiel, ki toz estoit fondus et degastés. Dont
and looked-at the castle which all was collapsed and wasted Then
jura li empereres ke jà par son gré ne s'en partira
swore the emperor that ever by his will not himself-thence will-depart
nus devant chou ke li mur seront rehauchié et raparellié;
anyone before this that the walls will-be raised-again and repaired-again
et li marescaus dist ke il s'acorderoit bien à son commant.
and the marshal said that he himself-would-accord well to his command

Dont a mandé les ouvriers par toz les lius ù il les pot
Then has summoned the workers through all the places where he them could
avoir et les machons, et fist porter à toz communement
have and the masons and had carried by all jointly
le chauch et le mortier; c'onkes nus n'en fu espargniés.
the lime and the mortar that-ever anyone not-thereof was spared
Là fu li empereres une grant pieche, tant ke novieles li 551
There was the emperor a great while until that news to-him
vinrent ke Thodres li Ascres ot seurecouru Davit, et se li
came that Theodore the Lascaris had attacked David and if the
empereres ne le secouroit hastivement, il aroit se terre
emperor not him succored hastily he would-have his land
pierdue. Et quant li empereres l'oï, pour chou ke David
lost And when the emperor it-heard for this that David
s'estoit adiès maintenus enviers lui loiaument, si en fu molt
himself-was always maintained toward him loyally so thereof was-he very
dolans. Dont apiela le marescal, et li dist ke il ne se
sorrowful Then he-called the marshal and to-him said that he not himself
meust tresch'adont ke li castiaus fust refremés ensi comme il
should-move until-then that the castle were re-fortified so as it
estoit devant. Et li marescaus le commanda à Nostre-Segneur,
was before And the marshal him commended to Our-Lord
et dist ke il feroit bien son commant selonc son pooir.
and said that he would-do well his command according-to his power
Dont s'en ala li empereres viers Constantinoble, por 552
Then himself-thence went the emperor toward Constantinople for
chou ke il ne vaut mie que David fesist nul mauvais plait
this that he not wished at-all that David made any bad bargain
à l'Ascre; et dist ke il passeroit le Bras Saint-Gorge por
with the-Lascaris and said that he would-cross the Arm Saint-George for
assambler encontre lui; et ki dont en puet avoir, si en
to-engage against him and who then thereof can have so thereof

ait. Et tout ensi comme il devisa se fit passer le Brach,
let-him-have And all thus as he devised himself had ferried the Arm
et commanda ke nus ne demourast arriere ke il ne fust o
and commanded that anyone not should-stay behind that he not were with
lui à Chartelenne. Et quant li Ascres sot ke li empereres
him at Chartelenne And when the Lascaris knew that the emperor
venoit sor lui, s'il fu esmaiés, che ne fait pas à demander.
came upon him if-he was dismayed this not is at-all to ask
553 Dont lassa le siege ke il ot mis devant l'Areclée, si
Then he-left the siege which he had put before the-Heraclea so
s'enfui. Et bien saciés ke il en noiierent es fluns
himself-fled And well know that there thereof drowned in-the rivers
jusques à mil u plus; ne onkes li Ascres ne tira ses
up to thousand or more nor ever the Lascaris not drew his
regnes duskes à tant k'il vint à Niké-le-Grant. Dont
reins until at so-much that-he came to Nicaea-the-Great Then
descendi et rendi graces à Nostre-Segneur de chou ke
he-dismounted and rendered thanks to Our-Lord of this that
il estoit ensi escapés. Et se Dex evust consenti ke nostre
he was thus escaped And if God had consented that our
gens fust venue quatre jors avant tant seulement, tout chil
people were come four days before so only all those
ki manoient de-là le Bras evussent esté pris, et li Ascres
who dwelled beyond the Arm would-have been taken and the Lascaris
ausi. Mais il remest à chou ke il ne plot à Nostre-Segneur.
also But it remained at this that it not pleased to Our-Lord
554 Adont fu trop li empereres dolans et courechiés de chou
Then was exceedingly the emperor sorrowful and angered of this
ke il ne pot ataindre l'Ascre, ne plus sivir por les grans aigues
that he not could reach the-Lascaris nor more follow for the great waters
et por les pluies, et les grans froidours del tans d'yvier, ki
and for the rains and the great colds of-the time of-winter which

dont estoit miervelleusement fors et frois; ains s'en torna
then was marvelously strong and cold but himself-thence turned
en Constantinoble à tote sa gent et son harnois. Là sejorna
to Constantinople with all his people and his gear There sojourned
li empereres une grant pieche tout à pais. Et li marescaus
the emperor a great while all at peace And the marshal
Joffrois ot fait le castiel de le Panphile refremer et garnir
Geoffrey had had the castle of the Pamphilon re-fortified and furnished
de nos François; et puis s'en revint en Constantinoble.
with our French and then himself-thence came-back to Constantinople

Slav's Wedding, and Henry Turns to Salonika

VIII

Slav comes to Constantinople for his wedding, so eager that one day seems forty, and marries Henry's daughter. On parting, Henry tells her to be gentle with a husband whose language she does not speak, but never to turn her heart from her own people. His barons advise him to go to Salonika, where the Lombards guarding the land for the marquis's son owe him homage; leaving the marshal to guard the land, he sets out, but the Lombards mean to keep it.

Et si ke li marescaus repairoit de le Panphile, il encontra 555
And so as the marshal returned from the Pamphilon he met
Esclas, et li demanda ù il aloit. Et il respondi k'il
Slav and to-him asked where he went And he answered that-he
aloit à l'empereour por faire ses nueces, comme chil ki
went to the-emperor for to-make his wedding as he who
de son sairement se voloit aquiter: «Ciertes, sire, dist li
of his oath himself wished to-acquit Certainly lord said the
marescaus, de che sui-je molt liés. Et bien saciés ke molt
marshal of this am-I very glad And well know that very

arés boin pere en mon segneur l'empereour, se vous de
you-will-have good father in my lord the-emperor if you to
retenir s'amor vous penés; et si vous di ke vous ore en
keep his-love yourself take-pains and so to-you I-say that you now at
cest point en Constantinoble le trouverés. Et tant vous
this point in Constantinople him will-find And so-much to-you
sai-ge bien por voir à dire de me damoisiele vostre feme,
know-I well for truth to say of my damsel your wife
ke elle est biele, sage, courtoise et deboinaire, et soufrans,
that she is fair wise courteous and gracious and patient
et entechie de toutes boines teches ke damoisiele doit
and endowed with all good qualities which damsel ought
avoir en soi; et si m'a-on dit ke elle est à Salembrie.»
have in herself and so me-has-one told that she is at Selymbria
556 Et quant Esclas l'entendi, molt en ot grant joie. Ke vaut
And when Slav it-heard very thereof he-had great joy What avails
autre alonge? Esclas s'en vint droit à Salembrie por se
other lengthening Slav himself-thence came straight to Selymbria for his
feme: illuec le trova, si li dist ke il veut k'ele s'en
wife there her found so to-her said that he wishes that-she herself-thence
viegne en Constantinoble; et elle dist k'ele est preste d'aler
come to Constantinople and she said that-she is ready to-go
ent. Et Esclas, ki est aussi comme toz embrasés de l'amour
thence And Slav who is just as all inflamed with the-love
à le damoisiele dès lors k'il le vit, fist tant k'il l'enmena
for the damsel since then that-he her saw did so-much that-he her-led-away
en Constantinoble; car molt desire le jor ke il l'ait espousée;
to Constantinople for much he-desires the day that he her-have espoused
si li samble bien ke uns seus jors en dure quarante.
so to-him seems well that one single day thereof lasts forty

Et quant li empereres entent le nouviele d'Esclas, il 557
And when the emperor hears the news of-Slav he
vint contre lui; et puis s'en revienent ensamble en
came to-meet him and then themselves-thence come-back together to
Constantinoble, et li fait li empereres se feme espouser.
Constantinople and to-him makes the emperor his wife marry
Et se il i ot assés joie et solas, che ne fait mie à
And if it there had plenty joy and solace this not is at-all to
demander. Il i ot si grant plenté de toz biens comme
ask It there had so great plenty of all goods as
on poroit soushaitier por cors d'ome aaisier, et tout ausi
one could wish for body of-man to-ease and all just
comme on les puisast en une fontaine ù il soursissent.
as one them drew from a fountain where they sprang
Ensi demoura Esclas en Constantinoble toute cele semaine,
Thus remained Slav in Constantinople all that week
et puis se parti de l'empereour à toute se feme. Li
and then himself parted from the-emperor with all his wife The
empereres li fist toute l'ounour ke il faire li pot,
emperor to-him did all the-honor which he do to-him could
et le convoia grant pieche atout grant gent; et anchois
and him escorted great while with great people and before
k'il s'en partesist, dist il tout privéement à se fille:
that-he himself-thence departed said he all privately to his daughter
«Biele fille, or soiiés sage et courtoise. Vous avés un 558
Fair daughter now be wise and courteous You have a
home pris avoec lequel vous vos en alés, ki est auques
man taken with whom you yourself thence go who is somewhat
sauvages; car vous n'entendés son langage, ne il ne reset
savage for you not-understand his language nor he not knows-in-turn
point dou vostre. Pour Diu, gardés ke vous jà pour chou
at-all of-the yours For God take-heed that you ever for this

ne soiiés ombrage vers lui, ne changans de vostre talent, ne
not be skittish toward him nor changing of your mind nor
vilaine. Car molt est grans hontes à jentill feme quant elle
churlish For very is great shame to noble woman when she
desdaigne son mari, et si en est trop durement blasmée
disdains her husband and so thereof is-she exceedingly greatly blamed
à Diu et au siecle. Sour toute rien, por Diu, gardés ke
by God and by-the world Above all thing for God take-heed that
vos ne lassiés vo boin usage pour l'autrui mauvais. Si soiiés
you not leave your good usage for another's bad So be
simple, douche, deboinaire, et soufrans tant comme vostre
simple sweet gracious and patient so-long as your
maris vaudra; et si honnerés toute se gent por s'ounor.
husband will-wish and so you-will-honor all his people for his-honor
559 «Mais deseur tout, gardés toutes voies ke vous jà por lor
But above all take-heed all the-same that you ever for their
amour ne por lor acointance, quele ke il l'aient à vous ne
love nor for their acquaintance whatever that they it-have to you or
vous à eus, retraiiés vostre cuer de nostre gent amer, dont
you to them withdraw your heart from our people to-love whence
vous iestes estraite. — Sire, fait-elle, or saciés de voir ke vous
you are sprung Lord says-she now know for truth that you
jà de moi, se Diu plaist, vos n'orés mauvaise noviele. Mais,
ever of me if to-God it-pleases you not-will-hear bad news But
biaus dous sire, nos sommes au departir, che m'est avis.
fair sweet lord we are at-the parting this to-me-is opinion
Or proi-jou Diu ke, se il li plaist, il vos doinst forche de
Now pray-I God that if it him pleases he you give strength to
sormonter vos anemis, et acroissanche de vostre hounour.» A
overcome your enemies and increase of your honor At
tant s'entrebaisent, et puis se departent li uns de l'autre.
that each-other-kiss and then themselves part the one from the-other

Li empereres retorne en Constantinoble, et mande ses barons, 560
The emperor returns to Constantinople and summons his barons
et lor prie ke il li doinsent consel se il sejornera
and them prays that they to-him give counsel if he will-stay
u chevaucera cest yvier. Ke vos tenroie-jou par alonges? Si
or will-ride this winter What you would-hold-I by lengthenings His
baron li loerent ke il alast à Salenyke por consellier
barons to-him advised that he should-go to Salonika for to-counsel
le tierre et por secourre et por chou ke li Lombart, ki
the land and for to-succor and for this that the Lombards who
gardien en estoient, li feissent homage et feuté por le fil
guardians thereof were to-him should-do homage and fealty for the son
dou marchis, et por chou k'il ne peust estre mis arriere de
of-the marquis and for this that-he not could be put back from
son droit par defaute de segnor, et por chou ke li baron,
his right by default of lord and for this that the barons
ki sevent les atiranches de le terre et comment elle doit
who know the arrangements of the land and how it ought
aler, en rengent à l'empereour son droit et à l'enfant aussi.
go thereof render to the-emperor his right and to the-child also
Et quant li empereres oï chou, il dist à ses homes ke bien 561
And when the emperor heard this he said to his men that well
lor otrioit ensi. «Mais il convient, fait-il, ke nous atirons
to-them he-granted thus But it behooves says-he that we arrange
liquel de nos barons ramanront ichi por le terre garder; car
which of our barons will-remain here for the land to-guard for
toutevoies jou en voel remanoir sans souspeçon.» Dont
nevertheless I thereof wish to-remain without suspicion Then
esgarderent ke li marescaus remanroit, et Paiens d'Orliens, et
they-decided that the marshal would-remain and Payen of-Orléans and
Miles li Braibans; et lassierent avoec eus chevaliers et siergans,
Milo the Brabançon and they-left with them knights and sergeants

por chou ke se aucuns lor vausist mesfaire par aventure, ke il
for this that if anyone them wished to-harm by chance that they
s'en pevussent deffendre. Apriès a fait garnir Salembrie
themselves-thence could defend Afterward has had furnished Selymbria
de chevaliers et de siergans, et toz ses autres castiaus
with knights and with sergeants and all his other castles
aussi; et si envoia Lyenart à Verisse, et Herbiert al Visoi.
also and so sent Liénard to Verisse and Herbert to-the Vizye
562 Et à tant est li empereres meus por aler de Constantinoble
And at that is the emperor set-out for to-go from Constantinople
à Salenyque, por savoir se li Lombart feroient enviers lui chou
to Salonika for to-know if the Lombards would-do toward him this
ke il devoient. Mais il ne sera pas ensi comme il cuide;
that they ought But it not will-be at-all so as he thinks
car il dient ke il ont le tierre conquise, si le voelent garder
for they say that they have the land conquered so it wish to-keep
avoec l'enfant au marchis. Mais se il en ceste esperanche
with the-child of-the marquis But if they in this hope
le feissent, che fust auques priés de raison; mais il n'i
it did this were somewhat near of reason but they not-there
entendoient point de droit, anchois le voloient retenir por eus.
intended a-whit of right rather it wished to-retain for themselves

The Frozen River, and Christopolis Shut

IX

Henry leaves Rodosto in a cold so bitter that many die, and Vlachs ambush his harbingers. Beyond Rusion a river freezes and the host crosses dry-shod, and the Greeks, recalling a prophecy that whoever did so would rule thirty-two years, say God loves this emperor. Christopolis shuts its gates, and the count of Biandrate, who has garrisoned the Vale of Philippi against Henry, will not come to him. Eustace meets him at Drama with twenty knights.

Li empereres vint à Rodestoc, si assambla se gent illuec. 563
The emperor came to Rodosto so assembled his people there
Et saciés ke il negoit et il gieloit à celui point ke il se
And know that it snowed and it froze at that point that he himself
parti de le vile, tant asprement ke à paine ke li langhe
departed from the town so harshly that with difficulty that the tongue
n'engieloit en le bouche de cascun. A l'un engieloient li pié,
froze in the mouth of each To the-one froze the feet
et à l'autre les mains, au tierc li doit, et li nés au quart;
and to the-other the hands to-the third the fingers and the nose to-the fourth
et au quint crevoit li bouche par destreche. Ke vaut chou?
and to-the fifth split the mouth by distress What avails this
Assés en i ot de mors. Or voelle Dex ke li paine de
Plenty thereof there were of dead Now may-wish God that the pain of
cascun i soit emploïe si comme il set ke mestiers lor
each there be employed so as he knows that need to-them
est, et ke li empereres en soit honnerés si avant comme
is and that the emperor thereby be honored so far as
il doit. Mais avant ke che soit, il ara enduré maint grant
he ought But before that this be he will-have endured many-a great
travail, et si home avoec lui; car li flumaire estoient si roit,
labor and his men with him for the rivers were so swift

si grant, si parfont et si anious, ke se par les miracles de
so great so deep and so troublesome that if by the miracles of
Diu n'i passoit-on, nus hom n'en peust venir à chief.
God not-there passed-one any man not-thereof could come to end
564 Toz li mons ki l'empereour véoit errer par tel tans,
All the world who the-emperor saw journey in such weather
s'esmervelloit ù il aloit ne ke il queroit, et quel cose il
itself-marveled where he went or what he sought and what thing he
pensoit à faire: car bien saciés, nus ne le savoit, se chil
thought to do for well know anyone not it knew except those
non ki de son consel estoient. Ke vaut chou? Ki vous
not who of his council were What avails this Who to-you
raconteroit ses gistes juskes à Salenyke, che seroit uns grans
would-recount his lodgings as-far to Salonika this would-be a great
anuis. Mais cele nuit k'il fist si grant froit comme je
annoyance But that night that-it made so great cold as I
vous ai dit, il gut à Naples. L'endemain par matin, il mut
to-you have said he lay at Neapolis The-next-day in morning he moved
de Naples; mais chil ki les osteus devoient prendre murent
from Neapolis but those who the lodgings were-to take moved
avant (si comme ne sai quel escuier ki se leverent
before so as not I-know what squires who themselves rose
plus matin). Chil chevaucierent tout desarmé, si com chil
more early Those rode all unarmed so as those
ki ne doutoient ke nus encombriers lor deust avenir.
who not feared that any hindrance to-them should befall
565 Lors regarderent outre Megecharrée et virent à lor encontre
Then they-looked beyond Megecharrée and saw to their meeting
venir bien juskes à trois cens Blas, ki de toutes pars les
come well up to three hundred Vlachs who from all sides them
fourclosent. Il em prisent aucuns, et les autres ochisent;
cut-off They thereof took some and the others killed

et li autre s'en rafuirent à nostre segnour l'empereour,
and the others themselves-thence fled-back to our lord the-emperor
et li conterent ces novieles. Et li empereres en fu molt
and to-him told these news And the emperor thereof was very
courechiés, et dist k'il l'amendera s'il puet. Dont s'arma
angered and said that-he it-will-amend if-he can Then himself-armed
de tout, fors ke de hyaume, et monta sor un cheval, et
of all except that of helmet and mounted upon a horse and
les prist à encaucier; et chil, ki cure n'avoient de lui
them took to pursue and those who care not-had of him
atendre, s'en prendent à fuir. Et quant li empereres
to-await themselves-thence take to flee And when the emperor
voit ke il n'en pora nul ataindre, por chou ne remaint
sees that he not-thereof will-be-able any to-reach for this not remains
mie ke il par traches ne les face sivir juskes au soir;
at-all that he by tracks — them have followed until to-the evening
mais toutes voies en le fin n'en pot il nul ataindre.
but all the-same in the end not-thereof could he any reach
Cele nuit se herbrega à le Rousse, et i sejorna l'endemain 566
That night himself he-lodged at the Rusion and there sojourned the-next-day
toute jor por atendre chels ki venoient derrer. Au tier jor,
all day for to-await those who came behind On-the third day
s'est li empereres meus de le Rousse, et vint à l'Eskipesale,
himself-is the emperor moved from the Rusion and came to the-Eskipesale
et i fist logier se gent. Dont envoia savoir, à un flun ki
and there had lodged his people Then he-sent to-know at a river which
là estoit, se il i poroit passer sans encombrier. Et Nostre
there was if he there could cross without hindrance And Our
Sires demonstra bien ke il voloit aidier à nostre gent; car
Lord showed well that he wished to-help to our people for

on trova l'aighe si durement engielée ke on pooit bien cariier
one found the-water so hard frozen that one could well cart
sus. Dont passerent tout outre sans damage rechevoir.
upon-it Then they-crossed all over without damage receiving
567 Et de chou furent Grifon molt dolent; car il avoient sorti
And of this were Griffons very sorrowful for they had prophesied
ke chil ki passeroit cel flun sans moillier, seroit trente-deux
that he who would-cross that river without wetting would-be thirty-two
ans sires de le tierre; ne il ne cuidoient mie ke che peust
years lord of the land nor they not thought at-all that this could
estre se verités non. Et d'autre part, il n'avoient onkes oï
be except truth not And on-other side they not-had ever heard
dire ke chil grans fluns fust engielés au montant de l'espesse
say that that great river were frozen to-the amount of the-thickness
d'un seul denier; car à mervelles estoit grans et parfons, et
of-a single penny for at marvels was great and deep and
couroit trop radement, et si avoit bien une grant archie de
ran exceedingly swiftly and so had well a great bowshot of
lé. Et por chou disoient li Grifon entre els ke Nostre Sires
width And for this said the Griffons among them that Our Lord
amoit cest empereour, et ke che ne fust mie legiere cose de lui
loved this emperor and that this not were at-all light thing of him
cachier hors de le tierre, ains le devoient siervir si comme il
to-chase out of the land but him they-ought serve so as they
disoient. Et d'autre part, il ne lor faisoit cose ki lor anuiast.
said And on-other side he not to-them did thing which them annoyed
568 Toutes voies erra tant li empereres ke il vint à Machré
All the-same journeyed so-far the emperor that he came to Makri
et puis à Trahinople; et de là vint à Miessynople; et
and then to Traianopolis and from there came to Mosynopolis and
de là fist tant par ses jornées ke il vint à Cristople.
from there did so-much by his day-stages that he came to Christopolis

Dont cuida entrer ou castiel à se volenté, comme chius
Then he-thought to-enter into-the castle at his will as he
ki nul malisse n'i pensoit. Mais li castelains dist bien
who any malice not-there thought But the castellan said well
ke il n'i meteroit le pié; ains fist commander à ses
that he not-there would-put the foot but had commanded to his
homes ke on n'aportast en l'ost cose dont hom ne bieste
men that one not-should-bring into the-host thing whereof man nor beast
peust vivre. Or poés oïr le commençaille de le trahison.
could live Now you-can to-hear the beginning of the treason
Et quant li empereres vit ke il tenoient contre lui son 569
And when the emperor saw that they held against him his
castiel, se il fu dolans et courechiés che ne fait pas à
castle if he was sorrowful and angered this not is at-all to
demander. Et nonpourquant il fait deffendre ke on n'assaille
ask And nevertheless he has forbidden that one assail
mie le castel; car s'il vit auques, il s'en bée bien à
at-all the castle for if-he lives somewhat he himself-thereof aims well to
vengier. Cele nuit jut li empereres à molt grant meschief
avenge That night lay the emperor in very great hardship
defors Cristople. Et bien saciés ke il ne demoura mie ou
outside Christopolis And well know that it not stayed at-all in-the
castelain ne en cels dou castiel ke il ne moru cele nuit
castellan nor in those of-the castle that he not died that night
de fain et de froit et de males aises. Et il demenerent
of hunger and of cold and of ill ease And they made
toute le nuit dedens le castiel grant joie et grant deduit.
all the night within the castle great joy and great delight
Et au matin, se parti li empereres de devant Cristople, et 570
And in-the morning himself parted the emperor from before Christopolis and
chevauça viers Salenyke parmi le Val de Phelippe droitement.
rode toward Salonika through the Vale of Philippi straight

Et là sist Machedone, dont Phelippes fu rois; et là fu
And there sat Macedonia whereof Philip was king and there was
nés Alixandres, si comme on trueve; et li rois Phelippes
born Alexander so as one finds and the king Philip
fist apieler le Val, après son non, le Val de Phelippe; et li
had called the Vale after his name the Vale of Philippi and the
chités de Machedone sist desus. Et en che val se combati
city of Macedonia sat above And in this vale himself fought
Pompéus de Rome contre Julius Cesar, et i fu Julius Cesar
Pompey of Rome against Julius Caesar and there was Julius Caesar
desconfis. Ke vous diroie-jou plus? Li empereres vint en cele
defeated What to-you would-say-I more The emperor came into that
tierre si comme en celi ke il cuide de son droit avoir;
land so as into that-one which he thinks of his right to-have
mais li cuens des Blans-Dras l'ot faite garnir contre lui.
but the count of-the Biandrate it-had had garrisoned against him
571 Li empereres li manda ke il venist parler à lui, et il li
The emperor to-him sent-word that he should-come to-speak to him and he to-him
remanda ke il n'i venroit pas, car Lombart s'ahatissoient
sent-back-word that he not-there would-come at-all for Lombards themselves-boasted
bien ke il ne devoit de riens partir à le terre; ne jà n'i
well that he not ought in anything share in the land nor ever not-there
partira, si comme il dient. Et quant li empereres l'oï, si
will-share so as they say And when the emperor it-heard so
en fu molt dolans. Dont vint li fieste de le Nativité, si
thereof was-he very sorrowful Then came the feast of the Nativity so
sejorna li empereres à Vigneri. Et là vint Guillaumes de
sojourned the emperor at Vigneri And there came William of
Blendel à l'empereour, com chil ki mie ne se voloit tenir
Blendel to the-emperor as he who at-all not himself wished to-hold
deviers Lombars, ains voloit dou tout obéir à l'empereor comme
toward Lombards but wished of-the all to-obey to the-emperor as

à son droit signor; car hon, che dist, ki son segneur faut
to his right lord for a-man this he-says who his lord fails
à son besoing, ne doit avoir respons en court. Wistasses, li
at his need not ought have answer in court Eustace the
freres l'empereour, vint à Dragmes, un soir, encontre son frere,
brother (of-)the-emperor came to Drama one evening to-meet his brother
atout vint chevaliers ke l'empereres avoit envoiés avoec Esclas.
with twenty knights whom the-emperor had sent with Slav

Christmas at Vigneri, and the Envoys

X

Henry keeps Christmas at Vigneri and meets Albertino, the author of the scheme, who goes to garrison Serres against him. Shut out of Salonika, Henry camps at the abbey of Chortaiton and sends Conon of Béthune, Peter of Douai, and Nicholas of Mailly through snow and darkness to the count of Biandrate. Conon reminds the Lombards that the marquis was Henry's man and proposes that the marquis's charter settle the child's right.

Droit à Vigneri, si com je vous ai dit, tint li empereres se 572
Right at Vigneri so as I to-you have said held the emperor his
court au Noël. Trois jors i sejorna; et quant che vint
court at-the Christmas Three days there he-sojourned and when this came
au quart, il s'en ala à le Gige, et puis s'en torna.
to-the fourth he himself-thence went to the Gige and then himself-thence turned
Dont encontra il, cele matinée, Aubretin ki tout cel mauvais
Then met he that morning Albertino who all that bad
plait avoit basti. Et lues ke li empereres le vit, si le salua,
scheme had built And as-soon that the emperor him saw so him greeted
et Aubretins lui; et puis l'enclina, et non mie de cuer. Petit
and Albertino him and then him-bowed and not at-all from heart Little

l'ot convoié, quant il retorna et vint à le Serre, et fist
him-had-he escorted when he returned and came to the Serres and had
le castiel garnir por chou ke nus des homes l'empereour
the castle garrisoned for this that anyone of-the men (of-)the-emperor
n'i peust entrer. Et puis s'ent vint à Salenyke, ù il
not-there could enter And then himself-thence came to Salonika where he
basti un tel plait dont Lombart se repentirent en le fin.
built a such scheme whereof Lombards themselves repented in the end
573 Li empereres chevauça et passa un flun desous le Gige,
The emperor rode and crossed a river below the Gige
et l'endemain en passa un autre plus grant. Dont jut le
and the-next-day thereof crossed an other more great Then lay the
nuit en un bois, et l'endemain jut al Corthiac; chou est
night in a wood and the-next-day lay at-the Chortaiton this is
une riche abbeye de moines gris. Il fust paralés juskes
a rich abbey of monks gray He would-have gone-on as-far
à Salenyke s'il pevust; mais li cuens des Blans-Dras l'ot
to Salonika if-he could but the count of-the Biandrate it-had
faite fremer encontre lui, contre droit et contre raison; et
had closed against him against right and against reason and
Aubretins rot tant fait as Lombars, k'il misent
Albertino had-in-turn so-much done with-the Lombards that-they put
hors de le ville toz les François ki en garnison i estoient.
out of the town all the French who in garrison there were
574 Et lors manda li empereres mon segneur Cuenon de
And then summoned the emperor my lord Conon of
Biethune, ke il avoit adiès trové sage chevalier et loial, et
Béthune whom he had always found wise knight and loyal and
Pieron de Douay, et Nicholon de Mailli, et leur dist ke il
Peter of Douai and Nicholas of Mailly and to-them said that they
alassent à Salenyke parler au conte des Blans-Dras et as
should-go to Salonika to-speak to-the count of-the Biandrate and to-the

autres Lombars: «Et lor montrés, dist-il, toute l'amisté
other Lombards And to-them show said-he all the-friendship
ke vous porés de par nous; et lor dites bien ke
which you will-be-able on behalf-of us and to-them say well that
il ne me resoignent point, car je n'ai nule volenté ke
they not me fear at-all for I not-have any will that
jou jà mal leur face tant ke jou puisse en avant; anchois
I ever harm to-them do so-long that I can in forward rather
lor voel faire bien et hounour, s'il ne remaint en eus.»
to-them I-wish to-do good and honor if-it not remains in them
A tant se partent chil de lui, et vienent à Salenyke 575
At that themselves part those from him and come to Salonika
droit devant le conte. Mais je vos trespas le grant anui
straight before the count But I to-you pass-over the great trouble
ke il orent avant ke il fussent entré ens. Car il estoit
which they had before that they were entered in For it was
molt durement gielé et negié; et avoec tout chou il estoit
very hard frozen and snowed and with all this it was
nuis; et si peust on bien avoir alé deus grans liues avant
night and so could one well have gone two great leagues before
k'il fussent ens entré. Bien evussent eu mestier à
that-they were in entered Well would-they-have had need at
celui point ke sains Juliiens les evust herbregiés. Quant il
that point that saint Julian them had lodged When they
vinrent laiens, si se coucierent et reposerent juskes à
came in-there so themselves lay-down and rested until to
l'endemain apriès le messe, ke il alerent ou castiel, ù
the-next-day after the mass that they went into-the castle where
li cuens estoit. Et lors a Cuenes de Biethune le parole
the count was And then has Conon of Béthune the word
monstrée, si comme il li fu commandé de l'empereour.
shown so as it to-him was commanded by the-emperor

576 «Segnour, fait-il, li empereres nos sires vos salue, et vous fait à
Lords says-he the emperor our lord you greets and to-you makes to
savoir, et jou de par lui le vous di, ke il est chi venus à vous
know and I on behalf-of him it to-you say that he is here come to you
por droit faire et por droit prendre, si avant comme il doit. Il
for right to-do and for right to-take so far as he ought He
n'a encore, che dist, de vous eus homages ne sairemens; et
not-has yet this he-says from you had homages nor oaths and
si avés vous jà toz les preus de le terre recheus. Li marchis
so have you already all the profits of the land received The marquis
fu ses hom, si comme vous le savez bien et comme il le
was his man so as you it know well and as he it
reconnut. Or est trespassés de cest siecle. Dex li pardoinst
acknowledged Now is passed from this world God to-him pardon
ses pechiés, et nous les nostres! De chou ke vous iestes acreu,
his sins and us the ours Of this that you are increased
est-il biel à monsegneur. Or soiés, por Diu, sage et courtois, et
is-it fair to my-lord Now be for God wise and courteous and
prenés entre vous tel consel ki tourt à l'ounour de l'empereour
take among you such counsel which turn to the-honor of the-emperor
no segneur et de vous, ensi ke vous ne soiiés decheu.
our lord and of you so that you not be deceived
577 «Cuens des Blans-Dras, cuens des Blans-Dras, te deust ore
Count of-the Biandrate count of-the Biandrate thee ought now
avoir nus essoignes tenu ke ne fusses alés encontre ton
have any excuses held that not thou-wert gone to-meet thy
droiturier segnor, et ke tu chaiens ne l'eusses herbregié
rightful lord and that thou in-here not him-hadst lodged
et recuelli? Avoies tu paour ke il ne fust envers toi
and received Hadst thou fear that he — were toward thee
trahitres? Or te dirai ke tu feras; fai avant aporter
traitor Now to-thee I-shall-say what thou wilt-do have forward brought

le chartre ke li marchis eut de l'empereour Baudouin,
the charter which the marquis had from the-emperor Baldwin
ki faite fu par le commun assentement des haus barons
which made was by the common assent of-the high barons
ki por cest atirement furent esleu; et quant on aura
who for this arrangement were elected and when one will-have
porveu par le chartre le droit de l'enfant, tout ensi ke
seen by the charter the right of the-child all thus as
li marchis ses peres ot le roialme tenu, nos sires li
the marquis his father had the kingdom held our lord the
empereres i vaurra si bien garder le droit de l'enfant, ke
emperor there will-wish so well to-keep the right of the-child that
il de riens n'en serra blasmés, ne li enfes adamagiés.»
he in anything not-thereof will-be blamed nor the child damaged

The Lombards' Demands

XI

The count answers that the emperor will never set foot in the city. Knowing that Henry's men will die of cold and hunger, the envoys offer four arbiters, or the verdict of the court of Rome, of France, or of the emperor of Rome, or the charter itself. The count's council resolves to make no peace without all their demands: the land from Durazzo to the Maigre, Corinth, the homage of Michael and his barons, and the land as far as Philippopolis.

«Sire, fait li quens, nous avons bien oï chou ke vous 578
Lord says the count we have well heard this that you
dites; mais nos ne sommes mie encore à chou mené, se
say but we not are at-all yet to this brought if
Diu plaist, ke nos voellons si tost pierdre chou ke nos
to-God it-pleases that we wish so soon to-lose this that we

avons conquesté. Ke quiert chi li empereres? Nous avons
have conquered What seeks here the emperor We have
grant pieche esté ichi, et nos sommes combatu souventes
great while been here and we are fought oft
fois encontre nos anemis. Par Diu, sire Cuenes, ki nous
times against our enemies By God lord Conon who us
vaurroit le terre tolir, apriès si grans travaus ke vos
would-wish the land to-take-away after so great labors as you
savés ke nos i avons eus, trop nous en deveroit
know that we there have had exceedingly us thereof ought
peser. Sace bien li empereres ke çaiens ne metra-il le pié,
grieve Let-know well the emperor that herein not will-put-he the foot
ne sour nous n'aura-il jà segnorie ne commandement.»
nor over us not-will-have-he ever lordship nor command
579 Et quant Cuenes de Biethune oï ceste response, si fu
And when Conon of Béthune heard this answer so was-he
molt courechiés; et ne respondi mie son pensé, selonc le
very angered and not answered at-all his thought according-to the
grant orguel ke il oï. Et se Cuenes de Biethune fu dolans,
great pride which he heard And if Conon of Béthune was sorrowful
Nicholes de Mailli et Pieres de Douay ne furent mie mains.
Nicholas of Mailly and Peter of Douai not were at-all less
Et bien voient ke se il par sens u par engien u par treuage
And well they-see that if they by sense or by wit or by tribute
donnant, n'entrent en le chité, toz les i convenra par
giving not-enter into the city all them there it-will-behoove by
forche morir de fain et de froit et de mesaises, à chou ke
force to-die of hunger and of cold and of hardships at this that
li flun sont grant, et li plovasse et les neges et les gielées.
the rivers are great and the rain-storms and the snows and the frosts
Et por chou lor consentent il à dire toz leur boins.
And for this to-them allow they to say all their wishes

Dont offrirent doubles drois de l'empereour, et lor 580
Then they-offered double rights from the-emperor and to-them
deviserent trois manieres de pais. Mais onkes à offre c'on
described three manners of peace But ever to offer that-one
lor fesist de par l'empereour ne respondirent, ains
to-them made on behalf-of the-emperor not they-answered but
s'escondisent tout adiès plus et plus. Dont lor redist
themselves-excused all continually more and more Then to-them said-again
arriere mesire Cuenes, et pria por Diu ke il se
back my-lord Conon and prayed for God that they themselves
consellassent; et ke por Diu ne fesissent cose par coi
should-counsel and that for God not they-should-do thing by which
li hounours de Constantinoble fust abaissie.
the honor of Constantinople were lowered
«Nous vos partirons trois pais, si verrons lequele vous 581
We to-you will-offer three peaces so we-shall-see which you
prenderés. Or eslisiés deux sages homes et preud'omes, et de
will-take Now choose two wise men and worthy-men and of
boine renommée entre vous; et nous, d'autre part, en eslirons
good renown among you and we on-other side thereof will-choose
ausi deus. Et cil quatre enquiercent toutes les verités; et quant
also two And those four let-them-inquire all the truths and when
il les auront enquises, si en doinsent à cascun son droit, et
they them will-have inquired so thereof let-them-give to each his right and
cascune partie se tiegne à chou ke il en diront. Et se vous
each party itself let-it-hold to this that they thereof will-say And if you
tout chou ne volés faire, si nous en meterons sor le dit
all this not wish to-do so we thereon will-put upon the verdict
de le court de Rome, ou sor celi de France, ou sor le court
of the court of Rome or upon that-one of France or upon the court

de l'empereour de Rome, u sour le chartre meismes. Et ensi
of the-emperor of Rome or upon the charter itself And thus
ert faite li atiranche entre nous, et demourrons boin amic.
will-be made the arrangement between us and we-shall-remain good friends
582 «Por Diu, segnor, or vous hastés de tost respondre; car
For God lords now yourselves hasten to soon answer for
li empereres est là hors el Corthiac, ù il n'a mie
the emperor is there outside at-the Chortaiton where he not-has at-all
quankes il vodroit. Et bien saciés, se Dex me saut! ke
whatever he would-wish And well know if God me save that
molt est grans hontes à vostre oes quant li empereres
very is great shame to your behalf when the emperor
est là hors hierbregiés par vostre defaillement. Et s'il
is there outside lodged by your default And if-he
de mesaises moroit par aucune mesaventure, sire quens, li
of hardships died by some misadventure lord count the
pechiés en seroit vostres, et si en seriés au mains
sin thereof would-be yours and so thereof would-you-be at-the least
retés de trahison. Ne por destreche ke vous saciés en lui,
accused of treason Nor for distress which you know in him
ne le destraigniés onkes de plait; mais por Diu estraigniés
not him constrain ever of bargain but for God draw-in
vostre consel entre vous, et faites si ke li hounours de
your council among you and do so that the honor of
l'empereour i soit sauve, et ke vous n'i soiés pierdant.»
the-emperor there be safe and that you not-there be losing
583 Adont estrainst li cuens son consel entre lui et ses
Then drew-in the count his council between him and his
Lombars. Là fu Aubretins, et li cuens de Travas Reniers,
Lombards There was Albertino and the count of Travas Renier
et Pieres Vens; et si i rot autres Lombars ke jou
and Peter Vens and so there was-in-turn other Lombards whom I

mie ne vous sai nommer. Chist parlerent ensamble
at-all not to-you know-how-to name These spoke together
et disent: «Segnor, il est ensi ke nous avommes là
and said Lords it is thus that we have there
fors l'empereour. Véés ent chi tout le consel: gardés ke
outside the-emperor See thereof here all the counsel take-heed that
nous ne faciemes nulle pais, se nous n'avons toute nostre
we not make any peace if we not-have all our
demande entirement; et à chou nos tenommes.» Et il
demand entirely and to this ourselves let-us-hold And they
s'acordent tout à cest consel, si s'en departent.
themselves-agree all to this counsel so themselves-thence depart
Et lors furent rapielé no message, et li cuens meismes lor 584
And then were recalled our messengers and the count himself to-them
respondi che k'il avoit trouvé à son consel: «Segnour, fait
answered this that-he had found at his council Lords says
li cuens, nostre consaus nous aporte ke nous volons avoir
the count our council us brings that we wish to-have
toute le tierre de Duras deschi à le Maigre, et toute le terre
all the land of Durazzo as-far to the Maigre and all the land
Largut et quankes il i apent, et toute l'isle de Grece. Si
Largut and whatever it thereto belongs and all the-isle of Greece So
volons avoir Chorinthe, et ke Michalis et tout si baron nos
we-wish to-have Corinth and that Michael and all his barons us
facent houmage; si volons avoir le Verre et le Ferme, et toute
do homage so we-wish to-have the Verre and the Ferme and all
le terre juskes à Phinepople. Se li empereres le nous otrie
the land as-far to Philippopolis If the emperor it to-us grants
ensi, bien le volommes chaiens recuellir, et autrement non.»
thus well him we-wish in-here to-receive and otherwise not

Conon's Plea, and Henry Yields

XII

Conon protests that the Lombards would leave the French nothing but to plow like churls; when Peter of Douai asks whether they must lie in the fields like mastiffs, Albertino says they will lie as best they can. Henry refuses the demands, but his starving men urge him to yield, since force grazes the meadow. Weeping with anger, he grants Thebes, Negroponte, and everything from Durazzo to Makri, vowing they will never hold it, and the bishops absolve him.

585 Et quant Cuenes de Biethune oï ceste response, molt li
And when Conon of Béthune heard this answer much to-him
torna à grant anui, et ne se pot tenir ke il au conte ne
it-turned to great vexation and not himself could hold that he to-the count —
desist: «Comment, sire cuens, n'i devons nous riens avoir?
said How lord count not-there ought we anything have
N'i venismes nous mie ensamble comme compaignon? Et
Not-there came we at-all together as companions And
i avommes autresi bien endurées les paines et les travaus
there have-we likewise well endured the pains and the labors
por nostre Segnor comme vous avés. Par Diu, sire cuens, il
for our Lord as you have By God lord count it
ne m'est pas avis ke il ait en vostre requeste raison, ne
not to-me-is at-all opinion that there be in your request reason nor
ke vous mie deussiés tel cose requerre à bregiers. Ke vous
that you at-all ought such thing to-request of shepherds That you
volés avoir les chités et les castiaus, et toute le segnorie
wish to-have the cities and the castles and all the lordship
de le terre, sauf chou ke nous n'i partons; et si avons
of the land save this that we not-there share and so have
esté en toz les plus grans besoins de le conqueste tout
been in all the most great needs of the conquest all

adiès. Par me foi dont, n'i sai-jou autre cose, mais
continually By my faith then not-there know-I other thing but
ke nous nos aparellons por labourer ensi comme vilain.
that we ourselves prepare for to-labor thus as churls
«Sire cuens, sire cuens, fait soi Cuenes de Biethune, se nous 586
Lord count lord count says himself Conon of Béthune if we
demenommes ensi li un les autres et alommes rancunant,
treat thus the ones the others and go bearing-grudges
bien voi ke nous reperderons toute le tierre; et nous-meismes
well I-see that we shall-lose-in-turn all the land and we-ourselves
serommes pierdu, se nous ensi morons; car nos morrons
shall-be lost if we thus die for we shall-die
en haine mortel li uns viers l'autre. Et se nous nos
in hatred mortal the one toward the-other And if we ourselves
entreguerrions dont primes seront Grifon lié. Por Diu! cuens,
war-each-other then first will-be Griffons glad For God count
che n'a mestier. Nous vous prions mierchi de par no
this not-has need We you pray mercy on behalf-of our
segneur l'empereor, ke vous por Diu li fachiés raison. Et si
lord the-emperor that you for God to-him do right And so
retenés encore assez de le soie tierre. Ciertes molt est laide cose
retain yet plenty of the his land Certainly very is ugly thing
et vilaine ke il est de chaiens fourclos; et molt iest grans li
and churlish that he is from in-here shut-out and very is great the
mesproisons por vous et li desraisons, de che ke il onkes le fu.
misdeed for you and the wrong of this that he ever it was
«Ke vaut chou? Jou voi bien ke nos ne faisons riens chi. 587
What avails this I see well that we not do anything here
Sire cuens, or vous dirai encore ke vous ferés, se il
Lord count now to-you I-shall-say yet what you will-do if it
vous plaist. Parlés encore à vostre conseil, et faites si, por
you pleases Speak again to your council and do so for

Diu! s'il estre puet ne doit, ke ceste pais viegne entre nous.
God if-it to-be can or ought that this peace come between us
Car se nous metons arriere dos le paour de Nostre-Segneur,
For if we put behind back the fear of Our-Lord
en tel maniere ke nos de mal faire ne le cremons, et
in such manner that we of evil doing not him fear and
nos commençommes guerre li uns viers l'autre, je vos di
we begin war the one toward the-other I to-you say
ke toute le tierre en sera pierdue et destruite, et i
that all the land thereby will-be lost and destroyed and there
pierderons cankes nos i avommes conquis.
we-shall-lose whatever we there have conquered
588 «Et s'il est ensi toutes voies ke nous nos entrochions en
And if-it is thus all the-same that we ourselves kill-each-other in
tel maniere, dont n'i a plus mais ke nous avant renoions
such manner then not-there is more but that we first deny
Nostre Segneur. Et mal ke mal, encore nous vaurroit-il mius
Our Lord And ill as ill still to-us would-avail-it better
ke nous nos enfuissons hors dou païs. Por Diu! sire
that we ourselves flee out of-the country For God lord
cuens des Blans-Dras, ne suefre mie ke nous ensi nous
count of-the Biandrate not suffer at-all that we thus ourselves
destruisons par te coupe; mais pren les biaus offres ke
destroy by thy fault but take the fair offers which
nous ichi t'offrons. Et por Diu! pour chou, se tu sés
we here to-thee-offer And for God for this if thou knowest
les grans malaises ke nous soufrons là hors, por chou
the great hardships which we suffer there outside for this
ne nous destraing mie à che ke nous faisons cose ki nos
not us constrain at-all to this that we do thing which to-us
tourt à honte ne al descroissement de l'ounour de l'empire.
turn to shame nor to-the diminishing of the-honor of the-empire

« — Sire Cuenes, dist Aubretins, or saciés bien ke nous 589
Lord Conon said Albertino now know well that we
ne nos assentirons à nul consel ke nous vos lassons
not ourselves will-assent to any counsel that we to-you leave
point de le nostre tierre, ne de le demande ke nous vos
a-whit of the our land nor of the demand which we to-you
avons faite. Et se vous ensi ne le faites, assés poés là
have made And if you thus not it do plenty you-can there
fors sejorner por nous; car chaiens ne meterés-vous les piés.
outside stay for us for in-here not will-put-you the feet
« — Et se nous n'avons nul tref ne nul aucube, dist Pieres de 590
And if we not-have any tent nor any pavilion said Peter of
Douay, ù nous nos puissons hierbregier, girons-nous dont
Douai where we ourselves may lodge shall-lie-we then
as cans ausi comme mastin? — Vos girés, dist Aubretins, au
in-the fields just as mastiff You will-lie said Albertino at-the
mius ke vous porés et ke vous sarés; car s'il ne fait
best that you will-be-able and that you will-know-how for if-he not does
ensi comme vous avés oï, jà chaiens ne serés herbregié. —
thus as you have heard ever in-here not will-you-be lodged
A chou nous assentons-nous, dist li cuens, ne jà de nous
To this ourselves assent-we said the count nor ever from us
vous n'emporterés autre cose. — Segneur, fait mesire Cuenes,
you not-will-carry-off other thing Lords says my-lord Conon
et nous retornerons dont arriere, por dire à mon segneur chou
and we shall-return then back for to-say to my lord this
ke nous avons trové; et chou ke il nous respondera, nous le
that we have found and this that he to-us will-answer we it
vous lairons à resavoir chaiens, u par nous u par autrui.»
to-you shall-let to know-in-turn in-here either by us or by another

591 Dont montent et revienent à l'empereour; et li ont dit
Then they-mount and come-back to the-emperor and to-him have told
toz les respons et toutes les demandes ke li Lombart lor
all the answers and all the demands which the Lombards to-them
orent faites. Quant li empereres oï chou, s'il fu dolans che
had made When the emperor heard this if-he was sorrowful this
ne fait mie à demander. Dont dist as messages: «Certes,
not is at-all to ask Then he-said to-the messengers Certainly
segneur, il me requierent si grant tort, comme vous-meismes
lords they of-me request so great wrong as you-yourselves
le savés bien; et jà, se Diu plaist, che ne ferommes. Or est
it know well and ever if to-God it-pleases this not shall-we-do Now is-it
ensi ke il sont laiens en grant solas et en grant deduit; et
thus that they are in-there in great solace and in great delight and
por chou k'il sevent ke jou sui à si grant meschief, voelent
for this that-they know that I am in so great hardship they-wish
ke jou me deporte de toute ceste tierre. Por Diu! comment
that I myself withdraw from all this land For God how
feroie-je chou, ne comment m'i porroie-jou acorder?
would-do-I this or how myself-thereto could-I to-agree
592 « — Sire, por Diu! si ferés, dient si home, u se che non
Lord for God so you-will-do say his men or if this not
véés nous chi toz mors et honnis; car il fait si fort tans et
see us here all dead and shamed for it makes so strong weather and
si cruel, comme vous-meismes le véés et le sentés. Et d'autre
so cruel as you-yourselves it see and it feel And on-other
part, nous ne savommes ke mengier, et si n'atendons nul
side we not know what to-eat and so not-await any
secours de nulle part. Se nous sommes chi tant seulement
succor from any side If we are here so only
cinq jours sans autre secours de viande, grans mervelle iert
five days without other succor of food great marvel will-be

se nous ne sommes tout mort; car nous n'arons nul confort
if we not are all dead for we not-will-have any comfort
d'eus. Et d'autre part, nous sommes chi ausi comme prison.
from-them And on-other side we are here just as prisoners
S'il nos font faire et otriier par forche cose ke nous ne
If-they us have do and grant by force thing which we not
doions, en non Diu li forche paist le pré, et on doit molt
ought in name (of-)God the force grazes the meadow and one ought much
faire por issir hors de prison. Ne jà por chou ne feriesmes
do for to-issue out of prison Nor ever for this not would-we-do
desloiauté, de requerre apriès nostre raison, fust hui u
disloyalty to seek afterward our right were-it today or
demain, se nous en poiesmes venir en point. Mais porquerés
tomorrow if we thereto could come in point But procure
messages hastéement ki bien sacent cest message furnir.»
messengers hastily who well know-how-to this message furnish
Apriès tout chou, respondi li empereres, ki mervelleusement 593
After all this answered the emperor who marvelously
estoit dolens et courechiés, et dist: «Segnor, fait-il tout
was sorrowful and angered and said Lords says-he all
en plourant, jou puis avoir en moi-meismes molt grant duel
in weeping I can have in myself very great grief
et molt grant despit, quant Lombart m'ont emprisonné, si
and very great scorn when Lombards me-have imprisoned so
comme vous poés veir, et sour tout chou me requierent ke
as you can see and over all this of-me request that
jou lor laisse Estives tout quitement, et Negrepont, et
I to-them leave Thebes all freely and Negroponte and
toute le tierre ki est de Duras juskes à Macré. Et bien
all the land which is from Durazzo as-far to Makri And well
tient, che k'il me demandent, vint grans jornées u plus.
holds this that-they of-me ask twenty great days or more

594 «Et por chou ke il m'ont ore en lor destroit, si me
And for this that they me-have now in their strait so me
convenra par forche et par le destreche ke il me font,
it-will-behoove by force and by the distress which they me do
ke jou leur otroie leur volenté. Ke vaut chou? Je lor
that I to-them grant their will What avails this I to-them
otroi, por chou ke jou sui en lor prison. Mais jà por
grant for this that I am in their prison But ever for
voir, se Diu plaist, ne le tenront. — Sire, dient li
truth if to-God it-pleases not it will-they-keep Lord say the
archevesque et li evesque de l'ost, nous vos assaurrons de
archbishops and the bishops of the-host we you will-absolve of
tout le mesfait, et en prenderons le pechié sor nous.»
all the misdeed and thereof will-take the sin upon us

Henry in Salonika, and the Empress

XIII

Henry's envoys promise that he will keep the covenants if the empress approves them, a proviso that catches the Lombards. The count, reconciled, leads Henry into Salonika, where only Albertino, the chancellor, and Peter Vens back the count's claim to all from Modon to Makri. The empress refuses, saying the Lombards summoned William of Montferrat to disinherit her son. Henry crowns the boy at Epiphany and leaves the count his bailiwick at her pleasure.

595 Lors apiela li empereres Cuenon de Biethune por cest message
Then called the emperor Conon of Béthune for this message
furnir, et Ansiel de Chaeu; et lor encarga le message si ke
to-furnish and Anseau of Cayeux and to-them entrusted the message so as
il voloit ke il fust dis, et lor dis: «Segnor, jou juerrai tous
he wished that it were said and to-them said Lords I shall-swear all

premiers, et mi baron apriès moi, ke toutes les convenences,
first and my barons after me that all the covenants
ensi comme il les ont devisées, ke nous les tenrons sans
thus as they them have devised that we them shall-keep without
nule defaute, portant ke il soit ensi ke l'emperreis le lot.»
any default provided that it be thus that the-empress it approve
Vées chi le point par coi li Lombart furent engignié.
See here the point by which the Lombards were tricked
Dont s'en alerent li message en Salenyke. Si fisent 596
Then themselves-thence went the messengers into Salonika So they-did
tant au conte des Blans-Dras et disent ke il le
so-much with-the count of-the Biandrate and said that they him
ramenerent au Corthiac avoec aus. Dont le baisa li
brought-back to-the Chortaiton with them Then him kissed the
empereres et li pardonna toute male amour; et si jurerent
emperor and to-him pardoned all ill love and so they-swore
à maintenir le droit de le dame, et le droit de l'enfant
to maintain the right of the lady and the right of the-child
tout autresi à garder. Et quant chou vint apriès mangier, li
all likewise to guard And when this came after eating the
cuens s'en rala à Salenyke, et li empereres demoura
count himself-thence went-back to Salonika and the emperor remained
cele nuit à Corthiac. Et quant che vint à l'endemain matin,
that night at Chortaiton And when this came to the-next-day morning
li empereres commanda à quarante chevaliers ke il fussent
the emperor commanded to forty knights that they should-be
apparellié d'aler o lui. Nequedent bien en i ot autres
ready to-go with him Nevertheless well thereof there were others
soissante ki avoec les quarante entrerent, maugré chiaus ki
sixty who with the forty entered despite those who

les portes gardoient. Ke vous diroie-jou? Tant en i
the gates guarded What to-you would-say-I So-many thereof there
ot ke chil ki conter les devoient en pierdirent le conte.
were that those who to-count them were-to thereof lost the count
597 Au matin, entra li empereres en Salenyke; et Hubiers li
In-the morning entered the emperor into Salonika and Oberto the
cuens des Blans-Dras descendi à pié, et mena l'empereour
count of-the Biandrate dismounted on foot and led the-emperor
par le regne juskes au moustier Saint Domytre. Et quant
by the rein as-far to-the minster (of-)Saint Demetrius And when
il vint à l'entrée de le porte, il i ot si grant priesse, ke
he came to the-entrance of the gate it there had so great press that
là ù on feroit cascun de baston u de verghe sor le tieste,
there where one struck each with stick or with rod upon the head
juroient il ke tout i enterroient. Ke vaut chou? Tant
swore they that all there would-enter What avails this So-much
ont fait Lombart ke il ont jeté ambes as et le tierc d'un
have done Lombards that they have thrown both aces and the third of-a
dé dou plus. Et d'illuec au tierc jor, entrerent nostre gent,
die of-the more And from-there at-the third day entered our people
ki remés estoient au Corthiach, dedens Salenyke. Et quant
who remained were at-the Chortaiton within Salonika And when
il vinrent as aises et as solas, si orent auques tost
they came to-the comforts and to-the solaces so had somewhat soon
entroublié les paines et les grans travaus ke il orent eus.
forgotten the pains and the great labors which they had had
598 Lombart disoient ke il demandoient le tierre à oes
Lombards said that they asked the land on behalf
l'emperreis et à oes l'enfant, mais il pensoient tot el; car il
(of-)the-empress and on behalf (of-)the-child but they thought all else for they
le voloient garder por le marchis Guillaume de Montferras, ke
it wished to-keep for the marquis William of Montferrat whom

il avoient mandé par tant de messages, ke à paines ke il
they had summoned by so-many of messengers that with difficulty that they
ne diervoient por se demeure. Et puiske il viers l'emperreis et
— went-mad for his delay And since they toward the-empress and
viers son fill ouvroient si vilainement, chou n'estoit mie mervelle
toward her son worked so churlishly this not-was at-all marvel
se Dex voloit consentir ke il en evussent lor gueredon.
if God wished to-consent that they thereof had their reward
Apriès chou ke li empereres ot demouré trois jors en 599
After this that the emperor had remained three days in
Salenyke u quatre, li mandoient cascun jor li Lombart
Salonika or four to-him sent-word each day the Lombards
ke il lor tenist chou ke il lor avoit en convent par
that he to-them should-keep this that he to-them had in covenant by
sairement. Et tant li manderent ke il en laissierent
oath And so-much to-him they-sent-word that they thereof left
le mander, et li disent. Et il lor respondi ke il en
the sending and to-him said And he to-them answered that he thereof
estoit aparelliés; et dist au conte ke il recordast tout
was ready and said to-the count that he should-recount all
chou que il demandoit, et en le presense de toz. «Sire,
this that he asked and in the presence of all Lord
fait li cuens, et je le vous recorderai puiske il vous plaist.
says the count and I it to-you shall-recount since it you pleases
Premierement jou vous requier por l'enfant dou marchis toute
First I of-you request for the-child of-the marquis all
le tierre ki est de Mothon juskes à Macré, et toutes
the land which is from Modon as-far to Makri and all
les apertenanches ki sont chi en dedens, et ki estre i
the appurtenances which are here in within and which to-be there
doivent. Sire, che vous requier-jou pour le partie de l'enfant.»
ought Lord this of-you request-I for the part of the-child

600 Dont apiela li empereres les prinches et les barons ki laiens
Then called the emperor the princes and the barons who in-there
estoient, cascun par son non: premierement l'archevesque
were each by his name first the-archbishop
de Salenyke ki delès lui séoit, le conte Biertoul, et le
of Salonika who beside him sat the count Berthold and the
segneur del Cytre, et apriès, toz les autres barons; et
lord of-the Kitros and after all the other barons and
lor demanda s'il s'assentoient à le demande ke li
to-them asked if-they themselves-assented to the demand which the
cuens faisoit sour lui. Et de toz cels ke je vous ai chi
count made upon him And of all those whom I to-you have here
nommés n'en i ot nul ki s'i assentesist, fors
named not-thereof there was any who himself-thereto assented except
Aubretins, ki sires ert d'Estives, et li chanceliers et Pieres
Albertino who lord was of-Thebes and the chancellor and Peter
Vens. Chil troi trahitour seulement furent deviers le conte.
Vens Those three traitors only were toward the count
601 Dont dist li empereres au conte: «Sire cuens, or m'entendés
Then said the emperor to-the count Lord count now me-hear
un pau, s'il vous plaist. Jou ne voel mie ke vous ne autres
a little if-it you pleases I not wish at-all that you nor others
puissiés à droit dire ke je vous faille de covenences. Voirs
can with right to-say that I you fail of covenants True
fu ke je vous oi covent ke toute le terre que vous avés
was-it that I you had covenant that all the land which you have
ichi recordée, ke jou le vous otriai, se li emperreis s'i
here recounted that I it to-you granted if the empress herself-thereto
acordoit. Et jou encore le vous reconnois bien, et le vous tenrai
agreed And I still it to-you acknowledge well and it to-you shall-keep
si elle l'otroie. Et bien voel ke toz li mons sace c'onkes mais à
if she it-grants And well I-wish that all the world know that-ever before to

nul segnor ne fu faite tels demande, ke il doinst se tierre par
any lord not was made such demand that he give his land by
forche ne s'ounour. Et bien sai ke chils ki tel requeste me
force nor his-honor And well I-know that he who such request me
fait n'est mie molt desirans de m'onnour acroistre, ne de mon
makes not-is at-all very desirous of my-honor to-increase nor of my
preu metre avant; et poi m'aime plus que Blac u Commain.»
profit to-put forward and little me-loves more than Vlachs or Cumans
Adont apiela li empereres Cuenon de Biethune, et li dist 602
Then called the emperor Conon of Béthune and to-him said
ke il alast à l'emperreis, et li demandast se c'iert par li
that he should-go to the-empress and to-her should-ask if this-was by her
ke li cuens des Blans-Dras li faisoit tel demande. Lor ala
that the count of-the Biandrate to-him made such demand Then went
Cuenes de Biethune à l'emperreis, et li demanda s'ele le
Conon of Béthune to the-empress and to-her asked if-she it
looit; et elle dist k'ele s'en conselleroit, et lor en
approved and she said that-she herself-thereof would-counsel and to-them thereof
responderoit demain. Et Cuenes li otria, et revint arriere à
would-answer tomorrow And Conon to-her granted and came-back back to
l'empereour, et li dist chou ke il avoit trouvé. Li empereres
the-emperor and to-him said this that he had found The emperor
ala à l'emperreis, et li dist: «Dame, ne soiiés mie contre mon
went to the-empress and to-her said Lady not be at-all against my
droit; car dont feriés-vous desloiauté viers moi et viers vous. Et
right for then would-do-you disloyalty toward me and toward you And
de moi ne vous cremés onkes; car jà (si m'aït Diex!) enviers
of me not yourself fear ever for ever so me-help God toward
vous ne ferai vilonnie, se vous avant ne le faites enviers moi.
you not I-shall-do villainy if you first not it do toward me

603 « — Sire, dist li dame, se jou m'osoie fier en vous, jou
Lord said the lady if I myself-dared to-trust in you I
vous diroie bien por coi jou obéissoie à eus. Il m'avoient
to-you would-tell well for what I obeyed to them They me-had
si durement levé le pié ke jou n'osoie parler encontre els.
so hard raised the foot that I not-dared to-speak against them
Il avoient fait sairemens enviers moi et enviers mon fill;
They had made oaths toward me and toward my son
et por chou n'est-il mie remés ke il n'aient mandé deus
and for this not-is-it at-all remained that they have summoned two
fois u trois le marchis Guillaume de Montferras ke il
times or three the marquis William of Montferrat that he
venist à eus, por chou ke il voloient moi et mon enfant
should-come to them for this that they wished me and my child
de nostre tierre deshireter por le marchis metre ens. Et
from our land to-disinherit for the marquis to-put in And
puiske jou sai le malisse tant apiert en eus, et ke il ensi
since I know the malice so open in them and that they thus
cachent mon deshiretement, jou remanrai del tout à vostre
pursue my disinheriting I shall-remain of-the all at your
volenté; ne jamais, por cose k'il me sacent dire ne faire
will nor ever for thing that-they me know-how-to say or do
ne proumettre, ne m'assentirai à iaus ne à leur consaus.»
or to-promise not myself-shall-assent to them nor to their counsels
604 Ensi ordenerent lor afaire entre l'empereour et l'emperreis.
Thus they-arranged their affair between the-emperor and the-empress
Et quant Lombart sorent le desfiement de le dame, si en
And when Lombards knew the defiance of the lady so thereof
furent molt esbahi. Adont se rapenserent d'un autre
were-they very astonished Then themselves bethought-in-turn of-an other
barat; car il disent ke se li pais ne pooit en tel maniere
fraud for they said that if the peace not could in such manner

venir, il prenderoient deus homes et li empereres deus, et
come they would-take two men and the emperor two and
chil quatre prenderoient le cinquisme; et chou ke chil cinq
those four would-take the fifth and this that those five
en diroient entre els communement, fust tenu por droit
thereof would-say among them jointly should-be held for right
jugement. Et che ne disoient-il fors pour detriier. Et quant
judgment And this not said-they except for to-delay And when
li empereres oï chou, si dist ke il s'i assentoit
the emperor heard this so said that he himself-thereto assented
bien, mais ke tant ke il voloit savoir ki li cinquismes
well save that so-much that he wished to-know who the fifth
seroit. Et li Lombart disent ke che ne feroient il mie,
would-be And the Lombards said that this not would-do they at-all
mais les deus li nommeroient il volentiers: si iert li
but the two to-him would-name they willingly so was the
uns li connestables et li autres li sires de Nigrepont.
one the constable and the other the lord of Negroponte
Ensi remest adont ceste cose en estrif. Et li emperreis 605
Thus remained then this thing in strife And the empress
vint à l'empereour, et li pria por Diu, se lui plaisoit,
came to the-emperor and to-him prayed for God if him pleased
ke il couronnast son fill; et il dist ke il le couronneroit
that he should-crown her son and he said that he him would-crown
molt volentiers. Dont fist le jour de le Tiephane li
very willingly Then made on-the day of the Epiphany the
empereres chevalier l'enfant à molt grant hounour, et puis
emperor knight the-child with very great honor and then
le couronna voiant toz. Et si demoura encore li cuens
him crowned seeing all And so remained still the count
en se ballie, et fu raviestus des roiaus gonphanons; et
in his bailiwick and was reinvested with-the royal gonfanons and

refist nouviaus homages et novieles seuretés, juskes à
made-again new homages and new pledges until to
le volenté de le emperreis et non plus.
the will of the empress and not more

The Count Gives Up His Bailiwick

XIV

The count garrisons Christopolis and Serres with men hostile to the child. Challenged by the empress, he agrees to surrender both castles and by the court's judgment stays in her keeping until he does; foolishly he hands her back his bailiwick with a little ring. He secretly tells the castellan of Serres to yield it for no token, and its traitors keep it shut. Henry resolves to go himself, and accepts the count's offer to bring back the castles.

606 Si cuidoient ore nostre gent avoir ferme pais et boine
So thought now our people to-have firm peace and good
acorde, mais ore primes commence li guerre; car li cuens
accord but now first begins the war for the count
garni Christople et le Serre, et de tel gent ki n'avoient
garrisoned Christopolis and the Serres and with such people who not-had
mie molt grant volenté d'acroistre l'ounour de l'enfant, si
at-all very great will to-increase the-honor of the-child so
comme il fu puis seu par droite prouvanche.
as it was afterward known by right proof
607 Il avint un jor ke li cuens vint à parlement ou castiel
It happened one day that the count came to parliament in-the castle
à Salenyke. Si i estoit li empereres, Cuenes de Biethune,
at Salonika So there was the emperor Conon of Béthune
Pierres de Douai et autre baron assés. Dont commencha
Peter of Douai and other barons plenty Then began

à parler li cuens, et parla auques folement; et Cuenes de
to speak the count and spoke somewhat foolishly and Conon of
Biethune li dist ke il se consellast, se il voloit parler
Béthune to-him said that he himself should-counsel if he wished to-speak
devant si preudome comme pardevant l'empereour. Et il dist
before so worthy-man as before the-emperor And he said
ke volentiers le feroit, mais non fist; puis dist tel cose
that willingly it would-do-he but not did then said such thing
dont li empereris le tint à parole, si comme vous orés.
whereof the empress him held to word so as you will-hear
«Sire cuens, dist li empereris, or m'entendés un poi, s'il vous 608
Lord count said the empress now me-hear a little if-it you
plaist. On m'a fait savoir ke vos avés garnis mes castiaus,
pleases One me-has made known that you have garrisoned my castles
si comme le Serre et Cristople; et si les avés garnis de
so as the Serres and Christopolis and so them have garrisoned with
tel gent ki molt n'aiment mie nostre hounour, ne onkes à
such people who much not-love at-all our honor nor ever to
moi ne fisent seurté ne sairement de par mon fill; ains
me not made pledge nor oath on behalf-of my son but
l'ont en tel maniere fait à vous ke, se li marchis Guillaumes
it-have in such manner made to you that if the marquis William
de Montferras (ke vous et li vostre ont mandé grant
of Montferrat whom you and the yours have summoned great
piech'a) estoit passés chà outre, ke vous, por moi deshireter
while-ago were passed hither over that you for me to-disinherit
et mon enfant, li devés rendre mes deus castiaus. Et
and my child to-him ought render my two castles And
por chou ke on m'a fait entendant ceste cose por voire,
for this that one me-has made understanding this thing for true
jou voel ke vous me rendés ambes deus mes castiaus.»
I wish that you to-me render both two my castles

609 Et li cuens dit ke che feroit il volentiers. Et l'emperreis
And the count says that this would-do he willingly And the-empress
dist ke il l'en donnast seurtés. Et il dist ke il li
said that he to-her-thereof should-give pledges And he said that he to-her
donroit boines. Et de chou dist-il folie por soi; car li
would-give good-ones And of this said-he folly for himself for the
cours juga communement et dist, por droit, ke li cuens
court judged jointly and said for right that the count
devoit demourer deviers l'emperreis juskes à tant ke il
ought remain with the-empress until at so-much that he
ses castiaus li evust livrés, et ke elle evust mises les
her castles to-her had delivered and that she had put the
soies garnisons dedens. Et li cuens dist à l'emperreis ke
her garrisons within And the count said to the-empress that
tout ensi comme il l'ont jugié, l'otroie il bien.
all thus as they it-have judged it-grants he well
610 «Et jou pri, fait l'emperreis, à monsegneur l'empereour, si
And I pray says the-empress to my-lord the-emperor so
comme à mon droit avoué, ke il me tiegne à droit. — Dame,
as to my right advocate that he me hold to right Lady
jou voel velentiers, fait li cuens, ke il à droit vous tiegne; et
I wish willingly says the count that he to right you hold and
le vostre baillie poés vous ravoir à moi por assés petit. — Et
the your bailiwick can you have-back from me for quite little And
jou, fait l'emperreis, le reprendrai volentiers, se vous volés.» Et li
I says the-empress it shall-take-back willingly if you wish And the
cuens, com fols et mal ensegniés, trait un anelet de son doit,
count as fool and ill taught draws a little-ring from his finger
et rent à l'emperreis le baillie de toute le roiaume de Salenyke,
and renders to the-empress the bailiwick of all the kingdom of Salonika

dont il estoit saisis par cel anelet. Et puis est demourés par
whereof he was seized by that little-ring And then is remained by
deviers lui en prison por tant d'afaire comme vos avés oï.
toward her in prison for so-much of-business as you have heard
Dont fist tant l'emperreis ke ele ot chevaliers aparelliés, dont 611
Then did so-much the-empress that she had knights ready whereof
cascuns estoit ses hom et fievés de son fill; et lor commanda
each was her man and enfeoffed of her son and to-them commanded
ke il alassent prendre les saisines des castiaus. Et avoec aus
that they should-go to-take the seisins of-the castles And with them
ala, de par l'empereour, Guillaume de Sains ki marescaus
went on behalf-of the-emperor William of Sains who marshal
estoit de nostre ost, et Guillaumes de Blenduel, et Hervius
was of our host and William of Blendel and Hervé
de Garet, Guis de Dant Ruel et pluiseur autre chevalier.
of Garet Guy of Dant Ruel and several other knights
Tout chist se sont mis en chemin por aler à le Serre.
All these themselves are put on road for to-go to the Serres
Et li cuens apiela endementiers Vivien, ki castelains estoit 612
And the count called meanwhile Vivien who castellan was
de Salenyke, et Rube, un trahitour, et Engelier un autre:
of Salonika and Rube a traitor and Engelier an other
«Alés moi, dist li cuens, bien tost à le Serre; et dites
Go for-me said the count well quickly to the Serres and say
au castelain de par moi, ke por nulle ensegne ke je
to-the castellan on behalf-of me that for any token which I
li mange, ne pour nulle lettre, ke il ne renge le castiel.»
to-him send nor for any letter that he not render the castle
A tant se metent li trahitour à le voie apriès nos 613
At that themselves put the traitors on the way after our
chevaliers, et font tant ke il les ataignent: «Segnor, font li
knights and do so-much that they them reach Lords say the

troi trahitour à nos chevaliers, or nous atendés un poi ichi, et
three traitors to our knights now us await a little here and
nous irons laiens au castelain, et li dirons por quele cose
we shall-go in-there to-the castellan and to-him shall-say for what thing
vous iestes chi venu.» Dont entrerent li trahitour el castel,
you are here come Then entered the traitors into-the castle
et fisent lor message au castelain. Et li castelains Hues
and did their message to-the castellan And the castellan Hugh
lor dist c'onkes de chou ne fussent en doutanche, ke jà
to-them said that-ever of this not they-should-be in doubt that ever
n'i meteroient le pié. Et lors li disent li trahitour ke
not-there they-would-put the foot And then to-him said the traitors that
li cuens estoit en prison. Tout ensi fu li trahisons ordenée.
the count was in prison All thus was the treason ordered
614 Dont monterent amont en le tour li troi trahitour, et
Then went-up above into the tower the three traitors and
disent à nos messages, ki defors le castiel les atendoient,
said to our messengers who outside the castle them awaited
ke il alassent à Cristople; et s'on lor rendoit Cristople,
that they should-go to Christopolis and if-one to-them rendered Christopolis
on leur renderoit le Serre; mais autrement il n'i
one to-them would-render the Serres but otherwise they not-there
meteroient les piés. Et nostre message disent ke il iroient.
would-put the feet And our messengers said that they would-go
Dont vinrent à le Gyge; si prisent là un message ke il
Then they-came to the Gige so took there a messenger whom they
envoierent à l'empereour, et li manderent tout l'afaire,
sent to the-emperor and to-him sent-word all the-affair
comment li troi trahitour ierent el castiel demouré.
how the three traitors were in-the castle remained

Quant li empereres oï ces nouvieles, mervelles li 615
When the emperor heard these news marvelously to-him
anuiierent. Dont dist à le emperreis k'ele fust tout à seur,
they-vexed Then he-said to the empress that-she should-be all at ease
car il les iroit revider, et ke jà ne l'enboiseroient: «Dame,
for he them would-go to-visit and that ever not her-would-deceive Lady
et vous meismes venrés avoec; et s'il ne vous lassent ens, il
and you yourself will-come with-me and if-they not you let in it
me samble ke il mesprenderont trop. — Sire, jou ferai
to-me seems that they will-misdo exceedingly Lord I shall-do
vo commandement; si vous pri, pour Diu! ke vous m'aidiés
your command so you I-pray for God that you me-help
de mon droit; et se che non jou sai bien ke il feront toz
in my right and if this not I know well that they will-do all
lor pooirs de moi honnir.» Et li cuens, ki ces paroles ot,
their powers of me to-shame And the count who these words hears
en est molt joians en son cuer; car bien se cuide toutes
thereof is very joyful in his heart for well himself he-thinks all
voies delivrer, et faire tant ke li castiel li remaignent.
the-same to-deliver and to-do so-much that the castles to-him remain
Et quant li empereres voit ke il ne puet les castiaus avoir par 616
And when the emperor sees that he not can the castles have by
messages, molt li desplaist. Dont dist ke il meismes ira
messengers much to-him it-displeases Then he-says that he himself will-go
pour savoir ke chou est, et menra avoec lui le roine, pour
for to-know what this is and will-lead with him the queen for
savoir si on le laira en son castiel entrer. Et tant i menra
to-know if one her will-let into her castle to-enter And so-many there will-lead-he
gent, ke se on ne l'i laist entrer volentiers, ke il i enterra,
people that if one not him-there lets enter willingly that he there will-enter
che dist, par forche: «Sire, dist li cuens, or ne vous caut.
this he-says by force Lord said the count now not you let-it-matter

Jà mar por chou vous mouverés, ne me dame ausi; car
Never to-your-harm for this you will-move nor my lady also for
jou irai se vous volés, et saurai porcoi il ont chou fait. Et
I shall-go if you wish and shall-know for-what they have this done And
s'il vous plaisoit ke jou reusse me tierre et me pardonnissiés
if-it you pleased that I had-again my land and me pardoned
vostre ire, je vous renderoie les castiaus sans faille; car jou
your anger I to-you would-render the castles without fail for I
i menrai Pieron Vent, par cui jou les bé bien à ravoir.
there shall-lead Peter Vens by whom I them aim well to have-back
617 «Dame, or ne vous esmaiés mie, fait li cuens, ke vous
Lady now not yourself dismay at-all says the count that you
ne raiiés vos castiaus. Laissiés m'i aler, et entre vous
— have-again your castles Let me-there go and between you
et monsegneur i envoiés teus gens por moi garder, dont
and my-lord there send such people for me to-guard whereby
vous en remeignez sans souspechon; mais ke jou raie
you thereof remain without suspicion provided that I have-again
me tierre, et ke vous me pardonnés vostre mautalent. —
my land and that you me pardon your ill-will
Et jou voel bien, fait li empereres, ke vous et tout
And I wish well says the emperor that you and all
li autre raiiés chou ke vous avoir devés, par si ke
the others have-again this that you to-have ought on condition that
vous à l'emperreis rendés ses castiaus.»
you to the-empress render her castles

Serres Taken, and the Count in Prison

XV

The envoys set out with the count, but word comes that the Lombards of Serres offered their castle to Boril's bailiff, that the Greeks let the emperor's men into the town by night, and that the castle surrendered after three days. At Drama the count secretly has Peter Vens tell the castellan of Christopolis to hold out, and the Lombards seize four of the French by night. The count is brought back to Henry and imprisoned in the castle of Serres.

Et lors fu li afaires ensi ordenés ke li cuens meismes devoit 618
And then was the affair thus ordered that the count himself was-to
aler à le Serre por chou ke vous avés oï. Si fu commandé
go to the Serres for this that you have heard So was commanded
à Quenon de Biethune, à Ansiel de Chaeu, à Bauduin de
to Conon of Béthune to Anseau of Cayeux to Baldwin of
Soriel et à Mahiu Bliaut, ke il alassent avoec le conte
Sorel and to Matthew Bliaut that they should-go with the count
por lui garder. Et il i alerent, et tant menerent avoec
for him to-guard And they there went and so-many led with
aus de chevaliers ke il furent juskes à trente.
them of knights that they were up to thirty
Entre ces adevales, à tant es vous venir un message 619
Among these goings-on at that behold you to-come a messenger
à l'empereour ki le salua de par ses messages ke il
to the-emperor who him greeted on behalf-of his messengers whom he
premierement avoit envoiés à le Serre, et li dist ke li
first had sent to the Serres and to-him said that the
castiaus fu contre aus tenus en tel meniere ke il n'i
castle was against them held in such manner that they not-there
porent entrer. Dont s'en alerent de là à le Gyge,
could enter Then themselves-thence went from there to the Gige

et là se reposerent et herbregierent au mius ke il
and there themselves rested and lodged at-the best that they
porent. Et chil dou castiel avoient envoiés messages au
could And those of-the castle had sent messengers to-the
bailliu Burille, ki molt estoit outrageus; si manoit à Menelic.
bailiff (of-)Boril who very was outrageous so dwelt at Melnik
Et disent au bailliu k'il venist à le Serre, et se il i
And they-said to-the bailiff that-he should-come to the Serres and if he there
amenoit forche de gens, li castiaus li seroit rendus et
brought force of people the castle to-him would-be rendered and
delivrés; car il amoient mius ke il l'eust ke li empereres.
delivered for they loved better that he it-had than the emperor
620 «Sire, or oiiés comme li afaires vint à point; car ensi
Lord now hear how the affair came to point for just
comme il devoit entrer ou castiel à toute se gent, et ke
as he was-to enter into-the castle with all his people and that
il commenchoit durement à aprocier, li Griphon de le Serre
he began hard to approach the Griffons of the Serres
avoient mandé de plain jor, par le commun assentement, à
had sent-word by full day by the common assent to
vostres messages, ki estoient à le Gyge, ke il venissent à
your messengers who were at the Gige that they should-come to
le Serre lorske il seroit anuitié, et il les meteroient ou
the Serres when it would-be nightfallen and they them would-put into-the
bourc. Ke vous diroie-jou? Nostre message i vinrent, et li
town What to-you would-say-I Our messengers there came and the
Griphon les misent dedens le bourch sans autre noise. Dont
Griffons them put within the town without other noise Then
i ot assés pris des Lombars, et de lor chevaus gaegniés.
there was plenty taken of-the Lombards and of their horses won

«Et li noise commencha dont primes. Et Lombart furent 621
And the noise began then first And Lombards were
ou castiel amont; et li nostre message les assegierent
in-the castle above and the our messengers them besieged
là sus, et arsent le maistre porte. Sire, là furent trois
there up and burned the master gate Lord there were-they three
jours; et au quart se rendirent, sauves lor vies et
days and at-the fourth themselves surrendered safe their lives and
lor membres et lor avoirs. Sire, ensi se rendirent, et
their limbs and their wealth Lord thus themselves surrendered and
puis lor fisent li nostre jurer sor sains ke jamais encontre
then them had the ours swear upon relics that ever against
vous ne se meteroient ne en castiel ne aillours. Sire,
you not themselves would-put nor in castle nor elsewhere Lord
tout ensi est avenu ke je vous ai dit.»
all thus is happened as I to-you have said
De ceste noviele fu li empereres molt liés; et por chou ne 622
Of this news was the emperor very glad and for this not
remest-il mie ke Cuenes de Biethune, et li autre ki avoec
remained-it at-all that Conon of Béthune and the others who with
lui furent noumé, n'alaissent avoec le conte à Cristople. Dont
him were named went with the count to Christopolis Then
s'en vinrent à le Serre, et s'i herbregierent cele
themselves-thence came to the Serres and themselves-there lodged that
nuit, et molt furent houneré de cels de laiens. Au matin,
night and very were-they honored by those of in-there In-the morning
se remisent à le voie por aler à Cristople, et vinrent
themselves put-again on the way for to-go to Christopolis and came
juskes à Dragmes. Et ensi comme li cuens dut mander
as-far to Drama And just as the count was-to send-word
ou castiel ke on li aportast les clés, il apiela Pieron
into-the castle that one to-him should-bring the keys he called Peter

Vent, un fort trahitour, et si li consella ke il desist
Vens a strong traitor and so to-him counseled that he should-say
au castelain de par lui, que por cose ke il seust
to-the castellan on behalf-of him that for thing that he knew-how-to
dire, faire, ne commander, ke il le castiel ne rendist; car
say do or command that he the castle not should-render for
il cuidoit bien estre delivrés sans le castiel rendre.
he thought well to-be delivered without the castle rendering
623 Et Pieres Vens dist ke bien seroit fait. Et bien cuidoit
And Peter Vens said that well it-would-be done And well he-thought
faire tant par son engien ke il le delivrast; mais on dist
to-do so-much by his wit that he him should-deliver but one said
piecha ke «teus cuide autrui engignier ki de cel meismes
long-ago that such-a-one thinks another to-trick who by that same
engien u de samblant est engigniés.» Lors ala Pieres Vens
trick or by semblance is tricked Then went Peter Vens
à Cristople, et dist au castelain le mandement dou conte,
to Christopolis and said to-the castellan the command of-the count
si comme il li mandoit. Et li castelains et tout li
so as he to-him sent-word And the castellan and all the
Lombart s'i acorderent; puis prisent unes trives à
Lombards themselves-thereto agreed then took a truce with
nostre gent, et les creanterent d'ambes-deus pars, tant ke
our people and it pledged from-both sides until that
ceste cose fust parasommée.
this thing were concluded
624 Li Lombart avoient une grant trahison pourparlée sor nostre
The Lombards had a great treason plotted against our
gent; et nostre gens, ki de riens ne se doutoient,
people and our people who of anything not themselves feared
ains estoient tout asseuré, s'esparsent chà et là par les
but were all secure themselves-scattered here and there through the

casiaus. Et Lombart avoient envoié lor espies, un poi devant
hamlets And Lombards had sent their spies a little before
la mie-nuit, en un liu ù quatre de nos gens s'estoient
the midnight into a place where four of our people themselves-were
herbregié. Ke vaut che? Lombart lor coururent sus; si les
lodged What avails this Lombards at-them ran upon so them
prisent toz quatre. Et uns de lor siergans escapa; si vint à
took all four And one of their sergeants escaped so came to
Dragmes, et conta monsegneur Cuenon l'aventure, dont il ne
Drama and told (to-)my-lord Conon the-adventure whereof he not
fu mie joians. De ces quatre ki là furent pris, ensi come
was at-all joyful Of these four who there were taken thus as
vos avés oï, fu li uns Anciaumes de Biaumont, et li autres
you have heard was the one Anselm of Beaumont and the other
Hervius de Garet; mais les deus autres ne sai-jou mie noumer.
Hervé of Garet but the two others not know-I at-all to-name
Quant Cuenes de Biethune sot ceste trahison, il monta, entre 625
When Conon of Béthune knew this treason he mounted between
lui et Ansiel de Kaeu, por aler viers Salenyke; et enmenerent
him and Anseau of Cayeux for to-go toward Salonika and led-away
avoec aus le conte de Blandras. Dont laissierent Baudouin de
with them the count of Biandrate Then they-left Baldwin of
Soriel à Dragmes atout trente chevaliers. Et Cuenes de Biethune
Sorel at Drama with thirty knights And Conon of Béthune
et Ansiaus de Kaeu vinrent à Salenyke otout le conte; et le
and Anseau of Cayeux came to Salonika with the count and him
rendirent à l'empereour, et puis li conterent toute l'œvre.
rendered to the-emperor and then to-him told all the-work
De chou fu li empereres mervelleusement iriés; et li cuens 626
Of this was the emperor marvelously angered and the count
li pria por Diu ke il evust mierchi de lui. «Vous
to-him prayed for God that he should-have mercy on him You

avés, dist li empereres, vostre convenence faussée enviers
have said the emperor your covenant falsified toward
moi, et chou ke vous avés desiervi, si aiiés. Mais sans
me and this that you have deserved so have But without
faille, par moi ne serés vous jà vergondés.» Lors l'envoia li
fail by me not will-be you ever shamed Then him-sent the
empereres à l'emperreis; et l'emperreis le livre au conte
emperor to the-empress and the-empress him delivers to-the count
Biertoul, et li cuens Biertous l'emmaine el castiel de le
Berthold and the count Berthold him-leads into-the castle of the
Serre, et à tant le fait enchartrer. Mais à tant laisse ore
Serres and at that him has imprisoned But at that leaves now
li contes à parler de lui, et retorne à Bauduin de Soriel,
the tale to speak of him and returns to Baldwin of Sorel
et as trente chevaliers ki demouré furent à Dragmes.
and to-the thirty knights who remained were at Drama

The Lombards of Christopolis Defeated

XVI

The Lombards of Christopolis ride out for booty, and the French knights at Drama cut them off at a narrow pass; the Lombards make a stand in the vale of Philippi. Baldwin of Sorel fights Peter Vens until he surrenders, and Matthew Bliaut has Ralph the castellan tied on a nag, feet under its belly. Half the Lombards are taken. Christopolis refuses to yield for the count and the prisoners, and Henry threatens Ralph with the reward he has earned.

627 Si comme nostre chevalier sejornoient à Dragmes, et il
So as our knights sojourned at Drama and they
s'apparelloient dou païs garder, si lor avint un jour ke
themselves-prepared of-the country to-guard so to-them happened one day that

nouvieles lor vinrent ke li Lombart ki estoient dedens
news to-them came that the Lombards who were within
Cristople, venoient por les proies prendre, et por les casaus
Christopolis came for the booty to-take and for the hamlets
gaster et destruire, et por nostre gent faire anui. Dont
to-waste and to-destroy and for (to-)our people to-do harm Then
se coururent armer et monterent, et les fourclosent
themselves ran to-arm and mounted and them cut-off
à un destroit. Et quant Lombart virent che, si vorrent
at a strait And when Lombards saw this so wished
retorner, mais il ne porent; car nostre gent se penoient
to-return but they not could for our people themselves strove
d'els aprocier au plus ke il pooient, et d'aus fourclore.
them to-approach at-the most that they could and them to-cut-off
Et quant Lombart virent chou, si furent durement effréé, 628
And when Lombards saw this so were-they greatly frightened
por chou ke il savoient bien ke François nes amoient
for this that they knew well that French not-them loved
de riens. Il ne desiroient mie molt lor assambler, anchois
in anything They not desired at-all much their engaging rather
le resoignoient. Nonporquant il savoient bien ke il estoient
it feared Nevertheless they knew well that they were
assés plus gent ke nostre François n'ierent; et de chou ke
much more people than our French were and of this that
il estoient venu si priès d'eus, ne se tenoient il mie por
they were come so near of-them not themselves held they at-all for
sages. Et chou ke no Francois véoient ke il se travelloient
wise And this that our French saw that they themselves toiled
de lor proies mener en Cristople, les refaisoit auques crueus
of their booty to-lead into Christopolis them made-in-turn somewhat cruel
et engriés viers les Lombars. Molt se tenoient à decheus,
and fierce toward the Lombards Much themselves held-they for deceived

se Lombart enmenoient lor proie. Lors baissent les lanches, et
if Lombards led-away their booty Then they-lower the lances and
poignent les chevaus en escriant: Lombars! banieres desploïes.
spur the horses in crying Lombards banners unfurled
629 Quant Lombart les voient, si se metent au fuir viers
When Lombards them see so themselves put to-the fleeing toward
Cristople au plus efforchiement ke il onkes puent; et
Christopolis at-the most strenuously that they ever can and
nostre gens les sivent de si priès, ke petit faut ke il ne
our people them follow from so near that little lacks that they —
les ataignent. Et nomporquant il i ot aucuns Lombars
them reach And nevertheless it there had some Lombards
ki orent honte de chou ke il fuioient; si rendirent estal,
who had shame of this that they fled so gave stand
mais trop le fisent à envis. Pour chou ke Lombart
but exceedingly it did-they with reluctance For this that Lombards
voient bien ke combatre les estuet par forche, s'arriestent-il
see well that to-fight them behooves by force themselves-stop-they
ou val de Phelippe; car autrement cremoient il ke il en
in-the vale of Philippi for otherwise feared they that they in
fuiant ne fussent ochis. François lor keurent sus, lanches
fleeing — were killed French at-them run upon lances
baissies; et fiert cascuns le sien por lui atierer se il peust.
lowered and strikes each the his-own for him to-fell if he could
630 Bauduins de Soriel s'est adrechiés à Pieron Vent, et
Baldwin of Sorel himself-is directed to Peter Vens and
Pierres à lui. Si brisent lor lanches li uns sour l'autre;
Peter to him So they-break their lances the one upon the-other
mais nul autre mal ne se font, ne de sieles il ne
but any other harm not themselves they-do nor from saddles they not
se remuent. Dont s'en passent outre pour leur
themselves move Then themselves-thence pass beyond for their

poindre parfurnir; et quant Bauduins a son poindre repris,
charge to-complete and when Baldwin has his charge resumed
si met main à espée et keurt sus à Pieron Vent, et Pieres
so puts hand to sword and runs upon to Peter Vens and Peter
à lui. Ensi commence li bataille des deus. Il s'entrefierent
to him Thus begins the battle of-the two They each-other-strike
parmi les hyaumes tant ke tout li lach sont depechié,
through the helmets so-much that all the laces are broken
et que li uns l'a à l'autre esrachié fors de le tieste.
and that the one it-has from the-other torn off of the head
Se il evust en Pieron Vent autant de loiauté comme il 631
If it had in Peter Vens as-much of loyalty as he
avoit de trahison, mervelleusement fesist à prisier d'armes.
had of treason marvelously he-would-be to prize in-arms
Bauduins de Soriel ne le va de riens espargnant, ains le
Baldwin of Sorel not him goes in anything sparing but him
fiert de l'espée permi le coiffe de fier, si que li espée li
strikes with the-sword through the coif of iron so that the sword to-him
coula juskes al tiest, en tel maniere ke se il ne se fust
slid as-far to-the skull in such manner that if he not himself were
sousploiés desoz le cop, il evust esté mors. Nonporquant
bent under the blow he would-have been dead Nevertheless
li cos li coula sour le bras diestre, si ke poi s'en
the blow to-him slid upon the arm right so that little itself-thereof
failli ke il ne li esloça, et ke il nel trebuça jus dou
lacked that he — to-him dislocated and that he him tumbled down from-the
cheval. Et quant Pieres Vens vit ke Bauduins l'aloit si
horse And when Peter Vens saw that Baldwin him-went so
apriessant, si li rent s'espée et fianche prison à tenir.
pressing so to-him renders his-sword and pledges prison to hold

632 Et nostre gens ont tant fait, par le divine soufranche de
And our people have so-much done by the divine sufferance of
Nostre Segnour, ke bien ont retenu la moitié de lor anemis.
Our Lord that well they-have retained the half of their enemies
Et Mahius Bliaus a pris Raoul le castelain de Cristople, et si
And Matthew Bliaut has taken Ralph the castellan of Christopolis and so
l'a fait loier sor un povre ronchin, les piés loiés par desous
him-has had bound upon a poor nag the feet bound by under
le ventre, au plus viument k'il peut. Et bien fu drois ke
the belly at-the most vilely that-he could And well was right that
gueredons li fust rendus de le grant honte et de le grant
recompense to-him were rendered for the great shame and for the great
vilonnie ke il fist à son segnor, quant il son castiel frema
villainy which he did to his lord when he his castle shut
contre lui. Ke vaut chou? Il l'enmainent en prison tout
against him What avails this They him-lead-away into prison all
plaié et ensanglenté, et molt durement esbahi de le grant
wounded and bloodied and very greatly dismayed by the great
honte ki l'atent, dont il jamais ne se verra descargié.
shame which him-awaits whereof he ever not himself will-see unburdened
633 Molt se prouverent bien nostre gent à cele desconfiture,
Very themselves proved well our people at that defeat
et grant hounour firent à lor contrée et à toz chiaus dont il
and great honor did-they to their country and to all those whence they
estoient estrait. Ke vaut chou? Lombart i furent desconfit,
were sprung What avails this Lombards there were defeated
pris et loié, ensi comme vous avés oï. Jehans de Genlaing,
taken and bound thus as you have heard John of Genlain
ki fu freres Simon de Genlaing, Jakemes Bliaus, ki fu nés
who was brother (of-)Simon of Genlain James Bliaut who was born
deviers Blavegnies, et tout li autre i firent si bien leur
toward Blavegnies and all the others there did so well their

hounour comme aparant fu; cascuns i fu ou liu d'Olivier
honor as apparent was each there was in-the place of-Oliver
et de Rollant. Molt en i ot de pris, et chil ki fuir
and of Roland Many thereof there were of taken and those who to-flee
porent s'enfuirent viers les montaignes por lor vies garantir;
could themselves-fled toward the mountains for their lives to-protect
et Grifon lor saillirent, si les prisent toz et les ochisent.
and Griffons at-them leapt so them took all and them killed
Quant li cuens Biertoz sot ke li Lombart estoient ensi pris, si 634
When the count Berthold knew that the Lombards were thus taken so
en fu molt liés por chou ke il cuide ore molt bien ke por
thereof was-he very glad for this that he thinks now very well that for
els atendre et por eus delivrer, li doive on rendre Cristople.
them to-await and for them to-deliver to-him ought one to-render Christopolis
Dont s'en vint à Dragmes, et mena le conte o lui; et
Then himself-thence came to Drama and led the count with him and
là parlerent ensamble. Apriès vinrent devant Cristople à toz
there they-spoke together Afterward they-came before Christopolis with all
lor prisons, et disent à cels de laiens ke se il lor voloient
their prisoners and said to those of in-there that if they to-them wished
rendre Cristople entirement, sauves lor vies et lor membres
to-render Christopolis entirely safe their lives and their limbs
et lor avoirs, li cuens et tout il autre prison seroient delivré.
and their wealth the count and all the other prisoners would-be delivered
Et chil ki laiens estoient ne lor daignierent respondre, 635
And those who in-there were not to-them deigned to-answer
fors ke il se traisent en sus d'eus, u il les
except that they themselves should-draw away off from-them or they them
trairoient; ne ke jà ne renderoient le castiel por cose
would-shoot nor that ever not would-render the castle for thing
ke il faire pevussent ne seussent, et ke il ne prisoient
that they to-do could or knew-how and that they not prized

l'emperoeur le montanche d'un denier; et s'on les assaut, il
the-emperor the amount of-a penny and if-one them assails they
se deffendront bien. Et quant nostre François oïrent che,
themselves will-defend well And when our French heard this
si s'en retornent arriere viers Salenyke, et laissierent
so themselves-thence return back toward Salonika and left
les deux contes, et s'en vinrent à toz les prisons.
the two counts and themselves-thence came with all the prisoners
636 Et li empereres apiela le castelain, et li dist: «Raoul,
And the emperor called the castellan and to-him said Ralph
Raoul! n'est il mie bien drois ke nous vos vengons
Ralph not-is it at-all well right that we on-you avenge
cierement le honte et le soufraite et le malaise ke vous
dearly the shame and the want and the hardship which you
nos fesistes soufrir devant Cristople, et chou ke vous nos
us made to-suffer before Christopolis and this that you us
fesistes gesir as cans sous le gielée et sor le noif, sans
made to-lie in-the fields under the frost and upon the snow without
loge et sans pavellon? Et li gens ki avoec moi fu venue,
lodge and without pavilion And the people who with me was come
fu encore plus à malaise de moi; jou n'oc se bien non
was yet more at hardship than me I not-had except good not
aviers aus. Et vous estiés en vostre deduit là sus, et
compared-to them And you were in your delight there above and
aviés tout vostre solas. Par mon chief, castelains, chil ki che
had all your solace By my head castellan he who this
fait à son segneur, il ne li monstre mie ke il l'aim par
does to his lord he not to-him shows at-all that he him-love by
amours. Et cele felonnie n'ai-jou pas oubliée en tel maniere
love And that félony not-have-I at-all forgotten in such manner
ke vous n'en aiiés gueredon tel come vous avés desiervi.»
that you not-thereof have recompense such as you have deserved

Roland Pice's Treason

XVII

Roland Pice, who holds Platamon, asks Henry for thirty knights, having been paid to deliver them to the Lombards; a sergeant warns the knights in time. Henry goes to Kitros by sea while his men come through floods that nearly drown the pack horses. Told that Salonika is about to revolt, he rides back there and garrisons the tower on the sea, then sends Eustace and Anseau with thirty of the worthiest men to seize the pass of the Kleisoura.

En tel maniere manache li empereres le castelain, et Pieron 637
In such manner threatens the emperor the castellan and Peter
Vent et Vivien. Et ke vous diroie-jou plus? Li empereres
Vens and Vivien And what to-you would-say-I more The emperor
s'atourne et garnist le castiel et le tour dou vesque de
himself-prepares and garrisons the castle and the tower of-the bishop of
Sabba. Et en che k'il faisoit se garnison et ordenoit, à
Sabba And in this that-he made his garrison and ordered at
tant es-vous un message de par Rollant Pice, ki donne à
that behold-you a messenger on behalf-of Roland Pice who gives to
l'empereour unes lettres. Et li mandoit ke il li envoiast
the-emperor a letter And to-him sent-word that he to-him should-send
trente chevaliers, por che ke Lombart, si comme il li
thirty knights for this that Lombards so as he to-him
mandoit, s'ahatissoient de venir sor lui et de prendre dou sien.
sent-word themselves-boasted to come upon him and to take of-the his-own
Et li empereres dist ke, puiske il est ses hom, il n'est mie drois 638
And the emperor said that since he is his man it not-is at-all right
ke il li faille puiske il li puet aidier. Dont apiela Ansiel de
that he him fail since he him can help Then he-called Anseau of
Kaeu et Guillaume de Sains, et lor dist ke il lor convenoit
Cayeux and William of Sains and to-them said that it them behooved

aler en celui voiage; et si i fu Guillaumes de Blendel. Ke
to-go on that journey and so there was William of Blendel What
vous conteroie-jou? Trente en i ot ki disent ke molt
to-you would-recount-I Thirty thereof there were who said that very
volentiers feroient le commandement lor segnour, et ke
willingly would-do-they the command (of-)their lord and that
molt volentiers iroient. Dont se metent au chemin.
very willingly would-they-go Then themselves put to-the road
639 Et li trahitres en le cui aide il aloient, s'iert aloiiés
And the traitor in the whose aid they went himself-was allied
à Lombars parmi deniers et perpres d'or ke il en avoit
to Lombards through pence and hyperpers of-gold which he thereof had
recheues, en tel maniere ke il devoit destraindre et guerroier
received in such manner that he was-to constrain and war
nos François par son castiel; et ensi avoit fait son marchié
our French by his castle and thus had made his bargain
as Lombars. Et Ansiaus de Kaeu s'en vait à toz
with-the Lombards And Anseau of Cayeux himself-thence goes with all
ses compaignons à Platemont, en l'aide de celui ki les
his companions to Platamon in the-aid of him who them
trahist à son pooir et deçoit; mais Dex lor envoia son
betrays to his power and deceives but God to-them sent his
confort. Il vinrent juskes à Platemont, si n'entrerent mie
comfort They came as-far to Platamon so not-entered at-all
dedens; ains envoia mesire Ansiaus de Kaeu à Rollant Pice.
within but sent my-lord Anseau of Cayeux to Roland Pice
640 Mais il n'estoit pas à che point ou castiel; anchois estoit alés
But he not-was at-all at this point in-the castle rather was gone
pour Lombars, por chou ke il presissent nostre gent quant il
for Lombards for this that they should-take our people when it
seroit enseri. Tel trahison avoit empensée Rollans Pice enviers
would-be evening Such treason had devised Roland Pice toward

nostre gent; et Nostre Sires ne le vaut mie consentir, car il
our people and Our Lord not it wished at-all to-consent for he
mist en volenté à un siergant ke il lor fist à savoir ke il
put in will to a sergeant that he to-them made to know that they
erramment retornassent arriere; car se Rollans puet iestre de nul
at-once should-return back for if Roland can be of any
d'aus en saisine, il aront acreu sour lor piaus. Et quant nostre
of-them in seisin they will-have credited upon their skins And when our
gent oïrent le trahison, si retornerent à le Gyge, et manderent
people heard the treason so returned to the Gige and sent-word
à l'empereour comment il estoit ensi comme vous avez oï.
to the-emperor how it was thus as you have heard
Quant li empereres oï chou, si en fu molt dolans, et dist 641
When the emperor heard this so thereof was-he very sorrowful and said
ke bien le cuidoit li trahitres avoir engignié; mais bien sace
that well him thought the traitor to-have tricked but well may-know
il ke il a engignié lui avant, et tout son linage apriès. Et
he that he has tricked himself first and all his lineage after And
nonporquant li empereres ne s'esmaie de riens, ains atourne
nevertheless the emperor not himself-dismays in anything but arranges
son afaire en Salenyke, et fait tant ke tout si saudoier se
his affair in Salonika and does so-much that all his soldiers themselves
tienent à bien paiés de lui. Dont prent congié à l'emperreis.
hold for well paid by him Then he-takes leave of the-empress
Et elle le grassie molt de l'ounour ke il li a faite.
And she him thanks much for the-honor which he to-her has done
Dont se part de le ville, et a tant fait, entre lui et ses 642
Then himself he-parts from the town and has so-much done between him and his
homes, li un par mer et li autre par terre, li un à pié et
men the ones by sea and the others by land the ones on foot and
li autre à cheval, k'il sont au Cytre venu. Et il meismes
the others on horse that-they are to-the Kitros come And he himself

i vint lui dixisme de chevaliers, par mer, sans plus. Et
there came himself tenth of knights by sea without more And
plus n'en laissa-il avoec lui entrer; car il avoit pleu et negié
more not-thereof let-he with him enter for it had rained and snowed
si durement ke li flun estoient si creu et aparfongié ke li
so hard that the rivers were so swollen and deepened that the
pré et le terre en estoient tout couviert; si ke à poi ke li
meadows and the land thereby were all covered so that by little that the
sommier ne noioient dedens. Et li home estoient si baignié ke
pack-horses — drowned within And the men were so bathed that
tout estoient ausi comme mort, que de le aigue que dou froit.
all were just as dead both of the water and of-the cold
643 En cele chevaucie estoit Cuenes de Biethune, ki molt
On that ride was Conon of Béthune who much
maudissoit durement cels ki là l'avoient mené, et disoit
cursed greatly those who there him-had led and said
ke chil ki si grant penitanche soufreroit por Nostre-Segnour
that he who so great penance would-suffer for Our-Lord
(à che ke tout estoient ausi comme trenchié de froidure
at this that all were just as cut with cold
et de dolour), bien aroit desiervi paradis. Et s'il orent
and with pain well would-have deserved paradise And if-they had
auques grans sodées, bien les durent par droit avoir. Ke
somewhat great wages well them they-ought by right have What
vous diroie-jou? Il se herbregierent une nuit devant
to-you would-say-I They themselves lodged one night before
le Verre; de là sont alé au Cytre.
the Verre from there are-they gone to-the Kitros
644 Or sont nostre gent au Cytre venu; si ont là trouvé
Now are our people to-the Kitros come so have there found
l'empereour et l'ost ki illuec sejornoit. Et mesire Orris
the-emperor and the-host which there stayed And my-lord Orris

dou Chitre lor a fait toute l'ounour ke il pot; tant
of-the Kitros to-them has done all the-honor which he could so-much
ke li empereres avant, et tout chil de l'ost apriès,
that the emperor first and all those of the-host afterward
s'en loérent molt durement. Dont devisa li empereres
themselves-thereof praised very greatly Then arranged the emperor
se cose, et s'en ala une viesprée en Salenyque, entre
his thing and himself-thence went one evening into Salonika between
li et Cuenon de Biethune; car on li dist ke se gens
him and Conon of Béthune for one to-him said that his people
se devoit estre toute revelée contre lui.
itself was-to be all revolted against him
Puis a atorné se garnison de le tour ki estoit sor le 645
Then has arranged his garrison of the tower which was upon the
mer; si i lassa Huon Bliaut et autres chevaliers ke jou
sea so there left Hugh Bliaut and other knights whom I
mie ne sai noumer; apriès che s'en retorna al
at-all not know-how-to name after this himself-thence returned to-the
Cytre. Dont apiela Wistasse son frere et Ansiel de Kaeu,
Kitros Then he-called Eustace his brother and Anseau of Cayeux
et lor dist: «Segneur, vous eslirés juskes à trente homes
and to-them said Lords you will-choose up to thirty men
des plus preudomes ke vous porés trouver en ceste ost;
of-the most worthy whom you will-be-able find in this host
puis vous en alés ou val de le Venisce, et passés le
then yourselves thence go into-the vale of the Venisce and cross the
Closure avant ke li Lombart l'aient garnie, et le gardés
Kleisoura before that the Lombards it-have garrisoned and it guard
priès juskes à nostre venue.» Et il dient ke volentiers
near until to our coming And they say that willingly
feront son comandement; puis ont passée le Closure.
they-will-do his command then have-they crossed the Kleisoura

The Bridge of Larissa

XVIII

The Lombards demand that Henry free the count and restore his bailiwick before they will do him right, and refuse his offer of land for their homage. In such fury that he overturns the high table, Henry marches on the bridge of Larissa. Robert of Boves crosses first, and a handful of knights hold it; when Conon crosses, the Lombards flee into their fortress, losing tents, horses, and fifteen hundred marks of silver.

646 Entre ces coses, manderent li Lombart une pais à
Among these things sent-word the Lombards a peace to
l'empereour tel comme je vous dirai; et en fu Robiers de
the-emperor such as I to-you shall-tell and thereof was Robert of
Mancicourt messages à l'empereor et dist: ke il le conte
Mancicourt messenger to the-emperor and said that he the count
des Blans-Dras delivrast, et le mesist en possession de le
of-the Biandrate should-deliver and him should-put in possession of the
baillie del roiaume de Salenyke dont il l'avoit dessaisi; et
bailiwick of-the kingdom of Salonika whereof he him-had dispossessed and
puis alast al Corthiac, et il iront illuec à lui por droit
then should-go to-the Chortaiton and they will-go there to him for right
faire. «Or, biaus amis, fait li empereres au message, vous
to-do Now fair friend says the emperor to-the messenger you
meismes poés ore bien savoir se cette demande est raisnable,
yourself can now well know if this demand is reasonable
et s'il i a raison. Or me doinst Dex tant vivre, se
and if-it there is reason Now me may-give God so-long to-live if
lui plaist, ke jou me pensée puisse d'aus esclairier.»
him pleases that I my thought may on-them to-clear

Chis mandemens fu aportés à l'empereour, ensi comme 647
This message was brought to the-emperor thus as
vous avés oï, par un joesdi absolu; et le jour de le
you have heard on a Thursday of-absolution and the day of the
Paske, apriès mangier, se parti li empereres dou Cytre,
Easter after eating himself departed the emperor from-the Kitros
atout son ost, et dist bien ke mais ne retornera arriere,
with his host and said well that more not will-be-return back
si aura auques se volenté acomplie des Lombars, ki
until will-have-he somewhat his will accomplished on-the Lombards who
tant d'anuis li ont fais. Dont passa li empereres le
so-many of-vexations to-him have done Then crossed the emperor the
Closure tot seriement, et vint juskes à le Venisce, ù il
Kleisoura all serenely and came as-far to the Venisce where he
trova se gent en joie et en grant solas. Et là renvoierent
found his people in joy and in great solace And there sent-again
Lombart por tel parole meismes comme vous avés oïe.
Lombards for such word same as you have heard
L'empereres voit bien ke Lombart ne le gaitent seulement 648
The-emperor sees well that Lombards not him watch only
fors por lui dechevoir. Lors s'en vait viers le pont
except for him to-deceive Then himself-thence goes toward the bridge
de Larse; et se logent à douze miles priès, car toutes
of Larissa and themselves they-lodge at twelve miles near for all
voies oïst-il leur renonc volentiers. Car il avoit envoié un
the-same would-hear-he their answer willingly For he had sent a
evesque et un viel chevalier par lesquels il lor avoit mandé
bishop and an old knight by whom he to-them had sent-word
ke il feroit volentiers pais à aus, s'il offroient cose ù
that he would-make willingly peace with them if-they offered thing where
il i evust raison; si k'il demorassent en le terre, et il
it there had reason so that-they should-remain in the land and he

lor donroit encore de le soie por acroistre le lor, mais
to-them would-give yet of the his for to-increase the theirs provided
k'il fussent si home, et k'il li fesissent houmage et
that-they were his men and that-they to-him made homage and
seurté. Et Lombart disent k'il n'en feroient riens; car
pledge And Lombards said that-they not-thereof would-do anything for
il ont lor conestable en cui il ont toute lor esperanche.
they have their constable in whom they have all their hope
649 Li message ke li empereres i avoit envoiés revinrent à
The messengers whom the emperor there had sent came-back to
l'empereour, et li disent: «Sire, se vous volés avoir pais
the-emperor and to-him said Lord if you wish to-have peace
as Lombars, il convient premierement ke vous delivrés
with-the Lombards it behooves first that you deliver
le conte de Blans-Dras, et ke vous apriès le metés en
the count of Biandrate and that you afterward him put in
posession de se baillie, et puis vous en alés al Corthiac,
possession of his bailiwick and then yourself thence go to-the Chortaiton
et là vos venront-il faire droit, si avant comme il deveront.
and there to-you will-come-they to-do right so far as they will-be-bound
Et s'il vous desplait à sejorner al Corthiac, retornés vous
And if-it you displeases to stay at-the Chortaiton return yourself
ent en Constantinoble, et là vos referont che meismes,
thence to Constantinople and there to-you will-do-in-turn this same
par le los de Lombars et de François. Et bien vous
by the counsel of Lombards and of French And well to-you
mandent ke il ne vous en responderont autre cose.»
they-send-word that they not to-you thereof will-answer other thing
650 Et quant li empereres ot le response des Lombars et
And when the emperor hears the answer of-the Lombards and
le grant orguel, il fu si durement estains d'ire ke il ne
the great pride he was so hard choked with-anger that he not

desist un mot cui li donnast grant cose. Il séoit
would-have-said a word whoever to-him gave great thing He sat
adont au mangier; et il se leva de le table par si grant
then at-the eating and he himself rose from the table with so great
aïr, k'il trebucha par terre le maistre dois ù il séoit. Et
fury that-he overturned to earth the master dais where he sat And
dont jura ke, puiske Lombart ne voelent enviers lui faire
then he-swore that since Lombards not wish toward him to-make
pais ne acorde, ke il saura se Lombart aront pooir contre lui.
peace nor accord that he will-know if Lombards will-have power against him
Adont commanda li empereres ke si tref fussent destendu; 651
Then commanded the emperor that his tents should-be struck
car il vaurra, che dist, jesir au pont. Dont fait crier
for he will-wish this he-says to-lie at-the bridge Then has cried
li empereres aval l'ost ke cascuns s'armast; puis
the emperor down the-host that each himself-should-arm then
chevaucierent droit viers le pont de Larse. Li empereres fist
they-rode straight toward the bridge of Larissa The emperor had
ses batailles rengier et ordener, et se plainst des Lombars
his battalions ranged and ordered and himself complained of-the Lombards
à toz ses chevaliers. Lors envoia chevaliers avant por savoir
to all his knights Then he-sent knights forward for to-know
se Lombart avoient le pont desfait, u se il estoit entiers.
if Lombards had the bridge undone or if it was whole
Si i fu envoiés Guillaumes de Sains, et chil de Bielmés, 652
So there was sent William of Sains and he of Beaumetz
et Gossiaus li Moines, Hernous de Vilers, Gautiers de le
and Gossiel the Monk Arnold of Villers Walter of the
Riviere, Robiers de Bove; et che fu chil ki premiers passa
Rivière Robert of Boves and this was he who first crossed
le pont. Si i fu Aalars de Kieri, Guillaumes d'Arondiel et
the bridge So there was Aalart of Quiéry William of-Arondel and

Raous ses compains, et uns chevaliers ki Pieres fu apielés, et
Ralph his companion and a knight who Peter was called and
iert de le maisnie Guillaume de Biaumés. Si y fu Gadous
was of the household (of-)William of Beaumetz So there was Gadoul
de Kieri, et Gilles de Brebiere, et Gerous de Levincourt.
of Quiéry and Giles of Brebières and Gerous of Levincourt
653 Lors vinrent nostre chevalier au pont, et arbalestrier avoec
Then came our knights to-the bridge and crossbowmen with
els ke li empereres i avoit envoiés. Et Nostre Sires lor
them whom the emperor there had sent And Our Lord them
aida tant ke il troverent le pont entir. Et Robiers de
helped so-much that they found the bridge whole And Robert of
Bove se met sus premierement, et li autre s'aroutent
Boves himself puts upon-it first and the others themselves-file
apriès. Dont voient descendre Lombars ki lor vienent
after Then they-see descend Lombards who at-them come
à l'encontre; et li nostre, comme preu et hardi, les
to the-encounter and the ours as valiant and bold them
recuellent as glaives. Là ne fu mie Gossiaus li Moines
receive with-the lances There not was at-all Gossiel the Monk
laniers, ains s'i maintint comme chevaliers preus et
sluggish but himself-there bore as knight valiant and
aidans; et sovent recouvroient entour lui si compaingnon.
helpful and often rallied around him his companions
654 Et saciés ke il en i ot des autres ki molt furent
And know that it thereof there had of-the others who very were
preudome de lor cors à celui besoing, si comme Guillaumes
worthy-men of their bodies at that need so as William
de Sains, Ernous de Vilers, Gautiers de le Riviere et Aalars
of Sains Arnold of Villers Walter of the Rivière and Aalart
de Kieri. Et tant fissent ke li pons fu detenus tant ke
of Quiéry And so-much they-did that the bridge was held until that

chil ki estoient arriere furent venu. Nostre gent passerent
those who were behind were come Our people crossed
le pont comme chil ki bien en conquisent l'entrée par
the bridge as those who well thereof conquered the-entrance by
lor proeches. Et si i ot un petit siergant ke on apieloit
their prowesses And so there was a little sergeant whom one called
Capitiel, ki molt s'i prova bien; et le disent tout li
Capitiel who very himself-there proved well and it said all the
nostre ke che fu uns de cels ki là fussent, ki mius le fist.
ours that this was one of those who there were who best it did
Nostre gens coitierent Lombars de si priès ke il les 655
Our people pressed Lombards from so near that they them
remisent par droite forche ou castiel, et conquisent tierre
put-back by sheer force into-the castle and conquered ground
sur aus juskes à le maistre porte; et si abatirent de lor
upon them as-far to the master gate and so threw-down of their
chevaliers et retinrent. Molt i ot grant hustin à prendre
knights and held Very there was great fray to take
le pont. Là s'aidierent bien Gossuins li Moines, Arnous
the bridge There themselves-helped well Gossuin the Monk Arnold
d'Armentieres et Gautiers d'Allues: onkes ne s'arriesterent,
of-Armentières and Walter of-Allues ever not themselves-stopped
si vinrent devant le porte, et là lor coururent sus.
so came before the gate and there at-them ran upon
Gautiers abatit un Lombart devant le porte, et conquist
Walter threw-down a Lombard before the gate and won
le cheval; et Ernous d'Armentieres prist le Lombart sans
the horse and Arnold of-Armentières took the Lombard without
nulle autre deffense, et le fist garder comme prison.
any other defense and him had guarded as prisoner

656 Anuis seroit de raconter combien cascuns i gaaigna; mais
Tedious would-be to recount how-much each there gained but
tant vous di-jou por voir ke cascuns s'i monstra comme
so-much to-you say-I for truth that each himself-there showed as
preudom, ne onkes mais si poi de gent ne se continrent
worthy-man nor ever before so few of people not themselves bore
si bien et si biel. Dont lor vinrent doi batailles de nostre
so well and so fair Then to-them came two battalions of our
gent ki les secoururent; et s'il un poi se fussent plus
people who them succored and if-they a little themselves were more
hasté de venir au pont, bien evussent retenue le plus
hastened to come to-the bridge well would-they-have held the most
grant partie de lor gent; mais il ne savoient mie ke nostre
great part of their people but they not knew at-all that our
gent se fussent as Lombars mellé. A tant vint Cuenes
people themselves were with-the Lombards engaged At that came Conon
au pont, et trova ke nostre gent s'estoient tant combatu
to-the bridge and found that our people themselves-were so-much fought
as Lombars ke il lor avoient fait guerpir le plache.
with-the Lombards that they them had had quit the place
657 Et puis ke Cuenes eut passé le pont, Lombart s'enfuirent
And after that Conon had crossed the bridge Lombards themselves-fled
en leur fortereche, et lor laissierent tentes et pavellons, et
into their fortress and to-them left tents and pavilions and
quankes il avoient de harnois. Dont primes vinrent les novieles
whatever they had of gear Then first came the news
à l'empereour ke li pons estoit pris, et il en ot si grant joie
to the-emperor that the bridge was taken and he thereof had so great joy
ke à paines le pot-il croire. «Sire, dist Pieres de Douay, hastés
that with difficulty it could-he believe Lord said Peter of Douai hasten

vous de tost ensivir vos deus batailles, car en nulle maniere
yourself to soon follow your two battalions for in any manner
je ne vaurroie que nostre gent fussent descreu par Lombars.»
I not would-wish that our people were diminished by Lombards
Après le bataille Cuenon de Biethune, passa Ansiaus de Kaeu; 658
After the battalion (of-)Conon of Béthune crossed Anseau of Cayeux
et lorske Lombart les perchurent, li plus isniaus cuida estre
and when Lombards them perceived the most swift thought to-be
li plus lens à rentrer ou castiel. Or ne leur prent il mais
the most slow to re-enter into-the castle Now not to-them takes it more
nulle volentés d'assambler as nostres. Et nostre empereres,
any will to-engage with-the ours And our emperor
ki molt ert joians, vint au pont. Ki gaaigner veut illuec
who very was joyful came to-the bridge Who to-gain wishes there
faire le puet, si comme muls et mules, palefrois et chevaus,
to-do it can so as mules and she-mules palfreys and horses
reubes et covretoirs, or et argent et autres avoirs. Ke
robes and coverlets gold and silver and other wealth What
vaut che? Bien furent Lombart adamagié à celui point, par
avails this Well were Lombards damaged at that point by
lor folie, de mil et cinq cens mars de fin argent.
their folly of thousand and five hundred marks of fine silver

The Lombards Let Go, and Halmyros

XIX

Henry crosses the bridge bearing the arms of Flanders and besieges the Lombards; at his barons' pleading he frees all seven hundred, and Robert of Mancicourt flees. The Greeks of Halmyros welcome him with icons, and his knights drive Ravano's galleys off a great ship. A storm wrecks the ships carrying Henry's money, and Anseau of Cayeux brings it to Halmyros, where Henry pays his soldiers.

659 Li empereres s'arma et passa le pont, ki fais estoit
The emperor himself-armed and crossed the bridge which made was
de plances longhes et estroites; et li aighe ert si profonde
of planks long and narrow and the water was so deep
desoz et si radement courans, que nus n'estoit sor le pont
beneath and so swiftly running that anyone not-was upon the bridge
ki ne fust toz esbahis de regarder en l'aighe. Et quant
who not were all dismayed to look into the-water And when
li empereres fu outre, si monta sor un sien cheval
the emperor was over so he-mounted upon a his-own horse
ferrant. Apriès fist lachier son hyaume, et puis prist son
gray Afterward had laced his helmet and then took his
escu tel comme li cuens de Flandres le seut porter. Et
shield such as the count of Flanders it was-wont to-carry And
quant Lombart le perchoivent, si le manachent entre els
when Lombards him perceive so him threaten among them
durement; et dient ke bien il serra mestiers ke li escus
hard and say that well it will-be needful that the shield
ke il porte soit fors, car il ne les trovera mie vrais amis.
which he carries be strong for he not them will-find at-all true friends

Lors est passés li empereres, et est venus devant le porte. 660
Then is crossed the emperor and is come before the gate
Ensi a les Lombars assegiés, ki mie n'en sont joiant;
Thus has-he the Lombards besieged who at-all not-thereof are joyful
ains vaurroit bien estre li plus hardis aillors ke illuec.
but would-wish well to-be the most bold elsewhere than there
Dont vint Robiers de Mancicourt à l'empereour, entre lui
Then came Robert of Mancicourt to the-emperor between him
et Guillaume de Larse, et prierent por Diu ke il en
and William of Larissa and prayed for God that he thence
lassast aler les Lombars, saus lor cors, et lor amis et
should-let go the Lombards safe their bodies and their friends and
lor avoirs; car bien sevent ke il n'ont mie forche contre
their wealth for well they-know that they not-have at-all force against
lui. Et de chou li reprient tout li preudome de l'ost
him And of this him pray-in-turn all the worthy-men of the-host
ke il, por Diu et por pité, les en laist aler quitement.
that he for God and for pity them thence let go freely
Il estoient bien laiens set cens ki assés estoient fol (et 661
They were well in-there seven hundred who quite were foolish and
anious, se il en evussent pooir). Et si manoit laiens li
troublesome if they thereof had power And so dwelt in-there the
freres le marcis, ki au rivage estoit alés, entre lui et le
brother (of-)the marquis who to-the shore was gone between him and the
connestable et Aubretin, por savoir s'il s'en poroient
constable and Albertino for to-know if-they themselves-thence could
fuir, par l'aighe, se besoins en estoit. Ke vous diroie-jou?
flee by the-water if need thereof was What to-you would-say-I
Par les proieres des preudomes ki là furent et des
By the prayers of-the worthy-men who there were and of-the
barons, li empereres en lassa aler toz cuites les Lombars;
barons the emperor thence let go all quit the Lombards

et il s'en alerent vers le Flagre tant comme il
and they themselves-thence went toward the Flagre so-far as they
porent, comme chil ki n'ont cure de là faire lonc sejour.
could as those who not-have care of there to-make long stay
662 Tout ensi avint as Lombars comme vous avés oï. Et
All thus befell to-the Lombards as you have heard And
quant nostre gent aprocierent le pont au matin, Robiers
when our people approached the bridge in-the morning Robert
de Mancicourt s'enfuit à Platemont. Et ki vausist esgarder
of Mancicourt himself-fled to Platamon And who would-wish to-regard
selonc ses œvres, il avoit desiervi ore et autre fois ke on
according-to his works he had deserved now and other time that one
le pendist plus haut ke nul autre larron, quant il n'ose
him should-hang more high than any other thief when he not-dares
mie venir à son segneur, ains se repont. Ke vaut chou?
at-all to-come to his lord but himself hides What avails this
Robiers ne vaut mie tant que je plus vous conte de lui.
Robert not is-worth at-all so-much that I more to-you tell of him
663 Li empereres s'en vait à l'Amiro, entre lui et se gent;
The emperor himself-thence goes to the-Halmyros between him and his people
et Griu li vont encontre, comme chil ki miervelleusement
and Greeks to-him go to-meet as those who marvelously
desiroient ke il venist; et aportent les ancones, et si
desired that he should-come and bring the icons and so
li font polucrone. Ensi se tienent nostre gent dedens
to-him do polychronion Thus themselves hold our people within
le ville sans chou ke à nullui ne mesfont riens, tant
the town without this that to anyone not they-misdo anything so-far
ke li Grifon dient ke molt ont boin restor de segneur;
that the Griffons say that very they-have good exchange of lord
et ne plache Diu ke Lombart aient jamais signorie sour
and not may-please God that Lombards have ever lordship over

aus; car or primes se gariront-il à grant hounor, si
them for now first themselves will-protect-they in great honor so
comme il dient, mais ke Dex lor gart l'empereour.
as they say provided that God for-them keep the-emperor
Ensi se tinrent coi une grant pieche, tant ke il avint 664
Thus themselves held-they quiet a great while until that it happened
ke les galies Ravant de Nigrepont s'assamblerent entour une
that the galleys (of-)Ravano of Negroponte themselves-assembled around a
grant nef lequele il enmenassent volentiers s'il pevussent. Li
great ship which they would-lead-away willingly if-they could The
empereres oï le noise, et demanda ke chou estoit ki tel
emperor heard the noise and asked what this was which such
noise faisoit là fors. Et on li a conté ke c'estoient robeour
noise made there outside And one to-him has told that these-were robbers
de vassiaus ki assailloient une grant nef. Quant li empereres
of vessels who assailed a great ship When the emperor
ot ceste nouviele, il saut sus et haste molt durement se gent
hears this news he leaps up and hastens very greatly his people
de lever; et dist ke il n'enmenront mie le nef, se Diu plaist.
to rise and said that they not-will-lead-away at-all the ship if to-God it-pleases
Dont s'arment li chevalier, et entrent es barges dont 665
Then themselves-arm the knights and enter into-the barges whereof
il avoit assés sor le rive. Et si avoit Capielés ki à nostre
it had plenty upon the bank And so there-had Capielets who to our
gent aidierent molt durement. Il alerent secourre le grant
people helped very greatly They went to-succor the great
nef, ki bien eust été traite, se li Capielet ne fussent,
ship which well would-have been taken if the Capielets not were
et se nostre François n'evussent mis consel au secourre. Et
and if our French not-had put counsel to-the succoring And
nonpourquant li grans nés se deffendoit molt efforchiement;
nevertheless the great ship itself defended very strenuously

mais chil des vassiaus lor jetoient vive chauc es ielx.
but those of-the vessels at-them threw quick lime in-the eyes
Ke vaut chou? Il ont guerpie le grant nef; mais il
What avails this They have abandoned the great ship but they
enmenerent une petite nachiele ù il n'avoit riens.
led-away a little skiff where it not-had anything
666 Et ensi comme il estoient illuec, à tant es vous Henri de
And just as they were there at that behold you Henry of
Blois ki venoit de viers Salenyke; et estoit venus par aighe.
Blois who came from toward Salonika and was come by water
Et quant il voit l'empereour, si li dist en s'orelle: «Sire,
And when he sees the-emperor so to-him said in his-ear Lord
messire Ponces vous salue et vous mande ke il a bien fait
my-lord Ponce you greets and to-you sends-word that he has well done
vostre besoigne, et amaine vos deniers et vostre marcheandise.
your business and brings your pence and your merchandise
Mais tant i a ke il a eu un poi de destourbier; car li
But so-much there is that he has had a little of trouble for the
mers a esté grosse, et li tempieste cacha vos vassiaus sor
sea has been high and the tempest drove your vessels upon
terre, et furent brisié. Et vous fait à savoir par moi ke
land and they-were broken And to-you makes to know by me that
vous li envoiés gens et chevaliers par lesquels il vous
you to-him send people and knights by whom he for-you
puist aconduire vostre avoir.» Et quant li empereres oï
may conduct your wealth And when the emperor heard
chou, si i envoia Ansiel de Kaeu et autres chevaliers, ki
this so there sent Anseau of Cayeux and other knights who
tant firent ke il amenerent tot l'avoir de chi à l'Amiro.
so-much did that they brought all the-wealth as far as the-Halmyros
Et là le fist li empereres rechevoir, et paier ses saudoiers.
And there it had the emperor received and paid his soldiers

The Parliament of Ravennika

XX

Conon and Anseau persuade the constable to a peace to be settled at Ravennika. There the constable kneels to Henry and is forgiven, and Geoffrey of Villehardouin comes from the siege of Corinth with Otho of La Roche and becomes Henry's man, receiving the seneschalcy of Romania; the Lombards do not come. Henry marches to Thebes, where priests and archons welcome him, and besieges the Lombards in its castle, who burn his siege engine.

Or avoient Cuenes de Biethune et Ansiaus de Kaeu devisé 667
Now had Conon of Béthune and Anseau of Cayeux devised
entre eus ke boin seroit ke il pevussent faire par coi
between them that good would-be that they could do by which
cele guerre fust apaisie. Si manderent au conestable ke il
that war were appeased So they-sent-word to-the constable that he
venist parler à eus; et il i vint. Et parlerent ensamble
should-come to-speak to them and he there came And they-spoke together
tant ke li conestables s'amolia auques. Et si taillierent
so-much that the constable himself-softened somewhat And so cut
entre els une pais tel ke les doi parties s'en iroient
between them a peace such that the two parties themselves-thence would-go
à Ravenyke, et là en responderoient communement. «Et
to Ravennika and there thereof would-answer jointly And
se Guis et Aubretins et Ravans ne vuelent otriier cele
if Guy and Albertino and Ravano not wish to-grant that
pais, bien sacent, dist li conestables, ke jà pour eus
peace well let-them-know said the constable that ever for them
ne remanra; et puis ke il vauront aler contre raison, jà
not it-will-remain and since that they will-wish to-go against reason ever
puis, che dist, n'aront aide de lui ne des siens.»
after this he-says not-will-have-they aid from him nor from-the his

668 Dont ont entre eus une trive fianchie, tant ke ceste
Then have-they between them a truce pledged until that this
cose soit faite savoir à Joffroi et à Othon de le Roche,
thing be made known to Geoffrey and to Otho of the Roche
et as autres barons ki vinrent au parlement, si biel ke
and to-the other barons who came to-the parliament so fair that
li empereres les en mierchia molt. Et chi en dedens,
the emperor them thereof thanked much And here in the-meantime
manda Ravans Cuenon de Biethune et Ansiel de Kaeu, ke
summoned Ravano Conon of Béthune and Anseau of Cayeux that
il venissent à lui parler; et il i vinrent. Et Ravans issi
they should-come to him to-speak and they there came And Ravano issued
à molt grant doute dou vaissiel; mais il ne li convenist
with very great fear from-the vessel but it not to-him behooved
pas douter. Ke vous diroie-jou? Assés parlerent ensamble,
at-all to-fear What to-you would-say-I Plenty spoke-they together
mais che fu pour noient; car à tel pais comme il devisoient,
but this was for nothing for to such peace as they devised
ne li une partie ne li autre ne se porent assentir;
nor the one party nor the other not themselves could assent
ains retornerent cascuns arriere là dont il estoient venu.
but returned each back there whence they were come

669 Ensi comme jou devant vous dis, fu li parlemens pris ou val
Thus as I before to-you said was the parliament taken in-the vale
de Ravenyke. Là vint li empereres Henris, li cuens Biertous
of Ravennika There came the emperor Henry the count Berthold
et Ourris li sires dou Chitre, et autre chevalier assés. Li
and Orris the lord of-the Kitros and other knights plenty The
conestables vint à l'empereour, et mist pié à terre sitost
constable came to the-emperor and put foot to earth as-soon
comme il le vit; et quant il vint devant lui, il s'ajenoilla. Et
as he him saw and when he came before him he himself-knelt And

li empereres l'en leva et le baisa, et li pardonna son
the emperor him-thence raised and him kissed and to-him pardoned his
mautalent et cankes il avoit mesfait enviers lui. L'endemain vint
ill-will and whatever he had misdone toward him The-next-day came
Joffrois de Vile Harduin, et Othes de le Roche et Gautiers
Geoffrey of Ville Hardouin and Otho of the Roche and Walter
des Tombes, bien à soissante chevaliers molt bien armés et
of-the Tombes well to sixty knights very well armed and
molt bien montés, comme chil ki grant pieche avoient sis
very well mounted as those who great while had sat
devant Chorinthe. Et por oïr le pais, et en quel forme
before Corinth And for to-hear the peace and in what form
et en quel maniere elle seroit ordenée, i estoient-il venu.
and in what manner it would-be ordered there were-they come
Ke vous diroie-jou? Lombart defaillirent dou parlement, ke 670
What to-you would-say-I Lombards failed of-the parliament that
il n'i vinrent point. Si empirierent trop lor plait; car li
they not-there came at-all So worsened-they exceedingly their case for the
empereres s'afiça bien d'eus destruire selonc son pooir. Et
emperor himself-pledged well of-them to-destroy according-to his power And
là devint Joffrois hom l'empereour Henri, et li empereres li
there became Geoffrey man (of-)the-emperor Henry and the emperor to-him
acrut son fief de le senescaucie de Romenie; et il en baisa
increased his fief by the seneschalcy of Romania and he thereof kissed
l'empereour en foi. Et Amés Buffois refu conestables en fief.
the-emperor in faith And Amé Buffa was-in-turn constable in fief
Quant li empereres voit ke Lombart ne se voelent assentir 671
When the emperor sees that Lombards not themselves wish to-assent
à s'amour, et k'il au parlement ki estoit pris à Ravenyke
to his-love and that-they to-the parliament which was taken at Ravennika
ne vaurent venir, il s'en parti et fist por lui garnir le
not wished to-come he himself-thence parted and had for him garrisoned the

castiel des Lombars, por chou ke il ne set k'à avenir li
castle of-the Lombards for this that he not knows what-to come to-him
est. Li empereres vint jesir à le Bondeice, un merkedi au
is The emperor came to-lie at the Bodonitsa a Wednesday at-the
soir. Dont passa le Closure, et Griphon le vinrent encliner.
evening Then he-crossed the Kleisoura and Griffons him came to-bow-to
672 Li empereres chevauce tant ke il est à Thebes venus; et
The emperor rides so-far that he is to Thebes come and
Lombart font le castiel tenir contre lui. Mais li empereres
Lombards have the castle held against him But the emperor
dist bien ke il les fera assaillir, et se il à forche les
says well that he them will-have assailed and if he by force them
puet prendre, il s'ahatist bien ke il les fera honnir des
can take he himself-vows well that he them will-have shamed of-the
cors. Et quant il entra en Thebes, dont pevussiés oïr un
bodies And when he entered into Thebes then could-you to-hear a
si grant polucrone de palpas et d'alcontes, et d'oumes et
so great polychronion of priests and of-archons and of-men and
de femes, et si grant tumulte de tymbres, de tabours et de
of women and so great tumult of timbrels of drums and of
trompes, ke toute li terre en trambloit. Ke vaut chou?
trumpets that all the land thereby trembled What avails this
Tout vienent encontre lui pour obéir à son commandement.
All come to-meet him for to-obey to his command
673 Li empereres est entrés en Thebes; mais avant k'il entrast
The emperor is entered into Thebes but before that-he entered
en le ville, il descendi, si ke li archevesques et li clergiés
into the town he dismounted so that the archbishop and the clergy
le menerent au moustier Nostre Dame. Là rendi graces
him led to-the minster (of-)Our Lady There he-rendered thanks
à Nostre Segneur de l'ounour ke il li avoit consentie à
to Our Lord for the-honor which he to-him had allowed to

avoir en cest siecle. Puis ist hors dou moustier et fait asseoir
have in this world Then issues out of-the minster and has besieged
le castiel, et dist ke il l'assauroit se il ne li rendent.
the castle and said that he it-would-assault if they not to-him render
Mais Lombart dient ki dedens sont ke il nen renderont mie.
But Lombards say who within are that they not-it will-render at-all
Dont fait drechier mangouniaus et arrengier ses arbalestriers 674
Then he-has raised mangonels and arrayed his crossbowmen
entour les fossés, et fait traire et jeter à le maistre
around the ditches and has shot and thrown at the master
fremeté. Mais chou est por noient, car trop est li castiaus
fortification But this is for nothing for too is the castle
fors. Dont fist Hues d'Aire faire un cat, et le fist
strong Then had Hugh of-Aire made a cat and it had
bien cuirier et acesmer; et quant il fu toz fais, si le
well hided and fitted and when it was all made so it
fisent mener par desus le fossé. Et fu, cele viesprée,
had-they led over above the ditch And it-was that evening
mauvaisement gardés; si l'arsent chil dou castiel, en tel
badly guarded so it-burned those of-the castle in such
maniere c'onkes ne pot iestre secourus d'oume de defors.
manner that-ever not could be succored by-man from outside

The Castle of Thebes

XXI

In the assault William of Quesnoy cuts steps in the ditch with his sword and, though wounded, is given the prize; three men of Valenciennes fight hardest, but the attack is slack and fails. When Henry has ladders and belfries built, the Lombards surrender the castle and their fiefs, and the count of Biandrate is freed. Fetched from Salonika by Pons of Lyons, he turns toward Negroponte instead, saying he will take revenge on the emperor.

675 L'endemain, les assaillirent mesléement siergant et chevalier
The-next-day them assailed mingled sergeants and knights
ensamble; et chil dedens se deffendoient molt asprement,
together and those within themselves defended very fiercely
et jetoient pierres et traioient quariaus molt espessement, et
and threw stones and shot quarrels very thickly and
molt blechoient des nostres. Guillaumes dou Caisnoit estoit
much wounded of-the ours William of-the Quesnoy was
entrés el fossé, et faisoit passieres à s'espée pour monter
entered into-the ditch and made steps with his-sword for to-climb
amont. Et quant chil de laiens le perchurent, si li jeterent
up And when those of in-there him perceived so at-him threw
pieres, et tant fisent ke il le navrerent ou chief et en
stones and so-much did that they him wounded in-the head and in
le main. Ne onkes por chou ne guerpi l'assaut; ains l'en
the hand Nor ever for this not he-quit the-assault but to-him-thereof
donnerent le pris au departir tout chil ki à l'assaut estoient.
gave the prize at-the parting all those who at the-assault were
676 Mais sans faille, il est verités ke on ne puet mie faire grant
But without fail it is truth that one not can at-all do great
hardement de legier ke il n'i ait folie. Et li troi ki plus
boldness with ease that it not-there be folly And the three who most

s'abandonnoient à cel assaut furent né de Valenchienes. Si ot
themselves-abandoned to that assault were born of Valenciennes So had
non li uns Roimondins, li autres Sohiers li Panetiers, et li
name the one Roimondin the other Sohier the Pantler and the
autres Franques de Chausmes; mais chil Franques i fu navrés
other Franque of Chaumes but that Franque there was wounded
mortelment en le tieste. Molt fu grans li assaus ke li escuier
mortally in the head Very was great the assault which the squires
rendirent au castiel en celui jor; et molt se travellierent
rendered to-the castle on that day and much themselves toiled
de drechier les escieles au mur; mais chil ki là dedens
to raise the ladders to-the wall but those who there within
estoient se deffendoient cascuns comme por soi meismes.
were themselves defended each as for himself self
Guillaumes dou Caisnoit faisoit passieres ou fosset de 677
William of-the Quesnoy made steps in-the little-ditch with
s'espée, si comme j'ai dit; mais chil de desus li jeterent
his-sword so as I-have said but those from above at-him threw
d'amont pieres por lui acraventer, s'il le pevussent faire. Et
from-above stones for him to-crush if-they it could do And
nostre archier et nostre arbalestrier traioient à cels dedens
our archers and our crossbowmen shot at those within
sajetes et quariaus: mais ne valoit riens, car trop se
arrows and quarrels but not it-availed anything for exceedingly themselves
deffendoient asprement en jetant pieres et peus agus. Et si
they-defended fiercely in throwing stones and stakes sharp And so
avoit vilains ki à nostre gent jetoient de pieres en grans
there-had churls who at our people threw of stones in great
fondes ki molt mervelleusement lor grevoient. Molt i
slings which very marvelously them grieved Very there
estoit grans li hus et li noise. Ke vous diroie-jou? Se
was great the shout and the noise What to-you would-say-I If

chil defors assaillissent ausi asprement comme chil dedens
those outside assailed as fiercely as those within
se deffendoient, li castiaus eust esté tost pris; mais
themselves defended the castle would-have been soon taken but
il assailloient lentement et perecheusement.
they assailed slowly and lazily
678 Quant li empereres vit ke par assaut ne porroit le castiel
When the emperor saw that by assault not he-could the castle
avoir, si fist sonner le retrait; puis fist querre carpentiers
have so had sounded the retreat then had sought carpenters
partout por faire escieles, et bierfrois et grans cliiers.
everywhere for to-make ladders and belfries and great hurdles
Et chil dedens se deffendoient selonc lor pooir: mais
And those within themselves defended according-to their power but
riens ne lor vaut deffense, si comme jou croi; car les
anything not to-them avails defense so as I believe for the
escieles sont faites, hautes et grans et bien chevillies. Et
ladders are made high and great and well pegged And
quant Lombart les virent, s'il en furent esbahi che ne
when Lombards them saw if-they thereby were dismayed this not
fu mie miervelle. Ke vous conteroie-jou? Ils fisent parler
was at-all marvel What to-you would-recount-I They had speak
de le pais, et Aubretins et Ravans manderent les trives.
of the peace and Albertino and Ravano sent-word-for the truce
679 Et chi en dedens, il ont mandé à l'empereour et mis en
And here in the-meantime they have sent-word to the-emperor and put in
abandon tout lor fiés et lor terres. Et li donnerent grans
abandon all their fiefs and their lands And to-him gave great
dons, et li rendirent le castiel; et li empereres en rechut
gifts and to-him rendered the castle and the emperor thereof received
les clés. Et ensi furent tout acordé d'une part et d'autre, et si
the keys And thus were all agreed on-one side and on-other and so

fu li cuens des Blans-Dras delivrés; mais puis fist-il tant de
was the count of-the Biandrate delivered but afterward did-he so-many of
males œvres ke jamais ne poroient estre amendées à s'ounour.
evil works that ever not could be amended to his-honor
Li cuens des Blans-Dras fu delivrés, et si fu envoiiés Poins de
The count of-the Biandrate was delivered and so was sent Pons of
Lyons por lui delivrer. Si le trouva en Salenyke, et li dist ke
Lyons for him to-deliver So him he-found in Salonika and to-him said that
il le menroit droit à l'empereour por oïr le droit de le court.
he him would-lead straight to the-emperor for to-hear the right of the court
Dont se mist li cuens au chemin, et lassa chelui de 680
Then himself put the count on-the road and left that-one of
Thebes par mauvais consel, por eschiver l'empereor, et torna
Thebes by bad counsel for to-avoid the-emperor and turned
viers Negrepont. Et Poins de Lyon revint à l'empereour, et
toward Negroponte And Pons of Lyons came-back to the-emperor and
li conta comment li cuens s'en aloit viers Negrepont,
to-him told how the count himself-thence went toward Negroponte
par mauvais consel ke il avoit creu. Et quant li empereres
by bad counsel which he had believed And when the emperor
oï chou, si l'en anoia molt. «Comment dont, dist li
heard this so him-thereof vexed much How then said the
empereres, ne venra-il mie chà? — Sire, non, fait Poins
emperor not will-come-he at-all here Lord no says Pons
de Lyons; ains dist bien k'il se vengera de vous.» Ke
of Lyons but he-said well that-he himself will-avenge on you What
vous diroie-jou? Li castiaus est rendus, et li cose remest
to-you would-say-I The castle is rendered and the thing remained
ensi: tout fisent leur pais à l'empereour, fors seulement li
thus all made their peace with the-emperor except only the

cuens des Blans-Dras. Mais chil en esploita si folement,
count of-the Biandrate But he thereof acted so foolishly
comme li contes devisera chi-apriès, s'il est ki le vous die.
as the tale will-tell hereafter if-there is who it to-you tell

The Plot at Negroponte

XXII

Henry prays in Our Lady of Athens and, warned that the count will seize him, goes to Negroponte anyway under Ravano's safe-conduct. There the count plots to kill him at table or in bed, and word spreads that he has been taken. Ravano learns of the plot and tells the count he will never allow harm to an emperor who came on his pledge, and Henry returns safely to Thebes.

681 Li empereres ala à le maistre eglyse d'Athaines en orisons;
The emperor went to the master church of-Athens in prayers
chou est une eglyse c'on dist de Nostre Dame; et Othes de
this is a church which-one calls of Our Lady and Otho of
le Roche, ki sires en estoit (à cui li marchis l'avoit donnée),
the Roche who lord thereof was to whom the marquis it-had given
l'i honnera de tout son pooir. Là sejorna li empereres
him-there honored with all his power There sojourned the emperor
deus jors, et au tierc s'en ala vers Negrepont. Le
two days and on-the third himself-thence went toward Negroponte The
nuit se jut à un casal, et se reposa juskes à l'endemain,
night himself lay at a hamlet and himself rested until to the-next-day
ke Bauduins de Pas li dist ke li cuens des Blans-Dras
when Baldwin of Pas to-him said that the count of-the Biandrate
estoit à Negrepont: «Et saciés, sire, ke jou dormi anuit à
was at Negroponte And know lord that I slept last-night at
Negrepont, et là ai-jou entendu ke se vous i alés, il vous
Negroponte and there have-I heard that if you there go he you

prendera. Et quant li empereres l'oï, si en fu molt
will-take And when the emperor it-heard so thereof was-he very
dolans; et dist ke jà por chou ne laira ke il n'i voist.
sorrowful and said that ever for this not he-will-leave that he there go
Dont apiela Ravant et le conestable ki o lui estoit, et 682
Then he-called Ravano and the constable who with him was and
Othon de le Roche et Ansiel de Kaeu, et lor dist ke ensi
Otho of the Roche and Anseau of Cayeux and to-them said that thus
s'ahatist li cuens, se il va à Negrepont, que il le fera
himself-vows the count if he goes to Negroponte that he him will-have
prendre. Et Ravans li dist c'onkes n'en soit en effroi:
taken And Ravano to-him said that-ever not-thereof he-be in fright
«Vous savés bien, fait-il, ke li chités est moie, et jou vous
You know well says-he that the city is mine and I you
i prent en conduit sor me tieste. — Jou ne sai, fait li
there take in safe-conduct upon my head I not know says the
empereres, ke il en avenra ne coi non; mais jou irai.» Dont
emperor what it thereof will-come or what not but I shall-go Then
se mist l'endemain à le voie en une galie, entre lui et
himself put the-next-day on the way in a galley between him and
Ravant, pour aler à Negrepont. Mais de quel eur ke il soit
Ravano for to-go to Negroponte But in what fortune that he be
ens entrés, je cuit ke il aura toute paour avant ke il en
in entered I think that he will-have all fear before that he thence
puist issir; car li trahisons estoit toute porparlée et ordenée.
can issue for the treason was all plotted and ordered
Li empereres Henris entra en Negrepont à grant joie; 683
The emperor Henry entered into Negroponte with great joy
et molt le rechurent joieusement li Grifon de le ville et
and much him received joyfully the Griffons of the town and
de le contrée, et vinrent encontre lui à grant tabureis de
of the country and came to-meet him with great drumming of

trompes et d'estrumens, et le menerent à une eglyse de
trumpets and of-instruments and him led to a church of
Nostre Dame pour orer. Et quant il ot oré tant comme
Our Lady for to-pray And when he had prayed so-long as
li plot, il s'en parti et issi de l'eglyse. Et li cuens
him pleased he himself-thence parted and issued from the-church And the count
des Blans-Dras avoit jà ordené comment li empereres
of-the Biandrate had already ordered how the emperor
devoit estre ochis. Et avoient dit ke il estoit venus auques
was-to be killed And they-had said that he was come somewhat
à escari; car il n'avoit o lui ke trente chevaliers. Si ont
with few for he not-had with him but thirty knights So have-they
devisé ke il le prenderont au mengier ou quant il dormira
devised that they him will-take at-the eating or when he will-sleep
en son lit; et ensi poront estre vengié, et non autrement.
in his bed and thus will-be-able be avenged and not otherwise
684 Trois jors remest ensi li empereres entre eus. Et nouvieles
Three days remained thus the emperor among them And news
vinrent à Thebes ke il estoit pris à Negrepont; et dont
came to Thebes that he was taken at Negroponte and then
veissiés ches chevaliers esbahis et courechiés estrangement
could-you-have-seen these knights dismayed and angered strangely
et desconselliés. Et de chou esparst li nouviele par tout
and distraught And of this spread the news through all
le païs. Ensi fu li empereres trois jors à Negrepont, c'onkes
the country Thus was the emperor three days at Negroponte that-ever
ne trouva ki li fesist ne deist cose ki li despleust.
not he-found who to-him did nor said thing which him displeased
Et tant fist Ravans ke il sot toute le trahison comment
And so-much did Ravano that he knew all the treason how
ele estoit porparlée. Dont vint au conte et li dist:
it was plotted Then he-came to-the count and to-him said

«Cuens des Blans-Dras, ke chou est ke tu veus faire? 685
Count of-the Biandrate what this is that thou wishest to-do
Comment, por Diu! se poroit tes cuers assentir à si grant
How for God itself could thy heart assent to so great
desloiauté faire comme d'ochire l'empereour, dont tu ne
disloyalty to-do as to-kill the-emperor whence thou not
poroies en le fin escaper ke tu n'en fusses honnis?
couldst in the end escape that thou not-thereby wert shamed
Et d'autre part, tu sés por voir ke il est en Negrepont
And on-other side thou knowest for truth that he is into Negroponte
venus sour me fianche; et si sui ses hom liges. Comment
come upon my pledge and so am-I his man liege How
cuides-tu dont ke jou pevusse consentir ke on li feist
thinkest-thou then that I could consent that one to-him did
mal? Cuens des Blans-Dras, ke t'en diroie-jou autre
harm Count of-the Biandrate what to-thee-thereof would-say-I other
cose? Si m'aït Dex! jou ne le poroie soufrir.»
thing So me-help God I not it could suffer
Ke vaut che? Se Ravans ne fust, jà li empereres ne fust issus 686
What avails this If Ravano not were ever the emperor not were issued
de Negrepont sans grant anui, et sans damage rechevoir de
from Negroponte without great trouble and without damage receiving of
son cors. Dont dist li empereres ke il voloit retorner à Thebes
his body Then said the emperor that he wished to-return to Thebes
por veoir ses homes, ki de lui estoient en effroi, si comme on
for to-see his men who for him were in fright so as one
li avoit conté. Il se mut de Negrepont et vint à Thebes.
to-him had told He himself moved from Negroponte and came to Thebes
Et se si home vinrent encontre lui et li fisent grant joie
And if his men came to-meet him and to-him made great joy
comme à lor segnor, chou ne fait mie à demander. Mais à tant
as to their lord this not is at-all to ask But at that

se taist ore chi li contes de ceste matere, et retourne à Burille,
itself silences now here the tale of this matter and returns to Boril
ki s'aparelloit d'entrer en le terre l'empereour atout grant gent.
who himself-prepared to-enter into the land (of-)the-emperor with great people

Michael's Offer

XXIII

Boril prepares to invade, and Henry summons his host; the count of Biandrate swears on relics never to oppose him, though his heart means otherwise. Below Salonika Henry sends Conon and Peter of Douai to offer Michael honor as a brother if he will hold his land of Henry, and war if not. Michael offers his daughter and a third of his land to Henry's brother Eustace, and will hold his land of Henry. There the history ends.

687 Quant li empereres oï ches novieles, si li anoia molt
When the emperor heard these news so to-him it-vexed very
durement; et nonporquant il dist k'il li iroit au-devant.
greatly and nevertheless he said that-he to-him would-go to-meet
Dont fait mander siergans, chevaliers et arbalestriers,
Then he-has sent-for sergeants knights and crossbowmen
et fait tout son pooir semonre. Et li trahitres ki
and has all his power summoned And the traitor who
cuens estoit des Blans-Dras, mande à l'empereour ke
count was of-the Biandrate sends-word to the-emperor that
il est aperelliés de jurer sor sains ke jamais ne sera
he is ready to swear upon relics that ever not will-he-be
contraires à lui. Ke vaut chou? Tant a fait ke li
contrary to him What avails this So-much has-he done that the
empereres a recheu son sairement. Ensi fist li cuens
emperor has received his oath Thus made the count

des Blans-Dras se pais, et remest à l'empereour comme
of-the Biandrate his peace and remained with the-emperor as
baillius.
bailiff
Or est li cuens de Blans-Dras acordés à l'empereour, 688
Now is the count of Biandrate agreed with the-emperor
si comme vous avés oï, et molt s'ahatist ke
so as you have heard and much himself-vows that
il Blas et Commains li aidera à desconfire;
he Vlachs and Cumans him will-help to defeat
mais li felonnie de son cuer pensoit tout el.
but the felony of his heart thought all else
Nonporquant de lui ne vous dirai-jou ore plus chi
Nevertheless of him not to-you shall-tell-I now more here
endroit; ains dirai de Michalis, ki fist tant à
right but I-shall-tell of Michael who did so-much with
l'empereour k'il prist un parlement à lui por pais
the-emperor that-he took a parliament with him for peace
faire.
to-make
Michalis prist un parlement à l'empereour por pais 689
Michael took a parliament with the-emperor for peace
faire; et fu li lius noumés desoz Salenyke. Li empereres
to-make and was the place named below Salonika The emperor
i vint, et se logea desoz les oliviers, puis apiela
there came and himself lodged under the olive-trees then called
Cuenon de Biethune et Pieron de Douay, et lor dist:
Conon of Béthune and Peter of Douai and to-them said
Segnor, on me fait entendant ke Michalis, contre cui
Lords one me makes understanding that Michael against whom
nos sommes chi venn à parlement, est mervelleusement
we are here come to parliament is marvelously

trahitres et faus, et agus de parler et trençans. Jou
traitorous and false and sharp of speaking and cutting I
ne doi mie ses dons covoitier, ne nul n'en covoite;
not ought at-all his gifts covet nor any not-thereof I-covet
car preudom ne doit covoitier cose ki li tourt à
for a-worthy-man not ought covet thing which to-him turn to
deshonnour.
dishonor

690 «Or vous dirai ke vous ferés. Vous irés à lui et
Now to-you I-shall-say what you will-do You will-go to him and
li dirés de me part ke se il mes hom veut estre,
to-him will-say on my part that if he my man wishes to-be
en tel maniere ke il toute se tierre voelle tenir de moi
in such manner that he all his land wish to-hold of me
et toz ses tenemens, jou li ferai autant d'onnour
and all his holdings I to-him shall-do as-much of-honor
comme jou feroie à mon frere proprement; et s'il chou
as I would-do to my brother own and if-he this
ne veut faire, sace il bien ke jou irai sour lui
not wishes to-do let-know he well that I shall-go upon him
atout mon pooir. Or alés à lui, et si li dites chou
with my power Now go to him and so to-him say this
ke je vous ai dit; car aussi vous a-il ambes deux
that I to-you have said for also you has-he both two
mandés.»
summoned

691 Lors monterent li message et s'en tornerent;
Then mounted the messengers and themselves-thence turned
et ont tant erré ke il ont trové Michalis en
and have so-far journeyed that they have found Michael in
une abbéie ù il estoit herbregiés. Dont descendirent
an abbey where he was lodged Then they-dismounted

et saluerent Michalis de par l'empereour, et li
and greeted Michael on behalf-of the-emperor and to-him
baillierent les lettres, si comme il avoit commandé. Et
delivered the letters so as he had commanded And
disoient les lettres ke li doi message fussent creu
said the letters that the two messengers should-be believed
de tout chou k'il diroient de par l'empereour.
of all this that-they would-say on behalf-of the-emperor
Michalis fist lire les lettres; et quant elles furent
Michael had read the letters and when they were
leues, si dist as messages ke il desissent lor
read so said to-the messengers that they should-say their
volenté.
will
Et Cuenes de Biethune et Pieres de Douay se 692
And Conon of Béthune and Peter of Douai themselves
prendent à parler et à dire uns biaus mos polis,
take to speak and to say some fair words polished
et à mettre avant le parole de lor segnor par si
and to put forward the word of their lord with so
grant mesure, et à deffendre se partie en respondant
great measure and to defend his part in answering
ke mestiers lor iert si tempréement, ke chil ki
as need to-them was so temperately that those who
encontre eus estoient en estoient ausi comme tout
against them were thereof were just as all
abaubi. Et non mie por chou ke il de riens
abashed And not at-all for this that they in anything
mespresissent enviers eus; ains lor monstroient tantes
misspoke toward them but to-them showed so-many
bieles paroles et tantes bieles raisons aournées et traites
fair words and so-many fair reasons adorned and drawn

de droit, ke tout chil de le partie Michalis, et
from right that all those of the party (of-)Michael and
Michalis meismes, estoient tout desirant de venir à nostre
Michael himself were all desirous to come to our
amor.
love

693 Ke vaut che? Le mant l'empereour ont il tant courtoisement
What avails this The message (of-)the-emperor have they so courteously
dit et despondu, ke auques ont fait Michalis le cuer
said and expounded that somewhat have-they had Michael the heart
amoliier. Adont lor dist ausi comme en sozriant: «Segnor,
softened Then to-them said just as in smiling Lords
jou ai une moie fille, et li empereres a un sien
I have a mine daughter and the emperor has a his-own
frere ki a non Wistasses. Se nous ces deus poiemes
brother who has name Eustace If we these two could
ensamble ajoindre par mariage, dont primes seroit nostre
together to-join by marriage then first would-be our
pais legiere à faire. Et jou donrai à Wistasse, avoec
peace easy to make And I shall-give to Eustace with
me fille, le tierche partie de toute me terre. Et bien
my daughter the third part of all my land And well
voel ke vous saciés ke jou puis mius l'empereour siervir,
I-wish that you know that I can better the-emperor serve
et par mer et par tierre, que nus ki soit en toute
both by sea and by land than anyone who be in all
Romenie.»
Romania

694 Et quant Cuenes de Biethune entent ceste parole, il voit
And when Conon of Béthune hears this word he sees
lors et pense ke grans biens en poroit venir. Dont dist
then and thinks that great good thereby could come Then he-said

à Michalis ke il le fera savoir à l'empereour, et l'i
to Michael that he it will-make known to the-emperor and him-thereto
fera acorder; et puis li relaira savoir au plus
will-have agree and then to-him will-let-in-turn know at-the most
tost k'il pora. A tant se partent li message de
soon that-he will-be-able At that themselves part the messengers from
Michalis et vienent à l'empereour, et li dient tout chou
Michael and come to the-emperor and to-him tell all this
ke il ont trové; «et comment il mist avant le mariage
that they have found and how he put forward the marriage
de vostre frere et de se fille; et donra à Wistasse
of your brother and of his daughter and will-give to Eustace
le tierche partie de toute se tierre, avoec se fille, en
the third part of all his land with his daughter in
fief; et d'ore-en-avant il vaura de vous tenir tout son
fief and from-now-on he will-wish from you to-hold all his
tenement.»
holding